1609/5191.

TRAVELS

INTO THE

INTERIOR PARTS

OF

AFRICA.


15
64
NOV

Thomas O'Reilly October 2d - 1790

TRAVELS

INTO THE

INTERIOR PARTS

OF

AFRICA,

BY THE WAY OF THE

CAPE OF GOOD HOPE;

IN THE YEARS 1780, 81, 82, 83, 84 AND 85.

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH OF M. LE VAILLANT.

DUBLIN:

PRINTED BY GRAISBERRY AND CAMPBELL:

FOR CHAMBERLAINE & RICE, P. BYRNE, J. MOORE,
B. DORNIN, GRUEBER & M'ALLISTER, G. DRAPER,
W. JONES, R. WHITE, J. MILLIKEN.

M,DCC,XC.


15
64
NOV

ADVERTISEMENT.

THE remaining Volume of this curious and intereſting Work, containing an Account of the Author's Travels towards the weſtern coaſts of the ſouthern extremity of Africa, is now tranſlating, and will be publiſhed with all convenient ſpeed.


15
64
AON

AUTHOR'S PREFACE.

NATURALISTS have thought proper to eſtabliſh relations between the anatomy of animals and that of man, and to trace out the former from the latter. By means of this arrangement, underſtood only by connoiſſeurs, thoſe parts on which a bird reſts all its weight are called its *toes;* that part which riſes more or leſs perpendicularly, inſtead of being called a leg, according to the common idea, is named a *foot*; the latter having the heel above it, is immediately followed by the leg, which generally paſſes for the *thigh;* and, in ſhort, this laſt part, which in the living bird

is

is ſcarcely diſtinguiſhable, is concealed, and, as one may ſay, forms a part of the body itſelf. Hence we may conclude, that the foot of a heron, for example, is as large as its whole body: an aſſertion which would appear ridiculous and abſurd to thoſe not previouſly informed, that this methodical diſtribution is adopted by all the literati. It is therefore plain that a bird does not walk on its feet and talons, but on its claws. This explanation I have thought neceſſary, in order that I may be better underſtood, both in the relation of my voyages, and that more extenſive work to which it is only, in ſome meaſure, an introduction. Should I have occaſion to ſpeak after this arrangement of my acquiſitions in quadrupedes, birds, &c. obliged to make uſe of the terms and meaſures eſtabliſhed by ornithologiſts, people who are not naturaliſts, and who may deign to read my work, would certainly find errors and obſcurity in three-fourths of my deſcriptions, did I not give them this key, which is indiſpenſably neceſſary to whoever



whoever may, for the firſt time, caſt their eyes over this part of natural hiſtory.

I can readily forgive the authors of thoſe voluminous works, and the immenſe compilations in which old books are laid under contribution, which are ſtuffed with long quotations, and where the dreams of the imagination and ignorance are preſented as immutable truths, merely becauſe they are ancient. But when a writer, ſeized with a mania for a certain ſcience, has not in himſelf ſufficient reſources to extend its progreſs; when, immured in his cabinet, he pretends to eſtabliſh principles and dictate laws; when he proſtitutes the valuable gifts of genius to propagate old errors, and to cover, with the graces of elocution, lies received as truths by our forefathers; however he may diſguiſe, twiſt, or appropriate them to himſelf, I cannot forgive him whilſt he thus evidently adorns himſelf with the ſpoils of others, whatever trouble he may have taken to arrange the different patches.

Fully

Fully reſolved to ſpeak only of what I have ſeen or done, I ſhall introduce nothing into this work which is not my own; and on this account I ſhall certainly not be reproached for the faults of thoſe who preceded me.

If in ſome places of my relation obſervations be found diametrically oppoſite to thoſe of other travellers, I ſhall not go ſo far as to aſſert that they have been deceived: I mean to depreciate no one; I chooſe rather to ſuppoſe, on certain articles, that difference of time, or their being ſeen under different points of view, may have produced differences alſo in their relations and reſults; they then become only errors or illuſions, of the ſame nature as an optical deception.

Reſpecting objects, however, which, having been too ſlightly obſerved, diſfigure the truth eſſentially, my opinion (though I wiſh it not to be univerſally adopted) will never give way when I am certain of facts, and advance nothing but what is ſupported by proofs.

It is not above a century ago that a taſte for travelling has prevailed in Europe. The French above all, more than any other people happy in their country, and attached to their native ſoil, quitted it with reluctance, and conſidered the abſence of a month as a kind of baniſhment; they were contented with waiting for, and eagerly ſwallowing, the ridiculous ſtories publiſhed by daring impoſtors reſpecting remote nations, and they amuſed themſelves with accounts of their wonderful diſcoveries and incredible adventures. The exaggerating writer bargained, if I may ſay ſo, with the public credulity, and thought himſelf well recompenſed if he found only one-half of the bombaſt and the wonderful contained in his work exploded. The ſciences wandered in the darkneſs of uncertainty, and natural hiſtory was not even in its infancy.

By little and little the genius of diſcoveries extended her wings, and the letters and the arts have given place to the ſciences. A paſſion for travelling

travelling is awakened; that deſire, ſtill more inſatiable, of acquiring knowledge, and comparing the objects of it, has increaſed in proportion to the wonders produced by it: the more dangers have been removed, the more men have paſſed their ancient bounds; and what formerly appeared an inſurmountable obſtacle, at preſent is only a puerile excuſe, a ſhameful evaſion to conceal one's weakneſs and timidity.

Being educated more than any other perſon in quite different principles, I always entertained a moſt ardent deſire for travelling, which I endeavoured to repreſs; but it was only by yielding to its tranſports, that I was able to moderate its violence.

I croſſed the ſeas, as I wiſhed to ſurvey other men, other productions, and other climates; I penetrated into ſome of the unknown deſarts of Africa; and I may ſay that I conquered a ſmall portion of the earth.

I had

I had no wiſh to acquire reputation; I was conſcious of no merit that could entitle me to it, and I employed my time only in pleaſure.

As my friends and my family were of opinion that an account of my travels, and ſome details reſpecting my diſcoveries in natural hiſtory, might be of utility, I have given them this account and theſe details, ſuch as they are, claiming to myſelf on this account no other merit than that of complaiſance, and renouncing every kind of pretenſion to literature, the burden of which I could not ſupport.

It may perhaps be thought ſtrange, that to give an account of travels lately undertaken into Africa I have been obliged to return to the paſt, and to conduct my readers to the firſt ſteps of my infancy in South America. To explain this, I muſt obſerve, that I thought it would not be improper to juſtify, by the commencement of my life, my manner of ſeeing, thinking, and acting,

acting, which always will be agreeable to the ſtate of climate, and which, judged perhaps with ſeverity, would not fail to diſpleaſe thoſe obſtinate minds who can never ſuffer their prejudices to be deſtroyed, or principles and cuſtoms hitherto received to be attacked, without being out of temper. But in whatever manner my freedom in expreſſing my thoughts, and even in pretending to correct the errors of genius, may be conſidered, I think it of importance to let them know, that no private hatred, no envy, and no ſecret diſpleaſure, can overbalance in my mind my regard to truth, which I cheriſh above all things, and to which I have ſacrificed, upon more than one occaſion, even my vanity.

At the end of this work I ſhall preſent the lovers of natural hiſtory with a general deſcription of all the individuals, quadrupedes and birds, which I procured in my excurſions, and have now in my poſſeſſion. Thoſe animals, of which accounts have been never before given, or which

have

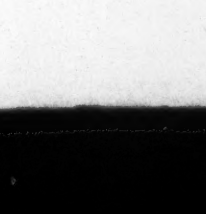
have been hitherto unknown, will be accompanied with coloured engravings, repreſenting ſeveral new genera, and conſiderable varieties in the ſpecies. Though a deſcription and figure of the giraffe have been given after ſome authors, this has not prevented me from giving new ones. What has been hitherto ſaid reſpecting this animal, and the figures which have been engraved of it, have no reſemblance to the original in my cabinet, or to what I have obſerved of its manners in its native country.


15
64
NOV

INTRODUCTION.

THAT part of Guiana, belonging to the Dutch, which is under the government of the Weſt-India Company, is perhaps the leaſt known to naturaliſts, though of all South America it is that, without doubt, which preſents the moſt curious and extraordinary productions of every kind. Situated under the ſcorching climate of the torrid zone, five degrees north of the line, this country, ſtill enveloped by the cruſt of time, conceals, if I may ſo expreſs it, the focus where nature forms her exceptions to thoſe general rules which ſhe ſeems to have eſtabliſhed. Extending along the coaſt about an hundred leagues, its breadth is almoſt unlimited. Here the river Surinam rolls its

majeſtic ſtream: and upon its left bank, three miles from the ſea, riſes Paramaribo, the principal place of this vaſt colony; the ſpot where I was born, and the ſcene of my infant years. Educated by enlightened parents, who endeavoured to procure thoſe valuable and intereſting objects which are diſperſed throughout the country, I had continually before my eyes the fruits of their labour, and I enjoyed at my eaſe the whole of their curious collection. From my earlieſt years, theſe tender parents, who could not be a moment without me, and who by their taſte were often expoſed to diſtant journeys, and to be long abſent at the extremities of the colony, carried me along with them, making me a ſharer in their travels, their fatigues, and their amuſements. My firſt years were thus ſpent in the deſarts, and I was born almoſt a ſavage. When reaſon, which in warm climates always precedes age, began to dawn in my mind, my taſte was not long in diſplaying itſelf, and my parents did every thing in their power to aſſiſt the firſt efforts of my curioſity Under ſuch excellent inſtructors I every day taſted new pleaſures: I heard them diſcourſe in a manner ſuited to my capacity on the objects which they



they had acquired, and on thoſe which they hoped to procure in future. By theſe means an abundance of ideas and relations was treaſured up in my mind—at firſt, in a confuſed manner, I muſt own; but gradually with more order and method. Nature, therefore, was my earlieſt inſtructor, becauſe it was towards her that my views were firſt directed.

Soon after, a deſire of making acquiſitions, and a ſpirit of imitation, added impetuoſity, and I may ſay impatience, to my amuſing purſuits. Every thing ſeemed to whiſper to my ſelf-love that I alſo ſhould attempt to form a cabinet of natural hiſtory. Suffering myſelf, therefore, to be led away by this ſeducing idea, without loſs of time, I traiterouſly declared war againſt the weakeſt animals, and began to ſearch for caterpillars, butterflies, beetles, and in a word for inſects of every kind.

When people labour for themſelves, they may, with confined means, and rude and uncultivated talents, form an indifferent work: but in my opinion they will always ſucceed well, when they

ſpare neither time, care, nor attention; and when they employ all their talents and abilities. With ſuch a diſpoſition, the almoſt certain ſign of ſucceſs, I beheld my pretty collection of inſects increaſe daily under my hands. I ſet the higheſt value upon it, and eſteemed it beyond meaſure. As I had been the ſole creator of it, the reader may eaſily gueſs how much ſuperior I conſidered it to that of my parents. Pride, which is blind, makes them aſterpieces of folly and genius march hand in hand.

Entirely occupied with my enjoyments, I had never yet perceived that ſome obſtacle always occurs to prevent the ſucceſs of every enterprize.

In one of our excurſions we had killed a female ape, of that ſpecies which in the country are called *Baboons*. As ſhe carried on her back a young one, which had not been wounded, we took them both along with us; and, when we returned to the plantation, my ape had not quitted the ſhoulders of its mother. It clung ſo cloſely to them, that I was obliged to have the aſſiſtance of a negro to diſengage it; but ſcarcely was it ſepa-

rated

rated from her, when, like a bird, it darted upon a wooden block that ſtood near, covered with my father's peruke, which it embraced with its four paws, and it could not abſolutely be compelled to quit its poſition. Deceived by its inſtinct, it ſtill imagined itſelf to be on the back of its mother, and under her protection. As it ſeemed perfectly at eaſe on the peruke, I reſolved to ſuffer it to remain, and to feed it there with goats milk. It continued in its error for three weeks; but after that period emancipating itſelf from its own authority, it quitted the foſtering peruke, and by its amuſing tricks became the friend and the favourite of the whole family.

I had, however, without ſuſpecting it, introduced the wolf among my flocks. One morning, on entering my chamber, the door of which I had been ſo imprudent as to leave open, I beheld my unworthy pupil making a hearty breakfaſt on my noble collection. In the firſt tranſports of my paſſion I reſolved to ſtrangle it in my arms; but rage and fury ſoon gave place to pity, when I perceived that its voraciouſneſs had expoſed it to the moſt cruel puniſhment. In eating the

the beetles it had ſwallowed ſome of the pins upon which they were fixed; and, though it made a thouſand efforts to throw them up, all its exertions were in vain. The torture which it ſuffered made me forget the devaſtation it had occaſioned; I thought only of affording it relief. but neither my tears, nor all the art of my father's ſlaves, whom I called from all quarters with loud cries, were able to preſerve its life. This accident diſconcerted me very much, but it did not diſcourage me; I ſoon gave myſelf up to new reſearches; and, not contented with one treaſure, I wiſhed to unite ſeveral. By a natural progreſſion I turned my attention towards birds. As our ſlaves did not ſupply me with a ſufficient number, I armed myſelf with a tube *, and an Indian bow: in a ſhort ſpace of time I could uſe them with much dexterity. I ſpent whole days in watching; in a word, I became a keen ſportſman. It was then obſerved, and I myſelf was ſenſible of it, that this taſte was changed into a violent paſſion, which diſturbed even my hours of

* *Sarbacanne*—a kind of tube, through which ſmall darts are blown with the mouth.

of repoſe, and to which years have ſtill added ſtrength.

Some of my friends have accuſed me of coolneſs and inſenſibility; and a greater number of them have conſidered the ſingular journeys I afterwards undertook as raſh enterprizes. The former I readily forgive; to the latter I ſhall make no reply: thoſe, however, who give themſelves the leaſt trouble to review the firſt purſuits of my infancy, will be leſs ſurpriſed at this appearance of originality; and will eaſily perceive that my education, while it accounts for the cauſe of it, pleads alſo its excuſe.

Some time after, my parents, who had fixed the period of their departure for Europe, and who ſought no other happineſs than that of being united to their family and friends, having ſettled their affairs, I embarked with them in a ſhip called the Catherine, and, on the 4th of April 1763, ſet ſail for Holland. In the joy of my heart I partook, by anticipation, of all thoſe pleaſures and amuſements which my parents propoſed to enjoy during the paſſage. A curioſity, very natural

tural at my age, added to my tranſports: but this agitation, or rather delirium, did not render me inſenſible to regret. In ſo ſhort a ſpace of time I could not become ungrateful, and without emotion loſe ſight of that beneficent country in which I firſt drew breath. I often caſt a fond look on thoſe happy ſhores, which were ſtill becoming more and more diſtant. In proportion as they receded from me, and as wafted by the winds I approached the frozen climates of the north, a diſmal ſadneſs threw a gloom over my imagination, and diſſipated my conjectures concerning the future.

After a dangerous and diſagreeable paſſage we caſt anchor in the Texel, about nine or ten in the morning, on the 12th of July following.

Being at length arrived in Europe, every thing I ſaw appeared ſo new to me—I ſhewed ſo much impatience, haraſſed people with ſo many queſtions, and every object that preſented itſelf to my view ſeemed ſo extraordinary—that I myſelf was an object of aſtoniſhment to all thoſe who were around me. My importunities, however, did not

not always raiſe the laugh againſt me; and I made an ample return, by pertinent remarks on America, for the information which the people of Europe had the condeſcenſion to give me.

After ſpending ſome time in Holland we repaired to France, to the city where my father was born, and where he ſettled in the boſom of his family. Here I had a new opportunity of indulging my taſte, in the cabinet of Mr. Bécœur, which, for the ornithology of Europe, contains the moſt numerous and beſt preſerved collection I have ever met with.

In Surinam I had followed a plan, with reſpect to birds, which ſucceeded very well, but which ſpoke little to the imagination, and ſtill leſs to the eyes. The only method I knew, was to preſerve their ſkins by putting them between the leaves of large books; but here a quite different ſpectacle awakened all my ſenſes. Beſides the merit of preſervation, it was neceſſary to reſtore their proper forms. Theſe two eſſential points embarraſſed me much: I reſolved to make them a peculiar ſtudy; and to theſe I devoted my

my whole attention. During a reſidence of two years in Germany, and of ſeven in Lorraine and Alſace, I made prodigious havoc among the feathered tribe. To the diſtinction of ſpecies I wiſhed to join alſo a thorough knowledge of their manners; and I was never perfectly ſatisfied with my excurſions, but when I was able to ſurpriſe the male and the female in ſuch a ſituation as no longer permitted me to doubt of their ſex. I have often ſpent whole weeks in watching, to diſtinguiſh the ſpecies of birds, before I could procure a pair.

In the ſpace of eight or nine years, therefore, by care and labour, and after many attempts and much devaſtation, I was able not only to give to theſe animals, ſo tender and delicate, their proper forms; but alſo to keep them in that pure and ſound ſtate of preſervation, which makes all the merit of my collection. By being habituated to live with them in the fields, in the woods, and in their moſt ſecret retreats, I have learned alſo to diſtinguiſh the ſexes in the moſt invariable manner; a divining art, if I may uſe the expreſſion, which I do not pretend to conſider as a great

great merit, but which a very ſmall number of ornithologiſts have acquired. How often have I ſeen in cabinets, curious enough in other reſpects, ſometimes monſtrous and unnatural alliances! Here, placed as male and female, two beings that had never met together; and there, a male and a female claſſed as two different ſpecies, &c.

In this intereſting part of natural hiſtory I more and more acquired knowledge; but I confeſs that, inſtead of being ſatisfied, it only proved to me the inſufficiency of my own ſtrength. A more extenſive field was, however, about to be diſplayed before me: opportunity ſeemed to call me at a diſtance, and to invite me to put off the time no longer.

In the courſe of the year 1777, a favourable circumſtance having conducted me to Paris, like every other ſtranger who arrives for the firſt time in that capital, I paid my tribute of admiration to the cabinets of the curious, and of men of letters. I was charmed with the beauty and variety of the objects which they contained, and with the prodigious number of individuals of every

every ſpecies, which, like a forced contribution, had come from the four quarters of the world to be claſſed methodically, as far as is poſſible, in a ſpace always unluckily too confined. During a reſidence of three years, I ſaw, ſtudied, and made myſelf acquainted with all the moſt celebrated cabinets; but their ſuperb collections ſoon made me uneaſy: they left a vacuum in my mind which nothing could fill up. I no longer beheld, in theſe aſſemblages of foreign ſpoils, but general magazines, where different beings, ranged without choice, and without taſte, were buried in profound ſleep for ſcience. Nothing gave me any preciſe information reſpecting their manners, their cuſtoms, and their habitudes, which are things the moſt eſſential to be known. This was the ſtudy which had engaged the greateſt ſhare of my attention in my youth. I had read, it is true, different works upon natural hiſtory, but filled with contradictions ſo diſguſting, that the taſte which is not yet formed muſt loſe much by peruſing them. Above all, I had ſtudied, with the utmoſt avidity, thoſe immortal maſterpieces, conſecrated for the uſe of poſterity by one of the greateſt geniuſes who have followed

the

the ſame purſuits. I every day burnt freſh incenſe at the feet of his ſtatue: but the magic of his eloquence did not ſeduce me ſo far as to make me admire the flights of his imagination; and I could not pardon in the philoſopher the exaggerations of the poet.

Beſides, and above all, I was continually turning my thoughts towards thoſe parts of the globe which, having never been explored, might, by affording new knowledge, help to rectify that already acquired. I conſidered as ſupremely happy the mortal who ſhould have the courage to ſeek it at the ſource; and in this reſpect the interior parts of Africa appeared to me a Peru. It was a country as yet untouched for the naturaliſt. Full of theſe ideas, I perſuaded myſelf that the ardor of zeal might make up for want of genius; and that, by being an accurate obſerver, one might become a great enough writer. My enthuſiaſm ſuggeſted to me that I was the privileged perſon for whom this enterprize was reſerved. I readily liſtened to its ſeducing dictates, and from that moment I devoted myſelf to it. Neither the ties of affection, nor thoſe of friendſhip,

ſhip, were capable of diverting me from my purpoſe. I communicated my intention to no one; and, blind to every obſtacle, I quitted Paris on the 17th of July 1780.



TRAVELS

INTO THE

INTERIOR PARTS

OF

AFRICA.

VOYAGE TO THE CAPE.

IMPATIENT to carry my intended plan into execution, I repaired to Holland, where I viſited the principal cities of that republic, and took a view of their curioſities. When I arrived at Amſterdam, I found treaſures, of which I had before entertained no idea. I was received with the utmoſt politeneſs by all the literari, and I had free acceſs to every cabinet. But what principally excited my admiration was that of Mr. Temminck, treaſurer to the Eaſt-India Company. In that beautiful collection I obſerved a multitude of valuable objects which I had never ſeen in France. Every thing in it appeared to me extremely rare, and to be in a ſtate of the higheſt preſervation.

His

His noble place for breeding birds alſo exhibited, in an admirable ſeries, a double view of nature and art, united to overcome the effects of climate. There the enchanted eye may admire alive the moſt beautiful and leaſt known individuals of every ſpecies; and there one may ſee, by the aſſiduous care beſtowed upon them, birds the moſt diſtant and the moſt remote from one another multiply and propagate, as if they lived in their native countries. This ſight, I confeſs, ſtill ſerved to redouble my ardor; and completely fortified me againſt every obſtacle, and againſt all thoſe dangers which I had reſolved to encounter.

Having ſoon formed an intimate friendſhip with Mr. Temminck, he ſhewed me every mark of attention and kindneſs. As he had it in his power, more than any one elſe, to favour my deſign, I did not heſitate to communicate it to him. Being ſo congenial with his own purſuits, he highly approved of it; and pointed out thoſe means which I ought to purſue in order to ſucceed. He himſelf ſpared neither care nor labour. I was happy enough to obtain permiſſion to take a paſſage for the Cape in a veſſel belonging to the Eaſt-India Company. The time of my departure was fixed: and I procured from my reſpectable friend very warm recommendations; without which, by a ſingular fatality, as will be ſeen hereafter, I ſhould have been infallibly expoſed to the moſt cruel embarraſſment.

Matters being thus far ſettled, I employed myſelf, without remiſſion, in making the neceſſary preparations for this grand enterprize. When I had procured every thing that I thought likely to be of uſe to me in the interior parts of Africa, I took leave of my friends, and of Europe; and, ſetting out in a boat which came to receive me,

was

BRITISH MUSEUM 15 69 NOV

was conducted to the Texel aboard of the *Held-Woltemaade**, a veſſel deſtined for Ceylon, but which was to touch at the Cape of Good Hope. The wind being unfavourable for quitting the Texel, we were under the neceſſity of waiting eight days. During that interval, I learned that our veſſel was an *ex-voto* of the Eaſt-India Company, in commemoration of a gallant action performed by an inhabitant of the Cape, named *Woltemaade*, who during a dreadful ſtorm had been able, with the aſſiſtance of his horſe, to ſave fourteen ſeamen belonging to a veſſel ſhip-wrecked in Table-Bay; but that he himſelf, the victim of his generous efforts, had periſhed in his laſt attempt, owing to his own fatigue, and that of his horſe, added to the weight of the unfortunate men who crowded upon him, from a dread that the veſſel might ſink before he could be again able to return. A particular account of this very affecting cataſtrophe may be ſeen in Sparmann's Voyage to the Cape.

The wind at length becoming favourable, we unmoored, at eleven o'clock in the forenoon, on the 19th of December 1781, the very day before the Engliſh commenced hoſtilities againſt the Dutch. Had we remained twenty-four hours longer, the Company would not have permitted us to depart; which would have diſconcerted me very unſeaſonably, and might have perhaps ruined my plan, and even my hopes. Cloudy weather and a thick fog enabled us to paſs through the Channel without being obſerved by the Engliſh, and we gained the open ſea, cleaving the waves in perfect ſecurity, without

* The Captain's name was S—— V——.

ever ſuſpecting that the flames of war had burſt forth in every quarter around us. Sailing ſometimes at a quick, and ſometimes at a ſlow rate, we followed the *Mercury*, another veſſel belonging to the Company, which was purſuing the ſame courſe, and which was commanded by our commodore. Thus far nothing remarkable occurred in our voyage; but we were ſoon about to feel a part of the general convulſion. As I knew that in a paſſage of three, four, and perhaps ſix months, I ſhould experience many tedious and dull moments, I took the precaution of furniſhing myſelf with a few books before my departure. Among my travels, and works on natural hiſtory, I had the relation of M. De la Caille, which for amuſement I read in preference to any other; but I remember that, having one day fallen upon a paſſage very antiphilanthropic, and full of fanaticiſm, I immediately threw down the book in a paſſion, with a reſolution of peruſing it no longer. The paſſage is as follows: "The cuſtom of going out to hunt runaway "negroes, and thoſe who turn plunderers, as "we hunt ſavage animals, has nothing in it that "can offend the delicacy of an European. The "moment when men, uſeful in ſociety, aban-"don their ſituations, either from a ſpirit of "libertiniſm or of avarice, they degrade them-"ſelves below brutes, and deſerve the moſt ri-"gorous treatment." Reflecting afterwards on the humane, mild, and liberal character, which has every where been beſtowed upon this learned man, I again took up his book, and found theſe reflections: "Laying prejudice aſide, which of "the two is preferable---he who cultivates the "arts, and invents exceptions contrary to the "rules of nature; or he who, contented with

"the

" the neceſſaries of life, regulates his conduct " according to the maxims of ſtrict and ſcrupu- " lous juſtice ?" I then recollected that the abbé De la Caille had been ſnatched from letters and the ſciences, before he had time to put the laſt hand to his Journal; and I imputed to the barbarous ignorance of the editor that infamous paragraph, which could in no manner have fallen from the pen of a clergyman, a philoſopher, and a man of letters.

On the firſt of February 1781, being three degrees north of the line, we were informed at break of day that a ſail was ſeen in the horizon At that time the Mercury was a great way ahead out of ſight, and we were perfectly becalmed. In vain had we recourſe to our ſpy-glaſſes; nor could we diſtinguiſh, until nine in the morning, that it was only a veſſel of ſmall ſize. Some believed it to be French; others maintained that it was Engliſh: each reaſoned according to his own manner, and formed various conjectures, till its nearer approach ſhould diſcover the truth. Some hours after we perceived that it was towed along by two boats, and that it was advancing towards us by the help of oars. As we then concluded that it was a veſſel in diſtreſs, approaching to beg aſſiſtance, we ſuffered it to come up to us without interruption. About three in the afternoon, finding it cloſe to us, we diſplayed our colours, and fired a gun; but we were very much ſurpriſed to receive a ſhot in our poop, which was followed by a whole broadſide: the privateer at the ſame hoiſted the Engliſh flag. In vain ſhould I attempt to deſcribe the ſtupefaction and aſtoniſhment of the whole crew upon this unforeſeen event. In the veſſel there was not perhaps one man who had ever been in

an action. The captain and the officers, accuſtomed to purſue their voyage in profound peace, had never commanded in the like circumſtances; one may therefore eaſily imagine what muſt have been the conſternation of theſe poor people, unexpectedly attacked in this manner, and without having time to make any preparation, or even to barricade the quarter deck. Terror, and above all, confuſion, were painted on their countenances. The officers bawled out as loud as they could; while the ſoldiers, all recruits, none of whom had ever loaded a muſket, knew not what to anſwer, or whom to obey; in a word, at ſeven in the evening we had not waſted a ſingle grain of powder. The privateer, in the mean time, kept up a conſtant fire; and, ordering us to ſtrike, threatened to ſink us if we carried our reſiſtance any further. Our captain, in a convulſive agitation, continually cried out that he had not power to ſurrender at diſcretion; and that it would be neceſſary for that purpoſe to addreſs the Mercury, the captain of which was his commodore. The poor man had entirely loſt his ſenſes.

A freſh breeze, as if by a miracle, at length ſpringing up, the Mercury bore up to us, and aſked our captain why he did not fire. The latter replied that he waited for the orders of his ſuperior officer, and that it was the commodore's buſineſs to give the ſignal for battle; an excuſe altogether ridiculous from the mouth of a *ſeaman*, attacked by a ſmall veſſel that mounted ſixteen eight pounders, while he had thirty-two of a larger bore, ſeveral ſwivels, and three hundred men beſides the ſhip's company.

The Mercury beginning to fire, we did the ſame; and, though the former was between us and

and the Engliſh, we ſtill continued to diſcharge our broadſides. Our people, favoured by this diſorder, had all got intoxicated: ſome ran backwards and forwards, without knowing whither they went; ſome ſtaggered and joſtled againſt each other; while others cried, wept, and ſwore, or went to conceal themſelves in ſome ſecret corner. The chaplain himſelf, with a view no doubt to rouſe his courage, was not afraid of proceeding to the ſame exceſs. I ſaw him with a lanthorn in his hand go down to the fore magazine, which contained upwards of ten tons of gunpowder deſtined for Ceylon, and without the leaſt precaution bring up a ſufficiency to make cartridges; for it is to be remarked that none were ready prepared, nor was there ever a thought entertained of making ſuch a proviſion.

After baffling all our manœuvres, and piercing us on all ſides, the privateer bore away from us about eleven at night; and, though it ſoon got to a great diſtance, we ſtill continued our fire. What a glorious moment for poltroons! How they then moved about with much alertneſs, and trod the deck with a firm ſtep; raiſing their voices, and challenging the enemy whom they no longer heard! Their fear however was not as yet allayed, and no one ventured to retire to reſt. Imitating the example ſet me, I paſſed the whole night in the open air, ſtretched out upon a bag between two rows of muſkets; but I was every moment diſturbed by the calling out of the ſentinels, who were continually haunted by the noiſe of the Engliſh cannon: one may thence eaſily form an idea of the diſorder which prevailed during this affair. Next morning, when the gunners went to clean the guns, they found ſome of them filled to the mouth, and containing three charges, one above another, with

as

as many bullets. In ſeveral of the muſkets the balls were undermoſt: and I am fully perſuaded that, without the aſſiſtance of the Mercury, we ſhould have been taken; luckily however we eſcaped, after being heartily frightened. Nothing indeed but the phantom Terror could have thrown officers into ſuch a conſternation, that they ſuffered themſelves to be cannonaded for four hours without daring to return a ſingle ſhot. The Engliſh certainly muſt have believed that we had no guns, or that thoſe which they ſaw were only of wood. The leaſt reſiſtance on our part would have made them ſoon ſheer off, and without doubt they would have retired faſter than they approached.

I cannot finiſh this ſketch, which is truly worthy of the humorous pencil of Calot, without relating one circumſtance more, which provokes a ſmile even yet whilſt I am writing. Running up and down from the poop to the quarter deck, and from the quarter deck to the cabin (for, bearing no commiſſion in the ſhip, I had neither to give nor receive orders), I obſerved the keeper of the Company's papers faithfully ſeated near the myſterious box, and ready to heave it out at the window on the ſlighteſt appearance of danger. This man at leaſt was at his ſtation, but terror had fixed him there much more than duty. The former had got entire poſſeſſion of his ſenſes: "Vaillant," cried he, "Vaillant, it is all over! "Alas, my friend, we are ruined, we are un-"done!" I did every thing in my power to raiſe his ſpirits, and to induce him to change his air, that he might aſſume another countenance. In the mean time a bullet came whizzing through the cabin, with a horrid noiſe; and the poor man fell down motionleſs, like an unwieldy maſs. Ignorant of the cauſe, I imagined he was dead;

but

but by little and little he raiſed himſelf up, fetching ſeveral heavy ſighs from the bottom of his breaſt. At this part of the ſcene, which was truly affecting, I could no longer keep my gravity, and I retired to give free vent to loud burſts of laughter.

Was it not ſhameful that men, formed by their condition, their age, and their experience, to give examples of bravery and honour, ſhould fail in ſo diſgraceful a manner, at a time when in a minute only they might have diſſipated every alarm, and made the paltry privateer which haraſſed us appear as nothing, whilſt, on the contrary, children ſcarcely old enough to haul in a cable, ſhewed a thouſand proofs of zeal, firmneſs, and intrepidity? What chiefly raiſed my indignation, and yet diverted me at the ſame time, was, that next morning they were fully perſuaded they had ſunk the Engliſh veſſel, as it had diſappeared. I could not without murmuring hear the reciprocal compliments they paid one another on account of the gallant manner in which they had defended the veſſel the evening before. As for me, being firmly perſuaded that the enemy had not received one of our ſhot, I could not help ſhewing a little pleaſantry on the occaſion; and telling the chief pilot, Van Groenen, that he behaved worſe than any of the reſt during the action, and that he then ſhewed the greateſt ſhare of pride and vanity. The ſailors laughed in their ſleeves, and the pilot perceived it; but the greater part of them not being able in conſcience to ſtand up in his defence, he was obliged to be contented with the worthy teſtimony of his own ſelf-love. To crown the affair, Engelbregt, the ſurgeon, who during the whole action had concealed himſelf in the hold, was commiſſioned, by virtue of his office, to keep a journal of this glorious

glorious engagement. I took the liberty of rallying the writer, as I had done the reſt; but it was out of his power to be revenged, as I had the happineſs of being in good health. This however was not the caſe with the pilot; he made himſelf ample amends for my pleaſantry by rendering my ſituation as uncomfortable as he could during the remainder of the paſſage: but luckily it was not of long duration; and after this ſingular adventure we continued our voyage very happily, as we had always a fair wind. After a paſſage of three months and ten days we diſcovered the mountains of the Cape, which on account of the fineneſs of the weather made at that time a beautiful appearance. I took a view of them; and the ſame day, at three in the afternoon, we caſt anchor in Table Bay.

The port-captain, Mr. Staring, immediately came on board, and confirmed the accounts we had heard of a declaration of war, which the colony had learned from a French frigate. Next morning I went on ſhore, and took the earlieſt opportunity of paying my reſpects to thoſe gentlemen to whom I had been recommended, and of delivering my letters. I was received with much politeneſs, and even with diſtinction. Mr. Boers the fiſcal, and Mr. Hacker, ſhewed me every poſſible mark of friendſhip; and I was ſenſible that I was not indebted for them to that ordinary politeneſs, which in other places ſubſtitutes unmeaning grimace for the noble deſire of obliging one's fellow-creature, and which is only a perfidious art employed to deceive with more facility the credulous ſincerity of a ſtranger. They offered me all thoſe ſervices which my recommendations, and their diſtinguiſhed rank,

gave

gave me a title to expect. I depended upon them; for I knew that I had to do with Dutchmen.

I was impatient to be acquainted with this new country, to which I found myſelf tranſported as if in a dream. Every thing preſented itſelf to my view in the moſt ſtriking manner; and I already meaſured with my eyes thoſe immenſe deſerts into which I was going to penetrate.

Cape Town is ſituated on the declivity of the Table and Lion Hills. It forms an amphitheatre, which extends as far as the borders of the ſea. The ſtreets, though broad, are not commodious, becauſe they are ill paved. The houſes, which are almoſt all built in an uniform manner, are beautiful and ſpacious; but they are covered with reeds, to guard againſt thoſe accidents which might be occaſioned by heavy roofs during the time of hurricanes. The interior part of theſe houſes diſplays no marks of frivolous luxury; all the furniture is in a noble and ſimple taſte: no tapeſtries are ever ſeen in them; a few paintings and mirrors form their principal ornaments. The entrance to the city by the ſquare of the fort preſents a noble view, eſpecially as the greater part of the fine edifices have been erected there. On one ſide appears the Company's garden, in its full extent; on the other the fountains, the ſtreams of which flow down from the Table Hill through a fiſſure, which is perceived from the city and from the whole harbour. This water is excellent, and furniſhes abundance for the conſumption of the inhabitants, as well as for ſupplying ſuch veſſels as touch here.

The men appeared to me to be in general well made, and the women to be pretty. I was ſurpriſed to ſee the latter dreſs with as much attention to the minutiæ of elegance as the ladies in France;

France; but they have neither their manners nor graces. As the children are always ſuckled by female ſlaves, the familiarity which reigns between them has a great influence upon their manners and education. That of the men is ſtill more neglected; if we except the children of the great, who are ſent to Europe to be inſtructed. At the Cape, there are no other teachers of youth but writing-maſters.

Almoſt all the ladies play on the harpſichord; this is their ſole accompliſhment. They love ſinging, and are remarkably fond of dancing; on this account it is rare not to ſee ſeveral balls every week. The officers of the ſhips which touch here, and which lie ſome time in the roads, often afford them an opportunity of indulging in this pleaſure. Upon my arrival, the governor uſed to give a public ball every month, and the principal people of the town followed his example.

I was aſtoniſhed to find neither a coffee-houſe nor a tavern, in a place at which ſo many ſtrangers arrive; but one may procure lodgings in every private houſe. The uſual charge for bed and board is a dollar a day; which is dear enough, when we conſider the cheapneſs of the productions of the country. During my reſidence here butchers meat was exceedingly cheap. I have ſeen thirteen pounds of mutton ſold for about ſixpence ſterling, an ox for twelve or fifteen rix-dollars*, ten quarters of corn for fourteen or fifteen, and ſo in proportion for other things. During the war the price of every commodity was raiſed to an exorbitant degree; and in the latter part of it forty-five rixdollars were given for a wretched bag of potatoes, and above two ſhillings

* A rixdollar is about three ſhillings and nine pence ſterling.

ſhillings ſterling for a ſmall cabbage. The charge for board, however, was not increaſed.

Fiſh are very abundant at the Cape. Among thoſe moſt eſteemed, the principal are the *rooman*, a red fiſh found in the bay of Falſo; and the *klepvis*, which has no ſcales, and which is caught on the rocks bordering the ſea; the *ſteenbraaſen*, the *ſtompneus*, and ſome others. Theſe excellent fiſh make a conſpicuous figure at every good table. Oyſters are very rare here, and none are found any where but in the bay of Falſo. Eels however are ſtill more uncommon. Crayfiſh I never ſaw; but the people eat ſea ears, which are called *klepkouſen*.

To find game, one muſt go a great many leagues from the Cape. The moſt common kinds are the *ſteenbock*, the *duyker*, the *reebock*, the *gryſbock*, the *bontebock*, and all the different ſpecies of antelopes, concerrning which I ſhall ſpeak more at length in my deſcription of quadrupedes. Hares, above all that ſmall ſpecies called the *down hare*, are found here in great abundance, but they have not the flavour of ours.

Partridges alſo of different kinds, ſmaller or larger, and more or leſs delicious than thoſe of Europe, are found here; but the quail and the ſnipe do not differ from ours. They are never ſeen here but in their paſſage.

Whatever the enthuſiaſts of the Cape may ſay, I am of opinion that our fruits tranſplanted thither have greatly degenerated. The grapes alone appeared to me to be delicious; cherries are ſcarce and bad; pears and apples are not much better, and ſoon ſpoil. The citrons, however, and the oranges, eſpecially that kind called *nareteyes*, are excellent: the figs are delicate and wholeſome;

but

but the ſmall banana, or *piſang*, has a bad taſte. Is it not aſtoniſhing that in ſo fine a country, and under ſo pure a ſky, if we except a few diſmal bays, no indigenous fruits are to be found? Aſparagus and artichokes do not grow at the Cape, but all the other productions of our kitchen-gardens in Europe ſeem to be naturalized: one might enjoy them the whole year, did not the ſouth-eaſt wind, which prevails for three months, dry the earth to ſuch a degree as to render it incapable of every kind of cultivation; it blows with ſuch fury, that it is neceſſary, in order to preſerve plants, to ſurround all the beds of a garden with cloſe paliſades made of young elms. The ſame method is purſued with reſpect to young trees; which, notwithſtanding theſe precautions, never ſhoot forth branches on the windward ſide; and always incline to the other, which gives them a diſmal appearance: in general, it is very difficult to rear them.

I have often been a witneſs to the ravages occaſioned by this wind. In the ſpace of twenty-four hours the beſt ſtocked gardens appear as if dug up, and ſwept. This wind continues from January to April at this extremity of Africa, and extends even a great way into the country. In the courſe of my travels, it has ſometimes overturned all my carriages; and no other alternative has been left me but to tie them to large buſhes, to prevent them from being thrown topſy-turvy.

At the Cape, this wind is announced by a ſmall white cloud, which at firſt attaches itſelf to the ſummit of the Table Hill, on the ſide next to the Devil's Hill. The air then begins to become cooler; by and by the cloud increaſes, and expands till it grows ſo large that it covers the whole top of the mountain: it is then commonly

ſaid

ſaid *that the mountain has put on its peruke.* The cloud, however, advances with a rapid motion, and hovers over the city: one would then ſay that it was about to be inundated and buried by a deluge; but, in proportion as it approaches the bottom of the mountain, it evaporates, and appears to be reduced to nothing. The heavens continue calm and ſerene, without any interruption; and the mountain alone, for a ſhort moment, has a gloomy aſpect, while it is deprived by that veil of the cheering preſence of the ſun.

I have ſpent whole mornings in examining this phenomenon, without being able to comprehend the cauſe of it; but afterwards, when I frequented the Bay of Falſo, on the oppoſite ſide of the mountain, I have often enjoyed the pleaſure of ſeeing its commencement and progreſs. The wind at firſt announces itſelf very feebly, carrying ſlowly along with it a kind of fog, which it ſeems to detach from the ſurface of the ſea. This being accumulated, becomes condenſed by the Table Hill towards the ſouth, an obſtacle which oppoſes it in its way; and in order to overcome it, gradually rolling over itſelf, it riſes by its efforts to the ſummit, and diſplays to the town that white cloud which announces the wind, which has already blown for ſeveral hours, in the harbour and its environs, towards the face of the Table Hill.

The ordinary duration of this kind of ſtorm is three days: ſometimes it continues, without remiſſion, for a much longer ſpace of time; often, alſo, it ceaſes ſuddenly; and during the three months when it prevails, if it happen to ceaſe ſeveral times in this manner, it is a ſure ſign that great ſickneſs will follow.

Though

Though this wind is not abſolutely dangerous for ſhips, there have been more than one inſtance of its incommoding a great many. When it is too impetuous, from prudence, and to avoid even the fear of an accident, they make for the open ſea; but, when it collects no fog, it is not perceived in the town, and blows only in the road. It is therefore the accumulation of the fog, which, moving forward with great velocity, occaſions theſe dreadful hurricanes. Very often it is impoſſible to croſs the ſtreets; and, notwithſtanding the care and attention with which doors and windows are ſhut, the duſt penetrates even into trunks and cheſts of drawers. But, however nconvenient this wind may be, it ſtill procures great advantages to the town; it frees it from mephitic vapours, occaſioned by the filth which is naturally collected on the borders of the ſea, by that which the inhabitants throw into it, and ſtill more by the bloody remains which the Company's butchers (who uſe neither the heads, feet, nor inteſtines of the animals they kill) throw away, and leave at the doors of their ſhops; where, being collected into heaps, they become corrupted, infect the air and the inhabitants, and add ſtrength to thoſe epidemical diſeaſes too common at the Cape in the ſeaſon when the ſouth-eaſt wind has not prevailed. The moſt dangerous and dreadful diſorder here is the ſore throat. People of the ſtrongeſt conſtitutions often fall a ſacrifice to it in three or four days: it is ſo violent, that they have ſcarcely time to counteract its effects by the aſſiſtance of medicine.

The ſmall pox is another ſcourge in all the colonies here. Before the arrival of the Europeans, this diſtemper was not known; and ſince the Dutch have poſſeſſed the Cape, it has been within

within a hair's breadth of deſtruction. The firſt time of its appearance, more than two-thirds of the inhabitants periſhed. Its ravages, however, were ſtill more deſtructive among the Hottentots; it appeared that this malady attacked them ſooner than others: at preſent they are very much ſubject to it.

As this diſtemper was brought to the Cape by ſome veſſels from Europe, the Company's ſurgeons are always ſent to examine with the utmoſt care ſuch ſhips as arrive in the roads. On the leaſt appearance of infection, the crew are rigorouſly interdicted from having any communication with the town or its inhabitants; and an embargo is laid on the goods, no part of which, however ſmall, is ſuffered to be brought on ſhore. Were it diſcovered that a captain had found means to conceal this diſorder on board of his ſhip, he and his officers would be immediately degraded, and condemned to pay a very heavy fine, if the veſſel belonged to the Company. I include the *officers*; becauſe, as each of them is obliged to anſwer for that part of the veſſel which concerns him, it would not be poſſible to conceal the infection without the knowledge and unanimous conſent of the crew. Did the ſhip belong to a foreign power, nothing could ſave it from confiſcation.

The wet ſeaſon begins generally towards the end of April: and the rains are more abundant and more frequent in the town than any where elſe in the neighbourhood; which may be accounted for in the following manner:---At the Cape the north wind produces the ſame effect as the ſouth-weſt does in France: it carries along with it the clouds, which, paſſing over the town, are ſtopped by their impulſe againſt the Table,

Devil,

Devil, and Lyon Hills. Continual rains prevail then at the Cape; whilſt the neighbouring parts, to the diſtance of two miles around, enjoy dry weather, and a ſky perfectly ſerene. Sometimes they fall over the whole ſpace contained between Table Bay and the Bay of Falſo, to the eaſt of that chain of enormous mountains which extends to the very extremity of Africa; whilſt the eaſtern coaſt is clear and entirely free from clouds. This is but a faint picture of what happens on the Coromandel and Malabar coaſts; except that this phenomenon is more wonderful here, becauſe it is nearer, and much better perceived. Indeed, if two friends ſet out for the Bay of Falſo, he who purſues his route on the eaſtern ſide of the mountain, carries his umbrella with him, to defend himſelf from the rain; but he who paſſes on the weſt ſide, takes it that he may ſhelter himſelf from the beams of the ſun.

Strangers are generally well received at the Cape by thoſe who are in the Company's ſervice, and by ſome others who are private people; but the Engliſh are adored, either on account of the ſimilarity between the manners of the two nations, or of their very much affecting to be generous. It is an undoubted fact, that, whenever they arrive, every one is eager to offer them lodging. In leſs than eight days every thing becomes Engliſh in the houſe upon which they have fixed their choice; and the maſter, the miſtreſs, and even the children, ſoon aſſume their manners. At table, for example, the knife never fails to diſcharge the office of the fork.

Of all nations, the French are the leaſt eſteemed; the citizens, above all, cannot endure them; and this hatred is often carried ſo far, that I have heard ſome of the inhabitants ſay, they

they had much rather be taken by the Engliſh, than owe their ſafety to the arms of the French nation. Such converſation I at firſt conſidered as exaggeration; and thought, on the contrary, that theſe people formed to themſelves an illuſion at pleaſure, to leſſen in their own eyes the merit of thoſe ſervices which France then rendered them, and to get rid privately of the burden impoſed on them by gratitude. However this may be, I am ſtill of opinion that the French would have had great cauſe to complain of this colony, had not ſome people of diſtinction, whoſe prudence checked the murmurs of the populace, made ſome amends for the injuſtice of this enmity, by thoſe obliging ſervices and eſſential ſuccours which the circumſtances of the time rendered a part of their duty. Theſe worthy men were not neglected by the French miniſtry, who honoured one of them with a letter of thanks from the ſovereign. Who is there who has not had occaſion to praiſe the noble and diſintereſted behaviour of Mr. Boers, the fiſcal? and who is there who will not always preſerve the remembrance of it in his heart? For my part, I render him the pureſt and the moſt ſincere homage; and may this truth, which I cannot conceal, as much preſerve the remembrance of his name as it will offend his modeſty.

DEPARTURE FOR SALDANHA BAY.

THE news of a rupture between England and Holland, which had reached the Cape before our arrival—and thoſe ſtill more poſitive brought by us, that the enemy were exerting themſelves with the utmoſt vigilance---made us apprehend that we ſhould ſoon receive a viſit from them. Government therefore imagining that no time ought to be loſt, and that the ſhips which were lying in Table Bay ſhould immediately take ſhelter in that of Saldanha, where they might be in more ſafety from the Engliſh, an order was given for that purpoſe to all the captains. This event ſeeming to favour my deſigns; I propoſed to depart with the fleet; and Mr. Vangenep, who commanded the Mildelburg, having been ſo kind as to offer me the beſt accommodation on board his veſſel, and every aſſiſtance neceſſary to enable me to reap benefit from my intended reſearches, as ſoon as we ſhould arrive at the Bay, I accepted his friendſhip with equal readineſs and gratitude. Ordering my baggage, therefore, to be embarked, we ſet ſail on the 10th of May, in company with four other veſſels; and next morning came to anchor in Saldanha.

This

This bay extends obliquely, towards the right of its mouth, about ſeven or eight leagues; and on the left of the entrance there is a ſmall creek, called *Hoetjes Bay*, in which ten or twelve ſhips of war might anchor on a very good bottom: veſſels of leſs burden might penetrate much farther, and even to the ſmall iſle of *Schaapen Eyland*, which would afford them very good ſhelter. The water found here is inferior, indeed, to that of the Cape, but during the bad monſoons it changes its nature, and becomes excellent. The peaſants in the neighbourhood ſupply ſuch ſhips as remain in the Bay with proviſions of every kind, at a much cheaper rate than they could be procured at in the town; ſo that a veſſel from Europe, outward bound, if prevented by the ſouth-eaſt wind, which is unfavourable for reaching Table Bay, may eaſily gain that of Saldanha, and be certain of finding every kind of refreſhment in abundance. Near this place the company keep a poſt of a few men, under the command of a corporal; who, as ſoon as he perceives a veſſel in the entrance of the Bay, ſends an expreſs by land, to inform the governor.

The *cachalot* *, a kind of whale which the Dutch call *noord kaaper*, is always found in great plenty ſporting in the baſon. I have often fired balls at them, when they raiſed themſelves upright above the ſurface of the water, but I never obſerved that they made the leaſt impreſſion. We found a prodigious number of rabbits in the ſmall iſle of *Schaapen Eyland:* it became our warren, and was an excellent reſource for the ſeamen.

† The *cachalot* was generally known under the name of the ſpermaceti whale, till Mr. Pennant very properly made a diſtinction, by borrowing its name from the French. T.

Game of all kinds is very abundant in the neighbourhood.---The principal are ſmall antelopes, and all thoſe of which I have already ſpoken. Partridges and hares are found here alſo; but the difficulty of continually mounting or deſcending among the ſands with which this place is bordered, renders it a very fatiguing and laborious taſk to purſue them. Panthers are common here, but they are leſs ferocious than thoſe of other parts of Africa; becauſe, finding a ready ſupply of food in the game, they are never tormented by hunger.

Some days after my arrival, the commander of the ſoldiers ſtationed here having invited me to go on a hunting party with him, we ſet out next morning. Though we ſaw great plenty of game, we could not catch any thing; but towards evening, having accidentally ſeparated, as if fate wiſhed to familiarize me all of a ſudden to thoſe dangers which I had come ſo far in ſearch of, I received, for the firſt time, a leſſon I little expected, and which I am convinced would have made more than one brave citizen ſhudder.---The ſhots which I had fired here and there having rouſed a ſmall antelope, my dog ſet out to purſue it; and, ſtopping at a very large buſh, began to bark, running continually round it. Imagining that the antelope had retired thither, I ran up to it, in hopes of being able to kill it; and my preſence and voice ſeemed to add greatly to the courage of my dog. I every moment expected that the antelope would appear; but, impatient at not ſeeing it come forth, I penetrated into the heart of the thicket, beating on every ſide with my muſket, to remove the branches which intercepted my paſſage. But words can hardly expreſs the ſtupor and terror which froze the blood

in

in my veins, when, having reached the centre of the buſh, I ſaw, ſtaring me in the face, a furious and monſtrous panther: its attitude after it perceived me, its flaming eye-balls fixed upon me, its neck ſtretched out, its jaws half extended, and its hollow roaring, all ſeemed to announce my deſtruction. I indeed already believed that I was devoured; but the cool courage of my dog ſaved my life. By keeping the animal at bay, and making him heſitate between rage and fear, I had leiſure to return ſoftly to the borders of the thicket; whilſt my admirable dog kept cloſe to his maſter, reſolved no doubt to periſh along with him. When I had reached plain ground, I made towards the public road as ſoon as poſſible, caſting every now and then a look behind me. Hearing at a diſtance ſeveral reports of a muſket fired, at certain intervals, I concluded that they muſt proceed from my companion, who was looking for me. As it was now night, I had no deſire to rejoin him, and I ſuffered him to fire away at his pleaſure; he however arrived, but very late. His ſurpriſe at ſeeing me perfectly ſafe and ſound, was equal to his joy: for he confeſſed that, from the manner in which my dog barked, he judged I was engaged with an hyæna, or a tyger; and that, not hearing me return an anſwer when he fired his muſket, he believed that I was torn to pieces. This adventure, which I related to him with all its particulars, made us both laugh heartily; but what he told me reſpecting the courſe I ought to have purſued in this rencontre, made me regret much that I did not fire upon the animal. Being as yet a novice in the country of theſe ferocious beaſts, this was the firſt I had ever beheld ſo near, and I was altogether ignorant how to proceed with a

panther.

panther. In this manner did I amuſe my leiſure hours, and prepare myſelf inſenſibly for greater dangers.

We often went to the Iſle of Schaapen, to kill rabbits. In one of theſe excurſions, which had before afforded us much pleaſure, we had a very narrow eſcape from deſtruction. A whale roſe all of a ſudden near our boat, and filled us with great terror. It was ſo near us, that fearing leſt, when it dived again, it might overſet the boat, and ſink it by its enormous weight, the ſailors threw themſelves into the ſea; but the man at the helm turned the boat with ſo much expedition, that we eſcaped the monſter. This animal, which darted at leaſt twelve feet out of the water, beſprinkled us all when it dived; and our boat received ſuch a violent ſhock, that it was almoſt overwhelmed. Had it not been for the good conduct of our pilot, not one of us would have eſcaped death.

This whale is generally from ſixty to eighty feet long, and ſometimes more. It ofttimes emerges from the ſea with half its body; and when this heavy maſs falls back again, it makes a noiſe as loud as the report of a cannon.

One evening, while at ſupper, our veſſel received a ſhock which made her reel in ſo extraordinary a manner, that, not knowing what might be the cauſe of it, we quitted the table with great precipitation, and ran upon deck. The alarm became general throughout the crew. Vangenep believed that we had driven on our anchors, and that we were ſtriking on ſome rock; but obſerving, by the poſition of the other ſhips, that we had not moved from our place, it was concluded that ſomething elſe muſt be the cauſe of that extraordinary motion, and our conſternation

conſternation became redoubled. Having in vain attempted to diſcover from what it proceeded, we at length perceived a whale, which, riſing before us, had, in diving again, paſſed between our two cables, which croſſed one another. As the animal happened to be impeded by its tail, which is exceedingly broad, the violent efforts it made to diſengage itſelf had ſhaken, and even then ſhook, our veſſel. The people immediately jumped into the boats, and ran to their harpoons; but the darkneſs of the night unluckily prevented them from employing the neceſſary manœuvres to kill it; and the moment when the boats were approaching, it got itſelf diſentangled. Every one was vexed at this diſappointment. As for me, I regretted it much, until chance enabled me afterwards to get one into my power. When the danger was paſt, we again ſat down to table; and, as a falſe alarm is always ſucceeded by the livelieſt joy, we amuſed ourſelves in jeering one another, and in reciprocally painting the different impreſſions which fear had made on each of the gueſts, without ſparing any one.

The vigilance of Vangenep, and the promptitude with which he gave his orders on this occaſion, were to me a certain evidence that he himſelf was under great uneaſineſs; but he ſuffered nothing to appear: ſo true it is that the coolneſs of a commander conceals danger, and encourages thoſe who are under him. Such ought to be the conduct of a good ſea officer, even till the laſt moment. The conſternation ſoon becomes general, when the crew obſerve any marks of terror imprinted on the countenance of their captain. I then recollected the proof which I had ſeen of this, paſſing the Line, when we ſhamefully

fully ſuffered ourſelves to be cannonaded by a petty privateer.

At the entrance of Saldanha Bay there is ſeen alſo a ſmall iſle, called *Daſſen Eyland*, or the Iſle of Marmots. I do not know if any of theſe animals were ever found here at any former period, but I obſerved none. A tradition known to all travellers had informed me, that a Daniſh ſhip, being prevented by contrary winds from entering the roads at the Cape, took ſhelter in this bay; and that, after remaining here ſome time, the captain happening to die, his crew buried him in this ſmall iſland, and erected a tomb to his memory.

Every time I paſſed this iſle, in order to go to *Schaapen Eyland*, my ears were aſſailed by a hollow ſound which had in it ſomething very diſmal and terrifying. Having mentioned it to my captain, he told me that, if I was deſirous, and if it would give me the leaſt pleaſure, he would land there, eſpecially as he himſelf wiſhed to ſee the Daniſh tomb. Next morning therefore he gave orders for this purpoſe, and we ſet out.

In proportion as we approached, this hollow noiſe excited our curioſity the more, and the ſea breaking with great violence againſt the rocks which form a rampart round this iſle, ſtill added to the murmuring ſound, the cauſe of which we had not been able to diſcover.

Being at length arrived, we were obliged to wade through the water; as the ſurf was ſo violent that the boat could not approach near enough the ſhore, where we were every moment covered with the ſpray: but having at length clambered up the rocks, with no little difficulty and danger, we beheld ſuch a ſpectacle as never, perhaps, appeared to the eye of mortal. All of a ſudden there

there aroſe from the whole ſurface of the iſland an impenetrable cloud, which formed, at the diſtance of forty feet above our heads, an immenſe canopy, or rather a ſky, compoſed of birds of every ſpecies, and of all colours: cormorants, ſea-gulls, ſea-ſwallows, pelicans, and I believe all the winged tribe of this part of Africa, were here aſſembled. All their voices mixed together, and modified according to their different kinds, formed ſuch a horrid muſic, that I was every moment obliged to cover my head, to prevent it from being torn to pieces, and to give a little relief to my ears.

The alarm which we ſpread was ſo much the more general among theſe innumerable legions of birds, as we principally diſturbed the females who were then ſitting. They had neſts, eggs, and young to defend. They were like furious harpies let looſe againſt us: and their cries rendered us almoſt deaf. They often flew ſo near us, that they flapped their wings in our faces; and, though we fired our pieces repeatedly, we were not able to frighten them: it ſeemed almoſt impoſſible to diſperſe this cloud. We could not move one ſtep without cruſhing either their eggs or their young ones, ſo that the earth was entirely ſtrewed with them.

The caverns and crevices of the rocks were inhabited by *phocæ* and *morſes*, a kind of ſea calves and ſea lions. Among others, we killed one of the latter, which was of an immenſe ſize.

The ſmaller crevices ſerved as places of retreat for penguins, which ſwarm here above every other kind. This bird, which is about two feet in length, does not carry its body in the ſame manner as others; it ſtands perpendicularly on its two feet, which gives it an air of gravity, ſo much

much the more ridiculous, as its wings, which have no feathers, hang careleſsly down on each ſide: it never uſes them but in ſwimming. As we advanced towards the middle of the iſland, we met innumerable troops of them. Standing firm and erect on their legs, theſe animals never deranged themſelves in the leaſt to let us paſs; they more particularly ſurrounded the mauſoleum, and ſeemed as if determined to prevent us from approaching it. All the environs were entirely beſet with them. Nature had done more for the plain tomb of the poor Daniſh captain, than what the imagination of poets goes far in ſearch of, and what the chiſel of our artiſts executes at a great expence: the hideous owl, however well ſculptured in our churches, has not half ſo dead and melancholy an air as the penguin. The mournful cries of this animal, mixed with thoſe of the ſea-calf, impreſſed on my mind a kind of gloom, which diſpoſed me very much for the tender ſenſations of ſadneſs and grief. I fixed my eyes for ſome time on this laſt aſylum of an unfortunate traveller, and honoured his manes with the tribute of a ſigh. This monument, erected no doubt in haſte, preſented nothing remarkable: it was of an oblong form, three feet in height; and conſtructed, without any mortar, of pieces of the rock which ſurrounds the iſland. I ſhould have been glad to ſearch the interior part of this tomb, as it perhaps contained, along with the diſmal remains of the captain, the hiſtory of his death, or ſome information reſpecting his family and country. Had I been alone, I ſhould have ventured to diſturb his aſhes; but before Dutch ſailors I was very cautious not even to propoſe it. Reſpect for

for the dead is among them carried to the greateſt exceſs. With an unpleaſant eye they would have beheld me lay my hands upon this ſolitary and peaceful tomb; and, as they are above all exceſſively ſuperſtitious, if any accident had afterwards befallen the ſhip, they would not have failed to aſcribe the cauſe of it to me. I therefore prudently held my tongue; but, on quitting the iſland, I privately reſerved to myſelf a right of ſome day returning to it.

We filled our boat with animals of all kinds which we had caught. The penguins were not forgotten; and we extracted abundance of oil from them for burning.

Our ſailors alſo collected a prodigious quantity of eggs, which for ſeveral days ſupplied us with a nouriſhment that we found delicious, and which very ſeaſonably relieved us from the neceſſity of feeding upon the dry and too uniform proviſions of the ſhip.

To this digreſſion, which I conſider as intereſting, I ſhall add a few words reſpecting the ſea lion and the ſea calf. They have been mentioned by a multitude of authors under denominations ſo different, and with deſcriptions ſo erroneous, that nothing can indeed be comprehended from them. With regard to the firſt of theſe monſters, I can only ſay, that I never obſerved any of thoſe trunks half a foot in length, which, as we are aſſured, hang from the upper jaw of the male. In reſpect to the ſecond, which the Dutch have thus named, it is the ſame animal as that ſhewn three or four years ago in one of the ſhops of the *Palais-Royal*, and which the people who exhibited it called a *ſea tyger;* while another of the ſame ſpecies was ſhewn, a few doors diſtant, under a different name. It was thus that, fifteen years

years ago, the ſimple credulous Pariſians, who would not have gone a ſingle ſtep to ſee a camel, ran in crowds to the fair of St. Germain, to ſtare with wonder at the *gangan*, which was nothing elſe but a camel, thus named by an impoſtor. Such deceptions are leſs ludicrous, as they deſerve to be condemned. They tend to propagate ignorance among the indolent inhabitants of the banks of the Seine, who, when they ſacrifice their money to gratify vain curioſity, ought alſo to make it contribute towards their inſtruction.

We had been only three months in the bay, and I had already made myſelf acquainted with all the environs. I had been ſo attentive to my main object, that even in that ſhort ſpace of time I had formed a large and valuable collection of birds, ſhells, inſects, madrepores, &c. But a fatal event, which took place ſoon after, had nearly deprived me of all the fruits of my labour, my reſearches, and my fatiguing excurſions.

An expreſs which we received over land from the Governor, informed us that Mr. Suffrein, after the affair of St. Jago, had arrived at the Cape, and that another French ſquadron was hourly expected. This expreſs brought an order at the ſame time to the *Held-Woltemaade*, the veſſel which had carried me from Europe, to depart immediately for Ceylon, to which place ſhe was bound. My poor old captain* ſet ſail, therefore, in the beginning of Auguſt. This unlucky ſhip purſued me every where; and I believe it was written in the book of Fate, that ſhe ſhould not depart until after having ruined me. When I reflected on our ridiculous engagement with the privateer,

* Captain S—— V——.

privateer, I plainly foreſaw that the *Held-Wolte-maade* would be no ſooner perceived by the Engliſh, than ſhe would be taken; which indeed afterwards happened. Scarcely had ſhe begun to proceed on her voyage, when ſhe fell in with the ſquadron under the command of commodore Johnſtone, to which ſhe became an eaſy prey. This capture occaſioned all our ſubſequent misfortunes. Through the ſhameful imprudence of the crew, Johnſtone, having received what information he wiſhed for, made directly towards us, and appeared at the mouth of the bay under French colours. Every one believed that the veſſels they ſaw were the combined fleet which we expected; but a cutter, a little way ahead, having hoiſted an Engliſh flag, fired a broadſide at us, which was followed by a general diſcharge from all the reſt of the ſhips. Inferiority of number not permitting our people to maintain the conflict, no other reſource was left us but to cut our cables, and to run our veſſels aſhore. We all, therefore, quitted them; and every one ſought for ſafety by flight. Diſorder and confuſion being ſoon ſpread in every quarter, the unfortunate veſſels were abandoned to the moſt dreadful pillage; every one endeavouring to carry off what he liked beſt. My captain ſet fire to his veſſel, but the Engliſh arrived time enough to prevent the reſt from being run aſhore and burnt. The fear of being purſued, taken, or maſſacred by the enemy, made the ſailors, with the utmoſt precipitation, purſue their way to the Cape. Twenty leagues of ſand to traverſe, before they could reach the town, had however diſcouraged many of them. Theſe miſerable people had ſo overloaded themſelves, that they were under the neceſſity of leaving half of their effects upon the road.

road. They were ſeen lying every where around, and the different paths which they had taken were ſtrewed with them. That day I was unluckily out on a hunting party; but having heard the noiſe of the cannon, I naturally concluded that ſome entertainment was given by our ſquadron; and I haſtened back to partake of it. When I arrived on the Downs, what a ſpectacle did I behold! The Mildelburg blew up, and in a moment the ſea and the ſky were filled with burning fragments. I had thus the cruel mortification of ſeeing my collections, my fortune, my projects, and all my hopes, riſe to the middle regions, and evaporate into ſmoke.

The Engliſh, however, ſtill continued to fire towards the Downs, and to purſue thoſe ſtragglers whom avarice had detained too long aboard of our veſſels. Of five priſoners, whom we had in our ſhip, four threw themſelves into the waves, on ſeeing their country's flag, and got ſafe to their own fleet; the fifth preferred going on ſhore with our people. Seeing him upon the Downs, at the diſtance of ten or twelve paces from the ſpot where I ſtood, I immediately knew him; and whilſt I was interrogating him in his own language, as well as I could, reſpecting the dreadful cataſtrophe which had taken place, a cannon bullet, which carried off his head, prevented me from receiving a reply. Another bullet, from the ſame broadſide, did the ſame thing to a large dog, which appeared to be ſearching for its maſter, and which was running up to me with a wild and terrified look. The effects produced by theſe two bullets making me apprehenſive of a third, I inſtantly quitted my ſtation, and ſought a place of ſhelter on the other ſide of the Downs.

The

The reader may eaſily imagine what my ſituation muſt have been after this adventure. Suppoſing that I did not chooſe to go to the Cape to beg pecuniary aſſiſtance, and to add to the number of the unhappy victims who had eſcaped from the fire and the ſword of the enemy, inſenſible to this ſcene of horror, in which I ought not to have run any riſque, ſince no advantage was to be expected from it; without title, without rank, and without commiſſion; alone, abſent from dear friends, who in imagination appeared before me; diſtant two thouſand miles from my wife, my children, and my adopted country; in wild regions, without the hopes of finding even a calm and ſafe retreat; having no other reſources but my fuſee, ten ducats in my purſe, and the thin dreſs which I then wore—what courſe could I purſue, and what could I expect was to become of me? All theſe ideas ruſhed into my mind at once, and I felt the tears trickle down my cheeks. In this deplorable ſituation I turned my eyes towards the ſhore; but I there ſaw that the conquerors, who were purſuing the fugitives, would have my life in their power, and with one diſcharge of their muſkets might free me from all my miſeries. That moment, therefore, I formed a barbarous wiſh, and for the firſt time found my heart ſteeled with ferocity.

Recovering however the uſe of my reaſon, and reflecting upon my youth, which preſented a conſoling ſupport in my own ſtrength, I at laſt formed my reſolution, and began to be a little eaſier reſpecting my fate.

It ſtruck me in the mind that a planter, whom I had ſeen ſeveral times in my excurſions, and who lived only at the diſtance of four leagues, would perhaps ſuffer me to reſide at his houſe till

I ſhould

I ſhould receive aſſiſtance from my family in Europe. I repaired, therefore, to his ſolitary habitation, and requeſted his friendſhip, whilſt my misfortune was painted in my countenance. Upon hearing my requeſt, the feeling Slaber ſtretched out his arms, and, ſeizing me by the hand, introduced me to his family. Next morning I imitated the perſevering ſwallow, whoſe neſt has been deſtroyed by ſome ruthleſs hand; and, not without ſorrow, began to form a new collection.

Some days after we heard from the Cape, and learned that all the captains had been broke, except Vangenep, the only one who had blown up his ſhip; by which noble exploit I was almoſt ruined for ever.

On their departure for the bay, they were all ordered to blow up their ſhips, in caſe they ſhould be attacked in a ſituation in which they could not defend themſelves; and they had received a *hoeker*, or ſmall veſſel, which drew little water, and which could penetrate into the bay much farther than any other, to ſerve as a general magazine, where they might preſerve the ropes, ſails, and rigging, of the whole fleet. This part of the order was executed; and had the captain of the *Hoeker* ſet fire to it, as he was expreſsly commanded, he would have thrown the Engliſh into confuſion, and perhaps reduced them to the neceſſity of abandoning our ſhips, from a want of the ropes neceſſary to carry them along with them. Being ſituated much nearer the bottom of the bay than the reſt of the ſhips, whilſt the Engliſh were keeping up a conſtant fire, and taking poſſeſſion of them, he had much more time than was neceſſary to blow up his veſſel. He not only neglected to make any diſpoſition for this purpoſe;

purpoſe; but he quitted the veſſel, in order to ſave himſelf, on the appearance of a cutter that came to attack him: he did not even think of ſetting fire to it; and, by a contradiction almoſt inconceivable, and which ſeems nearly allied to madneſs, he burnt and reduced to aſhes a beautiful habitation, ſituated at the extremity of the bay, in a place where the water was ſo ſhallow that even boats could ſcarcely approach it. On this account he was ſued by Mr. Heufke, the proprietor, who was convinced that the captain would at leaſt be obliged to make good the damages.

Vangenep was the only captain who, upon our arrival in the bay, above all things, ſerioufly began to make ſuch preparations as were indiſpenſably neceſſary for executing with rigor the general orders given to all. We had ſtuffed every part of our veſſel with tow dipped in oil, with faggots, pitch, and combuſtible ſubſtances of every kind. His brother captains were therefore the leſs pardonable, as their remaining three months idle in this bay had afforded them ſufficient leiſure to be prepared. We arrived here on the 11th of May; and it was about the middle of Auguſt when this diſaſter happened.

The officers and ſailors belonging to our ſhips, who had run to the town in a tumultuous manner, ſoon ſpread the news of our misfortune. The fiſcal, not ſeeing me return with the reſt, and hearing no news of me, made every poſſible enquiry, and at length diſcovered the retreat I had choſen. In a little time after he paid me a viſit; and I ſincerely regretted that I had ſo ſoon loſt the confidence with which he had inſpired me. I gave him an account of the diſmal ſituation to which I was reduced by the common mis-

fortune, and of the dreadful diſtreſs into which I was plunged by the loſs of all that I poſſeſſed in the world. I told him the reſolution I had formed of remaining with honeſt Slaber until I ſhould receive letters from my relations; and of endeavouring in the mean time to repair the loſs of my collections, and to renew my reſearches in natural hiſtory. Mr. Boers heard me very calmly, and without interrupting me.—But why cannot I here perpetuate, in letters of gold, his tender reproaches, and the preſſing invitations which he gave me to follow him? Without aſſuming any conſequence, without haughtineſs, and without the impertinent verboſity of our patrons in Europe, but with that open and ſincere goodneſs of heart which ſurveys mankind with the eye of benevolence, and always conſiders thoſe whom it protects as worthy of kindneſs—"Sir," ſaid he, when I had ended my apology, "never forget that you have been recommended "to me. The inſtant I ſee you oppreſſed by mis-"fortunes, is alſo the moment when I, in my "turn, ought to merit the confidence of thoſe "friends who have depended upon me: I will "therefore never betray them. My houſe, my "table, and every aſſiſtance I can give, are at "your ſervice. Reſume your courage; make "new preparations; return to your original plan; "and delay not to begin your intended travels, "by waiting for uncertain accounts from Europe. "I will ſupply you with whatever is neceſſary for "all your exigencies. Accept my offer—I muſt "and I will have it ſo."

In ſuch affecting language did this man of ſenſibility addreſs me. A refuſal would have hurt him

him too much; and I accepted his kind offer. To this generous friend, therefore, was I indebted for the ineſtimable advantage of being able to begin my preparations for this expedition, to which I had long looked forward with pleaſure, and to make proviſion for the ruinous expence with which it was likely to be attended. I cannot reflect upon his kindneſs without pleaſure; and I muſt ever entertain a grateful remembrance of it. With the like ſenſations I recal to view what Mr. Hacker, the lieutenant-governor, did for me, at the different times when I viſited the Cape; and I muſt return thanks alſo to Mr. Gordon, the commander of the troops, for the ſervices he had in his power to render me, and of which he was not ſparing. His curious obſervations, publiſhed in Holland by Allaman, are eſteemed; and I confeſs that I am particularly indebted to him for a number of valuable details, which would have perhaps eſcaped me, had it not been for the inſtructions and advice I received from him before my departure for the interior parts of the country, into which he himſelf had made ſome journeys.

I requeſted permiſſion to paſs two or three weeks more at Saldanha, in order that I might repair, if poſſible, a part of that loſs which had been occaſioned to me by the Engliſh. As I knew not whether I ſhould afterwards have an opportunity of reviſiting that fatal ſpot, I wiſhed at leaſt to procure ſuch objects as I was well aſſured I could not find any where elſe. I knew the ground ſo well, and I had croſſed it in ſo many directions, that, I may almoſt ſay, I had nothing to do but to lay my hand upon them; for, before the tragical accident which befel our veſſels, I purchaſed a horſe, and hired a Hottentot, who

conducted me to the moſt ſecret receſſes. My hoſt himſelf, as well as his two ſons, aſſiſted me greatly in my reſearches: on the leaſt ſign, they anticipated my wiſhes; and I might have almoſt ſaid that they were under my command. I never beheld theſe worthy people without aſtoniſhment, mixed with admiration. Beſides theſe, the good Slaber had alſo three daughters, whoſe perſons and figure were really very engaging. The whole family made a noble appearance: they were all ſix feet in height.

The two weeks granted me by friendſhip, with ſo much difficulty, I improved to the beſt advantage; and my whole time was divided between ſhells, plants, and hunting: the latter, above all, which was my ruling paſſion, continually expoſed me to the greateſt dangers; and acquired me a reputation for intrepidity, which was ſpread to the diſtance of ten leagues around.

One evening, having returned very early, I found waiting for me at our houſe one of the inhabitants, named Smit, a perſon with whom I was not acquainted. He had come to requeſt our aſſiſtance againſt a panther, which, having for ſome time taken up its reſidence in that canton, carried off regularly, every night, ſome of the cattle; and, as his propoſal gave me great pleaſure, I readily agreed to it. Happy at having an opportunity of hunting this animal according to rule, I truſted I ſhould be able to revenge myſelf for the terror which one of the ſame ſpecies had occaſioned to me in Saldanha Bay.

Having agreed to ſet out next morning, we engaged ſome young men in the neighbourhood to join us. Obſerving that they did not conſent with a good grace, I endeavoured to make the moſt timid aſhamed; and this gave a kind of ſpur

to

to the reſt. When about to depart, we collected all the dogs we could find; each armed himſelf cap-a-pie; and, when properly equipped, we all ſeparated, as if we had been about to give an aſſault. To enjoy a few hours reſt, and prepare myſelf for the fatigues of the next day, I threw myſelf on my bed; but impatience and joy prevented me from cloſing my eye-lids. By the break of day I reached the plain, with my eſcort, where Smit and a few friends were waiting for us. We amounted in all to eighteen hunters: our dogs formed a pack of the ſame number: and we learned that a panther had carried off a ſheep during the night.

One of the barrels of my fuſee was loaded with very large ſhot, and the other with ſmall bullets; beſides this, I had a carabine loaded with balls, which was carried by my Hottentot, who followed me. The country being very open, we obſerved only a few detached buſhes here and there; but we were obliged to examine all thoſe which we found in our way with great precaution.

After ſearching above an hour, we found the ſheep, one half of which only had been devoured by the panther; and we were now certain, by this mark, that the animal was not far diſtant, and that it could not eſcape us. A few minutes after, indeed, our dogs, which till then had done nothing but range through the fields without any order, all of a ſudden collected themſelves; and, preſſing together, ruſhed forwards two hundred paces from us, to a very large buſh, where they began to bark and howl with all their might.

Diſmounting from my horſe, and running towards the buſh, I took up my ſtation upon a ſmall

ſmall eminence, at the diſtance of fifty paces; but, looking behind me, I obſerved diſmay painted in the countenance of all my companions. John Slaber, one of my hoſt's ſons, a coloſſus ſix feet high, came, however, and ſtood cloſe by me; ſaying that he would rather loſe his life than deſert me. By the palpitation of his heart, and his diſordered looks, I concluded that the poor youth depended little upon his own courage, and I perceived that he had need of ſome reſolute perſon to revive his drooping ſpirits. Whatever might have been his terror, I am of opinion that he thought himſelf in more ſafety near me, than in the middle of his daſtardly companions, whom we ſaw ſtruggling through the plain, and keeping at a very reſpectful diſtance.

They had all cautioned me, in caſe I ſhould get near enough to the animal to be heard, that I ought not to cry *ſaa*, *ſaa*, becauſe theſe words would make the tiger furious; and that he would ſpring upon the perſon who had pronounced them ſooner than any of the reſt: but as I was in the open plain, and in a ſpot where I could not be encumbered, I repeatedly cried out *ſaa*, *ſaa*, both to encourage the dogs, and to drive the animal from its hold; but all my attempts were in vain: the animal was as much frightened as the dogs; the former not daring to come forth, nor the latter to enter the buſh. Among the dogs, however, I obſerved ſome maſtiffs, on which I might have depended, had their ſtrength been equal to their courage. My bitch alone, the ſmalleſt in the pack, always appeared at the head of the reſt; and alone penetrated a little way into the buſh. As ſhe knew my voice, ſhe

was

was a good deal animated, and became much fiercer on that account.

In the mean time the tiger ſet up a dreadful howling; and I every moment imagined that I ſaw him ſpringing forward. The dogs, on the leaſt motion which he made, retreated with precipitation; and ſcampered away as faſt as their legs could carry them. Some muſket ſhots, however, fired at random, at length determined the animal; he inſtantly ſtarted up: and this ſudden apparition was a ſignal for every body to decamp. John Slaber himſelf, who, formed like a Hercules, might have grappled with the animal, and ſtrangled him in his arms in a moment, became confuſed; and, being overcome by terror, fled towards the reſt, and abandoned me to my fate. I was therefore left with no other attendant but my Hottentot; and the tiger, to again another buſh, paſſed at the diſtance of fifty paces, which gave us an opportunity of ſaluting him in his paſſage with three diſcharges of our muſkets.

The buſh in which he took ſhelter was much ſmaller, and neither ſo high nor ſo thick as that which he had quitted. Some traces of blood, which I obſerved, gave me reaſon to believe that I had wounded him; and the redoubled fury of the dogs convinced me that I was right in my conjecture. Part of my people then approached me; but the greater number of them had entirely diſappeared.

We haraſſed the animal for above an hour more, and fired above forty ſhots into the buſh, till at length being tired, and loſing all patience at this ſport, which produced nothing, I mounted my horſe, and with great precaution went to the ſide oppoſite to the dogs; imagining that, while his attention was engaged in defending himſelf

himſelf from them, I might eaſily ſurpriſe him behind. The event ſhewed that I was not deceived: I ſoon obſerved him ſquatted down, and making uſe of his fore paws to defend himſelf from my little bitch; for ſhe approached ſo near him, continually barking, as almoſt to be within his reach. When I had taken a proper aim, I diſcharged my carabine, which I inſtantly dropped, in order that I might lay hold of my double-barrelled fuzee, which I carried at the bow of my ſaddle. This precaution, however, was needleſs; the animal did not appear; and, after I had fired, I ſaw nothing more of him. Though I was certain that I had hit him, it would have been highly imprudent to penetrate immediately into the thicket. Not hearing him, I ſuppoſed that he was dangerouſly wounded; and calling out to ſuch of my brother ſportſmen as were collected together—"My friends," ſaid I, "let us all advance towards him, in a cloſe "line in front; if he is ſtill alive, and makes his "appearance, our pieces, diſcharged at once, "muſt deſtroy him. What riſque can we run?" Upon hearing theſe words, they all anſwered with one voice; but their anſwer was in the negative. In ſhort, my propoſal was reliſhed by nobody. Fired with indignation at their timidity, "Friend," ſaid I to my Hottentot, who was no leſs animated than his maſter, "the "animal muſt either be dead, or extremely ill. "Get on horſeback, approach in the ſame man-"ner as I did, and endeavour to diſcover in "what ſituation he is: leave me to guard the "entrance; and, if he attempts to eſcape, I hope "I ſhall be able to diſpatch him. We may com-"plete the buſineſs, without the aſſiſtance of "theſe poltroons." He had no ſooner entered,

than

than he called out to me, that he perceived the tiger extended at his length, without any apparent motion; and that he believed him to be dead. That he might, however, be ſure of it, he fired one ſhot more; upon which I ran up, my whole body being agitated with gladneſs and exultation, while my courageous Hottentot ſhared in my tranſports. Joy having redoubled our ſtrength, we dragged the animal to the open plain; and, when diſplayed to view, he appeared to be of an enormous ſize. I then began to take his dimenſions with the utmoſt exactneſs: I turned him over and over again, in every direction; and examined him with the greateſt care. I ſurveyed him with a kind of pride. This was my firſt attempt; and the tiger, which was a male one, happened to be prodigiouſly large. From the extremity of his tail to the tip of his muzzle, he meaſured ſeven feet two inches; and in circumference two feet ten. I obſerved in him all the characters of the panther, ſo well deſcribed by Buffon; but in the ſettlements here he is known by no other name than that of the tiger. This appellation has become prevalent; though in all this part of Africa there are no real tigers, and though there is a very great difference between theſe two animals. The Hottentots call him *garou gama*; that is to ſay, the ſpotted lion.

In general, in the ſettlements near the Cape, the panther is much more dreaded than the lion. The latter never approaches without giving warning by dreadful roarings. He himſelf gives the ſignal for defence; as if he ſhewed greater confidence in his ſtrength, or made his attack in a nobler manner. The other, on the contrary, unites treachery to ferocity; he approaches always

ways without noiſe, glides along with great dexterity, ſeizes every advantage, and, ſpringing upon his prey, carries it off before any one ſuſpects that he is near.

I had afterwards frequent opportunities of ſeeing ſeveral of theſe animals; as well as of another ſpecies, called by the Dutch *luypar*, or leopard of the French; and a third ſpecies, ſtill ſmaller, called the *cat tyger*, and by Buffon the *oſſelot*. I ſhall ſpeak of theſe hereafter.

When I had finiſhed my obſervations on my panther, and had drawn a figure of him, we began to take off his ſkin; and my timid companions approached gradually, when they ſaw us quietly at work. The reader may eaſily imagine how much they were aſhamed, and what marks of confuſion were diſplayed in their countenances. Ought they not to have bluſhed before a ſtranger, who, engaged for the firſt time with a ferocious animal, had remained firm, and ſhewn more courage than they, though they had all been born and educated, as one may ſay, amidſt the monſters of Africa?

When I had flayed the animal, my Hottentot wrapped himſelf up in the ſkin; and, after ſaluting my bold fellow-hunters, we returned to our lodgings.

We marched in triumph, eſcorted by ſeveral dogs, whoſe maſters had firſt diſappeared; but they would not approach near us. The tiger's ſkin ſtruck them with great awe; and when my Hottentot, to terrify them more, turned round, making a kind of motion towards them, they retreated with as much precipitation as if the tiger had been at their heels; which afforded us no ſmall diverſion.

The

The particulars of this expedition were ſoon ſpread abroad. Every where throughout the country I was ſaid to be a man of courage; and thoſe even who had ſo *nobly* ſupported me began to be of the ſame opinion. I was requeſted alſo by a planter, whom I did not know, and who lived at the diſtance of four leagues, to aſſiſt his ſon to deſtroy a panther, which had committed ſeveral depredations in the neighbourhood.

As I had experienced ſo much danger in my firſt attempt, I was not very fond of engaging in a ſecond. I therefore begged leave to be excuſed; being reſolved never more to expoſe myſelf to the hazard of becoming a victim to ſuch baſe deſertion. "Go," ſaid I to the meſſenger," "tell your maſter that I did not come to this "country in order to exterminate the race of "the tigers. I ſhould be very ill repaid for my "ſervices, ſince none but poltroons would de-"rive benefit from them. If chance expoſe me "to ſuch rencounters, I can combat alone; I "want none of your aſſiſtance, and I will lend "mine to nobody." Succeſs had thus inflated my pride, and I imagined myſelf at leaſt a ſecond Theſeus.

I had, however, very improperly confounded people whom I did not know, with thoſe who had given me ſo much cauſe to complain of their conduct. This invitation had come from a perſon named Louis Karſte, with whom I had afterwards an opportunity of being acquainted; and I repented that I had entertained ſo much prejudice againſt his children. They convinced me that they were incapable of behaving badly in the moment of danger; and I have been a witneſs to the effects of their courage.

The

The time to which I had limited myſelf, when I left Mr. Boers, was now nearly elapſed; the ſeaſon proper for undertaking my journey into the interior parts of the country was rapidly approaching; and I had great preparations to make. I therefore took leave of my good friend Slaber, and of all his family, whom I quitted with regret. Being freed from every care, embarraſſment, and inquietude, I caſt my eyes towards Saldanha Bay for the laſt time, and ſet out on my return to the Cape.

RETURN

RETURN FROM SALDANHA BAY TO THE CAPE.

MR. Boers was waiting for me; and as ſoon as I arrived, I took up my lodging in his houſe, where I found every thing that could flatter my wiſhes, and that friendly attention which the inſolent pride of the rich ſells at ſo dear a rate in other countries. He anticipated me with reſpect to the preparations neceſſary for my journey; and begged that I would begin to think of them. Upon this occaſion I formed a more intimate connection with Mr. Gordon, the commander of the troops, who thought my intended enterprize rather too hazardous; eſpecially at a time when the Caffres were at war with the Dutch planters, and conſequently with the Hottentots; and, though he approved of my plan, he did not conceal the dangers to which I ſhould be expoſed in the execution of it. What he related concerning the riſks which he had run in attempting a like project, ſerved only to redouble my ardour: and I believed myſelf to be proof againſt all thoſe misfortunes, which he took a pleaſure in exhibiting to my view; and which, I muſt own, were far from being encouraging.

Whilſt

Whilſt my people were employed in preparing my baggage, I examined, with particular attention, the city and its environs.

I ſeveral times viſited the Table and Lion Mountains. Though the former, ſeen from the bay, ſeems to reach to the city, I found, however, that it was more than a league diſtant from it.

The bottom of this mountain is covered with a great number of fragments of rock; which ſeem to have once formed a part of it, and to have been afterwards detached: the baſe conſiſts of pure granite, and to the very top it appears to be alternately compoſed of horizontal ſtrata of granite and of earth. According to the meaſurement given by M. de la Caille, it riſes three thouſand ſix hundred feet above the level of the ſea. A perſon cannot aſcend it but by the deep fiſſure, through which thoſe ſtreams flow that ſupply the fountains of the town with water; and even this route is very difficult, eſpecially towards the top, where the fiſſure becomes much narrower, and riſes almoſt perpendicularly. It is neceſſary to clamber above two hours, before one can reach the ſummit; where there is a very extenſive plain, full of enormous rocks, heaped together in confuſion, and interſperſed with different kinds of ſhrubs. They reſemble the ruins of an immenſe city. Time and conſpiring elements ſeem to have deſtroyed their projecting parts, which gives them a very circular appearance. I have ſeen ſome pieces of quartz as round as thoſe pebbles that are often found on the ſand near the banks of rivers.

About the middle of the plain there is a muddy lake, from which thoſe ſtreams that reach the Cape flow through the fiſſure already mentioned.

It

It is about three or four hundred paces in circumference: near it I killed a great many ſnipes. I could not diſcover whether this water was produced by a ſpring, or by the rains and the fogs; but I found that the mountain was interſected by a number of fiſſures, which, like ſo many aqueducts, in different places diſtribute the water from this baſon, and fertilize the plantations ſcattered here and there at ſome diſtance near its bottom.

The Table Mountain is frequented by vultures of that ſpecies called *perchnopteros*; but the ſouth-eaſt wind often obliges them to quit the mountain: and it blows ſometimes with ſuch fury, that it throws them down into the ſtreets at the Cape, where they are killed with ſticks. Apes of the baboon kind, which the Dutch call *bawians*, are alſo found here. Every one knows that they are great thieves. They diſperſe themſelves over the different plantations, and climb the garden walls, in order to ſteal fruit; but not with that preparation and fine order which Kolben has made the ſubject of a childiſh and ridiculous tale. When the ſky is pure and ſerene, the Piquet Mountains, which are thirty leagues diſtant, may be ſeen from the top of the Table Mountain: notwithſtanding this diſtance, they ſeem to ſurpaſs the latter in height.

When people who for the firſt time viſit this mountain, are engaged in the hollow fiſſure of which I have ſpoken, they think themſelves attacked by a ſhower of rain: though the weather be fine, it really rains to them. This proceeds from the particles of water, which, dropping continually from the rocks above, and falling upon thoſe below, are broken by their fall, and converted into a kind of rain, which becomes the finer

finer the more one approaches the bottom of the mountain. This rain is always more abundant in the morning than at any other time of the day. The cauſe of this may be eaſily explained by the coolneſs and dews of the night.

In this hollow, at the diſtance of about one-third of its height from the top, there is a beautiful caſcade, where the water falls over a very broad rock. The inhabitants of the town ſometimes walk as far as this fall; and, though the way is extremely rugged, even the ladies indulge themſelves with a ſight of this charming and pictureſque ſcene, from a delightful point of view which begins in this ſpot.

It is very remarkable, that, in the warmeſt countries, the ſlaves kindle fires, in every place where they are at work, which ſerve to light their pipes, and to warm or cook their victuals. Thoſe of the Cape, who are ſent to cut wood for the uſe of their maſters' families, go in ſearch of it ſometimes to the back of the Table Mountain. In the evening, when they quit their labour, if they neglect to extinguiſh theſe fires, they inſenſibly communicate themſelves to the dry graſs and roots in the neighbourhood. The flames then ſpread rapidly on every ſide, and ſoon reach deep valleys, where all the wood, both dry and green, without diſtinction, blazes forth with amazing fury; having the appearance of ſo many ſmall volcanoes, connected together by ſtrings of fire. The flames riſe in clouds of different ſhades, according as the caverns have a greater or leſs depth; night comes on; and the city, the road, and the whole neighbourhood, enjoy a ſpectacle ſo much the more magnificent, as the cauſe of it is known; and people are entirely free from that great terror which ſuch a phenomenon would otherwiſe occaſion;

occaſion: for the height and extent of this conflagration give to the mountain a more awful appearance than the lava does to Veſuvius, when it burſts forth with the greateſt fury. I never ſaw this majeſtic illumination but once; and I can ſay that it afforded me the utmoſt pleaſure. All the inventions that might be made to direct ſhips at the diſtance of twenty leagues at ſea, would never approach this Pharos, kindled accidentally by ſome ſmall buſhes, which a thoughtleſs negro has ſuffered to catch fire.

It is impoſſible to reach the Devil's Mountain by the Table Mountain, though it is a part which has been ſeparated from it at the ſummit, either by fragments ſucceſſively falling, or by earthquakes; but one may eaſily arrive at the Lion Mountain, which, like the other, is alſo a part of the Table. It is however impracticable to get to its ſummit without a rope, by which one may clamber up, though with conſiderable difficulty. From this eminence ſignals are made to ſhips at ſea. There is always ſtationed here a perſon in the Company's ſervice, whoſe buſineſs is to fire a cannon for every veſſel that he ſees; and, by a ſignal agreed on, the town knows in an inſtant whether the ſhip comes from India or Europe: but the ſame man, after he has diſtinguiſhed the veſſel's flag, is obliged to repair to the town, and give information of it to government. This employment is both laborious and cruel; for it often happens that the poor wretch muſt deſcend and go up in this manner four or five times a day, which oppreſſes him with fatigue: like many other things, it may be conſidered as a fault in the adminiſtration, againſt which every body's eyes are ſhut. The perſon whom I ſaw told me very coolly, that little notice was taken of this

buſineſs: and I could eaſily believe it; for he was in a moſt deplorable ſituation. Though only thirty-five years of age, his knees and legs were become ſo ſtiff that he could not walk but with great pain.

I paid a viſit alſo to the famous eſtate of Conſtantia, behind the Table Hill. The vineyard does not perhaps produce the tenth part of the wine which is ſold under its name. At that time it belonged to Mr. Cloete. Some ſay that the firſt plants were brought thither from Burgundy, others from Madeira, and ſome from Perſia. However this may be, it is certain that this wine is delicious when drank at the Cape; that it loſes much by being tranſported; and that after five years it is worth nothing. On my arrival a *demi-haam*, that is to ſay, about twenty bottles, was ſold from thirty-five to forty piaſtres; when I departed it was worth more than an hundred.

Cloſe to Conſtantia is another vineyard, called the *Leſſer Conſtantia:* but it is only within theſe ſeven years that it has begun to be held in the ſame eſteem as the former. It has even ſometimes happened that the produce of it has been ſold for a larger ſum than that of the other, at the Company's ſales. As it is ſeparated from the other only by a plain hedge, it is probable that there was formerly no difference between the wines but in the manner of preparing them.

All the ſpace contained between the Bay of Falſo and the Table Bay, abounds with country ſeats and beautiful plantations, the owners of which confine themſelves to the cultivation of pulſe, fruits, and, above all, of vines. The moſt eſteemed, and thoſe which approach neareſt to the wines of Conſtantia, are thoſe of Becker and Hendrick. The wine-merchants at the Cape can prepare

prepare them in ſuch a manner as to ſell them for real Conſtantia wine. Beſides theſe ſweet wines, other ſettlements, ſuch as the *Pearl*, *Stellemboſch*, and *Drageſtein*, produce ſome kinds of ſack, which are highly valued. A wine is alſo made here that approaches near to Rota, to which the ſame name is given, and which I have found in every reſpect as good. Thoſe who go to the Cape to purchaſe any of it, muſt apply to the planters themſelves, in order to be well ſerved; for the merchants are cheats, who, knowing that there is no guard, ſmoke the caſks with ſulphur, and fill them up with ſpirits, to make them keep as long as poſſible, in caſe they cannot get rid of them.

The ordinary wine of the country ſeldom makes its appearance at the tables of genteel people; red wines, from Bourdeaux, are thoſe generally drank; and thoſe imported in the Dutch veſſels are always preferred to the French wines, brought only in ill-conditioned caſks, in which they never keep.

The average price of this wine is a florin the bottle: it however varies according to circumſtances; I have ſeen it at three florins, and ſometimes at twelve ſous.

The beer brewed at the Cape is not much eſteemed; but that of Europe is highly valued, and a great quantity of it is conſumed. The price of it varies between twelve and twenty-four ſous the bottle. In general, there is a great ſale for liquors of every kind.

Thoſe who enter a houſe are always preſented with a *ſopi*, that is to ſay, a glaſs of rack or gin, or rather of French brandy: gin, however, is the liquor moſt uſed in the morning. Before they ſit down to table, etiquette requires alſo that

they ſhould be offered a *ſopi*, or a little white wine, in which wormwood or aloes have been infuſed, in order to excite an appetite.

At table, people drink beer or wine indiſcriminately. When the deſſert is finiſhed, the ladies riſe up, and retire to a neighbouring apartment, or to the landing place of the ſtairs. Pipes, tobacco, and more wine, are then brought for the gentlemen; whilſt the ladies are regaled with coffee, Rheniſh or Moſelle wine ſweetened with ſugar, and other cordials. After this they form parties at play; and, when a lucky or intereſting ſtroke takes place, it is always the ſignal, or a pretence, for a bumper extraordinary.

This manner of living is common in moſt families; with this difference, that thoſe who are not rich uſe only wines of the country. The vanity of the inhabitants in this reſpect is however very ridiculous. One day, while paſſing along the ſtreet with Mr. Boers, he made me take notice of a man who was ſitting on the ſtair before his houſe; and who, perceiving us near enough to be underſtood, called out to his ſlave, with as loud a voice as he could, to bring him ſome red wine. The fiſcal aſſured me that this man had not a ſingle drop of it in his poſſeſſion, and that he had not perhaps drank of it ten times in his life. On this account, when we had advanced a little farther, I turned round, and obſerved that his ſervant was pouring out beer to him.

The *Hout Bay*, or Wood Bay, takes its name from the bruſh wood which is found there: it produces no large trees, but only ſhrubs and buſhes. This bay, which is ſmall, and expoſed to the weſt winds, is ſurrounded with rocks. Veſſels ſeldom ſeek ſhelter in it, except they are ſuddenly

ſuddenly overtaken by foul weather, and cannot poſſibly reach any other place. It lies two leagues to the ſouth-weſt of the Cape.

The Bay of Falſo, ſituated ſouth-eaſt of the Cape, is diſtant from it three leagues; but one muſt paſs over a ſpace equal to four, in order to arrive at the anchoring ground: the way to it is almoſt impaſſable. This ſpacious bay is capable of affording an aſylum to a conſiderable number of veſſels: it is here that thoſe ſeek ſhelter which happen to be in Table Bay when the weſt wind begins to blow; and, for a contrary reaſon, when the ſouth-eaſt begins, theſe veſſels return to their former ſtation.

The commander at the Bay of Falſo has the rank of an *under merchant:* his ſalary is moderate; but his place brings him a great deal, by the trade which he carries on with foreign veſſels. When he purchaſes their goods, he ſends them to the town to be reſold; and he ſometimes finds means to diſpoſe of them at five times their original value.

Cloſe to the ſhore of the bay there are a great number of warehouſes, in which proviſions are depoſited for the uſe of the Eaſt-India Company's ſhips. A very beautiful hoſpital has been likewiſe erected here for the crews, and a commodious houſe for the governor, who generally comes hither and ſpends a few days while the ſhips are lying in the bay. Commerce draws hither alſo a great number of individuals from the Cape, who furniſh the officers with lodgings. Whilſt the latter are here, the bay is extremely lively: but as ſoon as the ſeaſon permits them to heave up their anchors, it becomes a deſert; every one decamps; and its only inhabitants are a company of the garriſon, who are relieved every

every two months. The veſſels which arrive then, and have need of proviſions, are in a diſmal ſituation; for it often happens that the warehouſes have been ſo much drained, that it is found neceſſary to bring from the town in carts whatever theſe new comers are in want of: and the carriage of them generally coſts an exorbitant price. The hire of a paltry cart is from twenty to thirty dollars a day; I have even known fifty paid for one: and it is to be obſerved, that they can make only one journey in the twenty-four hours.

The fineſt fiſh are caught here, and particularly the *rooman*, that gives its name to a rock in the neighbourhood of which it is found in great abundance. Oyſters alſo are fiſhed up here, but they are exceedingly ſcarce.

I muſt not omit to mention, that in the fields between the Bay of Falſo and the Cape Town, but eſpecially in the environs of Conſtantia and of *Niuwe-land*, is found that charming tree, called *ſilwer blaaderen* *. It appears that, when Dr. Sparmann was at the Cape, this tree was not ſo abundant as at preſent; for the planters having remarked that it grew up very faſt, formed conſiderable plantations of it, which have become of great uſe to them for fewel. I obſerved that this tree was not to be met with in any other place of the colony, not even in the Nimiqua land, from which Mr. Sparmann very falſely ſuppoſes that it was brought. I can affirm that it does not grow there; and I never obſerved it in any of the other cantons into which I penetrated. For this reaſon I am of opinion that it was carried from ſome other part of Africa,

* The *protea argentea* of the botaniſts.

Africa, or of the world; though M. Sonnerat, in his laſt Voyage to the Indies, aſſures us that it is the only tree originally found at the Cape. It appears that this naturaliſt never ſaw the *mimoſa nilotica*, which is very common there, as well as a number of other ſpecies much more valuable.

The plantations of *Stellemboſch*, *Drageſtein*, *Franſche-Hoeck*, *the Pearl*, and Hottentot Holland, are different cantons, ſituated between the Cape and that great chain of mountains perceived on the eaſt. They ſupply all the reſt with fruits and wine.

Stellemboſch is a ſmall village to which ſeveral of the inhabitants of the Cape have retired, and where they cultivate their land themſelves. It has a church, a miniſter, and a *land-roſt*, or bailiff, who has the rank of an under merchant. He is a kind of fiſcal, who judges in the firſt inſtance; but he cannot impoſe any fine above the ſum of fifty rix-dollars: when the affair is greater, it muſt be brought before the proper fiſcal.

The Franſche-Hoeck, or French Corner, is ſituated in an opening of the mountains between Stellemboſch and Drageſtein. It received its name from ſome refugees who went thither to cultivate the ground, about the end of the laſt century. The ſoil of it is good, and it produces plenty of corn and wine.—The beſt bread of all the colonies is eat here; but this is not owing to the corn being better than in any other place; it is becauſe the French method introduced by the emigrants has been ſince preſerved without alteration from father to ſon. This is all that remains of the remembrance of their ancient and cruel country. In this canton I found only one

one old man who ſpoke French: ſome families, however, ſtill retain their primitive names, and write them as they were written formerly. I have known here *Malherbes*, *Dutoits*, *Retifs*, *Cochers*, and ſeveral others, whoſe names are familiar in France. Beſides this, they may be diſtinguiſhed from the other planters, who are almoſt all fair, by their brown hair, and the dark colour of their ſkin.

Hottentot Holland is thus named, becauſe this canton, originally inhabited by the Hottentots, was firſt cultivated by the Dutch. It produces pulſe, fruit, and corn. *Stellemboſch* bounds it on the north, a chain of mountains on the eaſt, the bay of Falſo on the weſt, and on the ſouth mountains in which there are ſtill ſome inhabitants.

The firſt chain of mountains and hills obſerved from Table Bay, is named the Tyger Mountains. They are here and there interſperſed with farms, which are excellent for producing corn. All theſe hills, when ſown, preſent a noble view to the town in the time of harveſt; and, on account of their fertility, they have been called the *granary* of the colony. The back part of theſe hills is alſo covered with corn farms; and this ſpecies of cultivation extends to a great diſtance. The plantations near the Cape are generally very valuable, on account of the facility with which pulſe, fruits, eggs, milk, and all other proviſions abſolutely neceſſary, can be tranſported thither, as there is always a ſure and ready ſale for them—an advantage which the other inhabitants do not enjoy, on account of their diſtance.

For twelve miles round the Cape, the planters no longer employ Hottentots, as they chooſe rather

rather to purchaſe negroes, who are not ſo lazy, and on whoſe ſervices they can more depend. The Hottentots, naturally careleſs and inconſtant, often run away when they expect ſevere labour, and leave their maſters in great embarraſſment. The negroes deſert alſo, with the vain hopes of procuring their liberty; but they are ſoon taken. On ſuch occaſions they are put into the hands of the bailiff of the canton; the proprietor claims them, and, on paying a ſmall fee, they are reſtored, after receiving a ſlight correction; for there is no country in the world where ſlaves are treated with ſo much humanity as at the Cape.

The negroes of Moſambique, and thoſe of Madagaſcar, are conſidered as the beſt labourers and the moſt affectionate to their maſters. When they land at the Cape, they generally coſt from an hundred and twenty to an hundred and fifty dollars each. The Indians are more particularly ſought after, for ſerving in the houſe and in the town. Malays are alſo ſeen here, who are the moſt intelligent, and, at the ſame time, the moſt dangerous of ſlaves. To aſſaſſinate their maſter or miſtreſs, is in their eyes but an ordinary attempt; and, in the five years which I reſided in Africa, I have ſeen this crime often repeated. They march to the ſcaffold with the utmoſt calmneſs and indifference. I heard one of theſe wretches tell Mr. Boers, that he was happy in having committed his crime; that he was well aware to what kind of death he would be condemned; but that he ardently wiſhed to ſee his life brought to a concluſion by it, as he would then ſoon return to his own country. I am aſtoniſhed that ſo violent a prejudice does not cauſe ſtill greater diſtaſters.

The

The Creole ſlaves at the Cape are the moſt eſteemed: they are always ſold at double what is given for the reſt; and when they are acquainted with a trade, their price becomes exorbitant. A cook, for example, coſts from eight to twelve hundred rix-dollars, and others in proportion to their talents. They are all properly clothed; but they go barefooted, as a mark of ſlavery. That inſolent ſet of domeſtics called *footmen*, are not to be ſeen at the Cape; for pride and luxury have not yet introduced thoſe idle and contemptible attendants, who in Europe line the antichambers of the rich, and who in their deportment exhibit every mark of impertinence.

On arriving at the Cape, one is aſtoniſhed to ſee a multitude of ſlaves as white as Europeans; but this aſtoniſhment ceaſes when it is known that the young negreſſes, if they are in the leaſt handſome, have each a ſoldier of the garriſon, with whom they may go and ſpend every Sunday in whatever manner they chooſe. Self-intereſt makes the maſters wink at the irregularity of their ſlaves, becauſe they expect to reap conſiderable profit from this licentious cohabitation.

There are ſome negreſſes, however, who are lawfully married, and negroes eſtabliſhed in buſineſs, who form one body with the citizens. Theſe are men, who, on account of their ſervices, or from ſome other motives, have been made free. The facility with which they obtained their liberty formerly, gave riſe to a multitude of abuſes; becauſe theſe people, when they grew old and infirm, or when they found themſelves deſtitute of reſources, and unable to procure a ſubſiſtence, became vagabonds and public robbers.

The

The criminals whom the government of Batavia often ſends to the Cape, in order to get rid of them, preſerve among theſe ſlaves a certain diſorder, which will always afflict them. Thoſe people, called *Bouginèes*, are Malays, all fiſhermen and harbourers of thieves: with reſpect to the latter article, their reputation is ſo well eſtabliſhed, that ſearch is always made firſt among them, when a ſlave has diſappeared, or when effects have been ſtolen.

A maſter here ſeldom puniſhes his ſlaves himſelf; he generally commits them into the hands of the fiſcal, who orders ſuch correction as they have merited to be beſtowed on them. If a maſter, however, who chooſes to puniſh his ſlave, treats him with cruelty, the latter may lodge a complaint; and if he can afterwards bring certain proof of his being again uſed in the ſame manner, the fiſcal obliges the proprietor to ſell him. Should he ſeverely wound or kill him, he would be ſubjected to corporal puniſhment, or be baniſhed to the iſle of *Roben*. Theſe wiſe laws certainly do great honour to the Dutch government; but how many means are there to elude them?

The iſle of *Roben* is ſituated at the diſtance of two leagues in the ſea, oppoſite to Table Bay, and in ſight of the city. This iſland, which takes its name from the great number of ſea-dogs found near it, is entirely flat, and of very ſmall extent. It is the *Bicetre* of the Cape. It is under the care of a corporal, who has the title of commander; and the unfortunate wretches who are confined in it muſt every day deliver a certain quantity of lime-ſtone, which they dig from quarries. The reſt of their time is employed in fiſhing, or in cultivating ſmall gardens,

gardens, for which they receive tobacco and ſome other indulgences. One cannot ſee without aſtoniſhment in what a vigorous manner greens of every kind grow here: cauliflowers above all attain to a monſtrous ſize; and, though reared amidſt ſand, their delicacy ſtill ſurpaſſes their bulk. Small violet figs, of an exquiſite flavor, grow here alſo. The wells of this ſpot ſupply its inhabitants with water equally good as that of the Cape—a very extraordinary phenomenon in an iſland ſo ſmall, and almoſt on a level with the ſea.

I have ſeen here a great many black ſerpents four feet in length, but they are not venomous: abundance of partridges, and a ſtill greater number of quails, are likewiſe found in this iſland. I have ſometimes killed from fifty to ſixty of theſe birds in a morning.

I muſt not here omit to mention an obſervation which concerns natural hiſtory. The quails of the iſle of Roben and thoſe of the Cape are abſolutely the ſame ſpecies, without any difference which might render my aſſertion even doubtful; yet the quails of the Cape are birds of paſſage. This fact is well known: and though the diſtance from the iſle of Roben to the continent be only two leagues, it is alſo certain that the quails there never emigrate. They are always equally abundant and found in every ſeaſon. If I add likewiſe that the quails of Europe are exactly of the ſame ſpecies as theſe, muſt we not conclude that the former do not paſs the ſea, as has been hitherto pretended? Some travellers aſſert as a truth, that they have obſerved them at ſea: but this does not decide the queſtion; for, at the diſtance of more than ſixty leagues from the coaſt, I have ſhot ſtarlings, chaffinches,

chaffinches, linnets, and an owl. All theſe birds, which, as is well known, never paſs the ſea, had been undoubtedly driven from their courſe by ſome violent ſtorm or hurricane; and I ſhall always believe that the caſe was the ſame with thoſe quails which have been met at ſea, until this part of the natural hiſtory of birds be better elucidated.

I am ſo much the more inclined to diſbelieve that quails croſs the ſea, becauſe they may go by land to Africa, and return by the ſame route. It is very probable that if thoſe of the iſle of Roben dare not venture to croſs that ſmall ſpace of ſea which ſeparates them from the coaſt, much leſs will they dare to hazard a paſſage incomparably more conſiderable. The quail is a very heavy bird; and the ſmallneſs of its wings, in proportion to the weight of its body, is nowiſe ſuited to a long and continued flight. There is ſcarcely a ſportſman who does not know by experience that, when he ſprings a quail three or four times ſucceſſively, it is impoſſible for it to fly any more; and that, overcome by fatigue, it ſuffers itſelf to be taken by the hand. The ſame thing happens to all other birds of this kind.

Beſides the quail common to Europe and Africa, there is found at the Cape a bird much ſmaller, which is alſo called a quail, but very improperly; for it has only three toes on each foot, and all directed forwards; a mark ſufficient to convince us that they ought not to be confounded. M. Sonnerat, in his *Voyage to India*, deſcribes a bird of the ſame kind, which he calls the *three-toed quail*. M. Desfontaines mentions alſo, in his Voyage to the Coaſts of Barbary, a like ſpecies approaching near to that of the Cape,

Cape, of which it is doubtleſs a variety. I am acquainted with two others much larger, one of the iſland of Ceylon, and the other of Java: I ſhall give a deſcription of them; and I think it will be neceſſary to make a new genus of them, to form the link of connection between the quail and the French field duck *, to which it has a great reſemblance in the conformation of its toes. Government ſends every year a detachment to the iſle of Roben, to kill ſea cows and penguins, from which an oil is extracted, particularly from the latter: they furniſh a great deal. At the point of Roben there is a ſmall creek, in which a veſſel might find ſhelter, if the ſouth-eaſt winds ſhould prevent her from reaching the roads at the Cape.

When I quitted Europe to travel into Africa, it was not a part of my plan to enter into any detail reſpecting the manners and cuſtoms of the inhabitants of the Cape, much leſs reſpecting the political, civil, and military forms of its government. This is a ſubject, I confeſs, which engaged the leaſt ſhare of my attention, and which I ſhould give an account of with the greateſt reluctance even were I intereſted in doing it. I have my own reaſons for acting with this reſerve, almoſt in the ſame manner as the reader may have his for being curious; and neither the reader nor I has any occaſion to know them. However,

* In the original *cane petiere*. This bird, in Latin called *anas pratenſis Galliæ*, according to Bomare, is peculiar to France. It is about the ſize of a pheaſant: its head reſembles that of a quail, and its bill that of a hen. It has only three toes on each foot, like the buſtard. Its head, back, and wings, are of a browniſh yellow, diverſified with black and white; its breaſt, belly, and thighs are of a paler colour, inclining to white; and its legs and feet are of an aſh colour. It is accounted very delicious eating. See a deſcription and figure of it in *Briſſon's Ornithology*, under the name of the *leſſer buſtard*. See alſo *Dictionnaire Raiſonné et Univerſel des Animaux*, under the articles *canard de prè de France*, and *cane petiere*. T.

ever, from Kolben's reveries we may collect certain facts, which a reſidence of ten years at the Cape Town gave him an opportunity of obſerving. In this point he has not impoſed ſo much on the public as may be imagined. His book, perhaps, contains truths which do not exiſt at preſent, and which have been conſidered as fables. But manners, characters, faſhions, laws, and even empires, change in the courſe of time, and exhibit variations almoſt without number. They are like the features of a countenance diſfigured by old age, and which has no reſemblance to the portrait made from it when in the bloom of youth.

The caſe is not the ſame with what this ſedentary traveller has boldly advanced reſpecting the Hottentots and their religious ceremonies. If what he deſcribes ever exiſted, the ſpirit of philoſophy, which imperiouſly hovers over Europe, muſt have a little cooled the ſcorching air of the African regions; for I obſerved there no trace of religion, nothing even that approached the idea of an avenging and rewarding ſpirit. I lived long enough with them, and among them, in the boſom of their peaceful deſerts; with theſe hardy people I have undertaken journeys to very remote parts of the country: but in no place did I perceive any thing reſembling religion, any trace of what he tells us reſpecting their legiſlation and their funerals, or of what they practiſe at the birth of their male children; and nothing, in ſhort, of what he is pleaſed to relate concerning the ridiculous and diſguſting ceremony of their marriages.

The reſidence of this man at the Cape is not yet forgotten. It is well known that he never quitted the town; and yet he ſpeaks with all the

aſſurance

assurance of an eye witness. It cannot however be doubted, that, after an abode of ten years, having failed to accomplish what he was commissioned to do, he found it much easier and more convenient to collect all the tiplers of the colony; who, treating him with derision, whilst they were drinking his wine, dictated memoirs to him from tavern to tavern; tried who could relate to him the most absurd and ridiculous anecdotes; and amused him with information until they had drained his bottles. In this manner are new discoveries made, and thus is the progress of the human mind enlarged.

JOURNEY

JOURNEY TO THE EAST OF THE CAPE, THROUGH THE COUNTRY OF NATAL AND THAT OF CAFFRARIA.

THE different preparations for my journey being now completed, I ordered all the ſcattered proviſions to be collected. They were indeed pretty conſiderable; for in that firſt efferveſcence which tranſports the imagination beyond the ordinary bounds, I neither knew nor had ſet myſelf any limits. Reſolved, on the contrary, to proceed as far and as long as I poſſibly could, I knew not whether I ſhould ever have it in my power to return; but I wiſhed above all to guard againſt the diſagreeable diſappointment of being obliged to ſtop, through the want of things abſolutely requiſite. Even to articles, therefore, the utility of which did not ſeem to have a direct object, I omitted nothing that might be neceſſary to my preſervation in unforeſeen circumſtances; and I was always afraid that I ſhould have occaſion to reproach myſelf with ſome prejudicial neglect. The three months which I paſſed at the Cape and in the neighbourhood, after my return from Saldanha Bay, were ſcarcely ſufficient for making all theſe preparations.

I had ordered two large four-wheeled waggons to be conſtructed, which were covered with double ſail-cloth; and five large boxes, which exactly fitted the bottom of one of theſe carriages, and which could be opened without being diſplaced: over theſe was a large mattreſs, upon which I propoſed to ſleep during my journey, in caſe want of time or any other circumſtance ſhould prevent me from erecting tents. This mattreſs rolled back upon the laſt box, and it was there that I generally placed a cabinet or cheſt of drawers deſtined to receive inſects, butterflies, and ſuch tender objects as required great care and attention.

I had ſo perfectly ſucceeded in the conſtruction of this box; my collections were preſerved there ſo well, and they arrived in ſuch good condition, that, for the benefit of naturaliſts who ſtudy this branch, and who may be incited to undertake a like journey, I ſhall, with great pleaſure, deſcribe its form. It was about two feet and a half high, eighteen inches in depth, and as much in breadth. It was divided lengthwiſe into compartments, each containing a drawer, which roſe only three inches from the bottom. Theſe drawers placed thus vertically drew upwards, and were open below, ſo that, if violent jolts (and of theſe we had a good many) happened to detach any of the inſects from their frames, they fell to the bottom of the box into the empty ſpace of three inches, which I had reſerved, and could in no wiſe hurt thoſe that remained firm: a coat of virgin wax, two or three lines in thickneſs, melted with linſeed oil, and applied to the bottom of the box, ſtopped its pores, and by its ſmell kept at a diſtance all deſtructive vermin.

This

This firſt waggon, which carried almoſt my whole arſenal, we called the *maſter waggon*. The compartments of one of the five boxes already mentioned were filled with large ſquare bottles, each containing five or ſix pounds of gunpowder. This was placed there only for immediate uſe, and to ſupply the wants of the moment. My general magazine was compoſed of ſeveral ſmall barrels; and, to preſerve them from fire or moiſture, I rolled them up in ſheep's ſkins newly flayed. This covering, when once dry, was abſolutely impenetrable. Reckoning every thing, I could depend upon four or five hundred pounds of gunpowder, and two thouſand, at leaſt, of lead and tin, either unwrought or formed into ſhot and bullets. Of ſixteen fuſees I had twelve in one carriage: one of theſe, intended for large animals, ſuch as the rhinoceros, the elephant, and the hippopotamus, carried a ball that weighed a quarter of a pound. Beſides theſe I was provided with ſeveral pairs of double-barrelled piſtols, a large cimeter, and a poniard. The ſecond waggon exhibited in caricature the moſt curious apparatus perhaps ever ſeen; but it was no leſs valuable to me on that account. It was my kitchen. What delicious and peaceable repaſts did I enjoy! and how dear to my heart the remembrance of my charming and domeſtic life ſtill is! Whenever I am preſent at thoſe dinners of ceremony and conſtraint, where languor generally preſides, the diſguſt which they occaſion conveys me ſuddenly back to the gentle noiſe of our haltings, and preſents to my imagination the moſt lively and variegated picture of my good Hottentots employed in preparing a dinner for their friend.

My kitchen utenſils were far from being conſiderable. I had a gridiron, a frying pan, two

large kettles, a cauldron, a few china plates and diſhes, coffee-pots, tea-pots, cups, bowls, and ſome boilers. Theſe were almoſt all the articles which compoſed my houſehold furniture.

Beſides theſe, for my own perſon, I had provided myſelf with linen of every kind, a large ſtock of white and candied ſugar, coffee, tea, and a few pounds of chocolate.

As I conceived it would be neceſſary for me to ſupply the Hottentots who accompanied me with tobacco and ſtrong liquors, I produced an ample abundance of the firſt article, and three caſks of the latter. I carried with me alſo a large quantity of glaſs ware, toys, and other curioſities, to exchange with the natives as occaſion might require, or to gain their friendſhip. To all theſe things belonging to my caravan, I muſt ſtill add a large and a ſmall tent, inſtruments neceſſary for repairing my waggons, and for melting lead; a jack for raiſing burdens, a quantity of nails, iron in bars and in ſmall pieces; pins, thread, needles, diſtilled liquors, &c. &c. Such was the cargo of my two carriages, which might weigh each nearly about two tons. I muſt not here forget to ſpeak of my dreſſing box, which afforded me much amuſement. Nothing could equal the aſtoniſhment which it occaſioned to the ſavages in the remote parts of the country. I always made uſe of it in their preſence; and their converſation on this ſubject has more than once prolonged my toilet, and procured me a very agreeable recreation.

My train was compoſed of thirty oxen; twenty for my two carriages, and ten more to relieve them; three hunters, nine dogs, and five Hottentots: but I afterwards conſiderably augmented the number of my animals and attendants. That

of

of the latter amounted ſometimes to forty. It increaſed or diminiſhed according to the heat of my kitchen; for in the boſom of the African deſarts, as in more countries, one meets with abundance of agreeable paraſites, whoſe countenances are ſeldom tinged with a bluſh: theſe, however, without being very burdenſome, were not entirely uſeleſs to me, and they did not diſappear when the cloth was removed.

My projected journey being known throughout all the Cape Town, when the time of my departure approached, I was ſtrongly ſolicited by ſeveral people who wiſhed to accompany me. Every one ſtrove who ſhould firſt offer his ſervices: but theſe gentlemen and I reaſoned in a very different manner. They imagined that their propoſals would afford me great joy; and they could never believe that I intended to depart alone. Such an idea appeared to them to be altogether ridiculous; whilſt I, on the contrary, conſidered it as the height of wiſdom and prudence. I had been informed that, of all the expeditions ſet on foot by government for making diſcoveries in the interior parts of Africa, not one had ſucceeded. I knew likewiſe that a diverſity of humours and characters could never conduce to the ſame end: in a word, that concord ſo neceſſary in a hazardous and new enterprize could not be preſerved among men, where ſelf-love would make them flatter themſelves with gaining an equal ſhare in the honour of its ſucceſs. After theſe reflections, I was unwilling to expoſe myſelf to the riſk of loſing the expences of my journey, and the fruits which I expected to derive from it. I wiſhed to ſet out alone, and to be abſolute maſter of myſelf: I therefore kept firm to my purpoſe; and, rejecting all theſe offers, cut

ſhort

ſhort every propoſal of the kind that was made to me. When my equipage was entirely ready, I took leave of my friends, and on the 18th of December 1781, at nine in the morning, I departed, eſcorting my convoy, myſelf on horſeback. I did not intend to make a long march. According to the plan which I had laid down, I directed my courſe towards Hottentot Holland; and I ſtopped about evening at the bottom of thoſe mountains by which it is bounded on the eaſt ſide of the Cape.

Being then entirely abandoned to myſelf, and expecting no ſupport or aſſiſtance but from my own arm, I returned, as I may ſay, to the primitive ſtate of man; and breathed, for the firſt time in my life, the delicious and pure air of liberty.

I was now obliged to ſubject my operations, as well as my people, to ſome order; for every thing depended on my commencement. Without being a deep philoſopher, I was ſufficiently acquainted with mankind to know that thoſe who wiſh to be obeyed, muſt preſcribe laws; and that, unleſs they are firm and vigilant over their actions, they can never flatter themſelves with being able to rule thoſe who are under them. I had to fear, every moment, that I ſhould be abandoned by my attendants, or that my weakneſs would lead them into diſorder. Without affectation, therefore, I purſued a prudent courſe, which I always followed afterwards; and no circumſtance whatever made me relax, even for a ſingle day, in my uſeful ſeverity.

We had ſcarcely halted, when I gave orders for the cattle to be unyoked in my preſence; and I ſent my oxen to feed, under the care of

two

two of my people, in whom I had obſerved more punctuality and intelligence. With the reſt, I reviewed my carriages and effects, in order to ſee that nothing was deranged. I even examined the wheels and the harneſs: and I diſtributed to each his employment; and addreſſed them all, in a ſhort ſpeech, reſpecting the different occupations which would be afterwards aſſigned to them. This procedure immediately inſpired them with an idea that I was a careful and prudent man, and that the leaſt remiſſneſs in their ſervice could not eſcape me. After this ceremony, I mounted my horſe, and went to reconnoitre the road on the mountain, which we were to traverſe next day. On my return, I found my oxen in excellent condition, and a large fire burning, which I had ordered to be kindled. Having made a ſlight ſupper on the proviſions which we had brought from the town, we retired to reſt; I in my carriage, and my Hottentots under the canopy of heaven.

Next morning we yoked our oxen before day, and prepared ourſelves for attempting the mountain; but we could not reach its ſummit without being in great danger of breaking our carriages, and laming our oxen. The road is cut out even, on the back part of it; but it is ſo ſteep, and ſo rough with ſplinters of rock, that I am aſtoniſhed government ſhould have ſo much neglected the only route by which the inhabitants of theſe cantons can go to the Cape. On the top of the mountain there is a noble and moſt extenſive proſpect, including all the plantations ſcattered throughout a vaſt valley, incloſed by a chain of other mountains, and the ſea.

We

We were here obliged to unyoke our oxen, to ſuffer them to take breath, and to give them ſome hours repoſe. Uneaſy reſpecting the deſcent, and deſirous to know the ſafeſt method of gaining the plain country, I employed this ſhort interval in taking a ſurvey of the neighbourhood. Having obſerved that a gradual and gentle declivity on the back of the mountain would conduct us, without danger, to that charming country, I was entirely freed from my embarraſſment; and returning ſoon after to my caravan, we reſumed our march. The road, indeed, was very convenient for our carriages, and did not in the leaſt impede their motion: we deſcended, therefore, with a pleaſure and tranquility equal to the pain and inquietude which we had felt on the other ſide. As ſavage animals ſeldom make their appearance in theſe cantons, having nothing to fear, and no precautions to take, we continued our march till ten at night, and arrived at the river *Palmit*, thus named by the Dutch, on account of the great quantity of reeds which grow on its banks.

When we awoke next morning, we ſought for our oxen, but in vain; they had all diſappeared: not being yet accuſtomed to lie down by our carriages during the night, they had diſperſed themſelves on all ſides. My people, however, went in queſt of them; but it was a long time before they could get them together, and we were not in a condition to depart before nine. About eleven, obſerving a plantation at the diſtance of fifty paces from me, I advanced towards it; when the owner, who doubtleſs had ſeen my caravan, came to meet me. As ſoon as he perceived me, he made himſelf known; and I found that he was the ſame perſon who, at the

the Cape, had ſold me my *maſter waggon*, with the five pair of oxen that drew it. On this occaſion, I could not help ſtopping and accepting a dinner, which he offered me in the moſt preſſing manner: I complied with his requeſt eſpecially, when he confeſſed to me, that, having learned at the Cape the day of my departure, and the route I intended to purſue, he had taken the ſtart of me with his people, and made preparations to entertain me at his houſe. I ordered my oxen to be unyoked on the ſpot where he had met me; and going along with him, was received very politely by his wife and two pretty daughters, who compoſed his whole family. Till the hour of dinner, we employed our time in viewing his eſtate; and, during our repaſt, he did not fail to enlarge upon the excellence of the waggon which I had purchaſed from him. I was even obliged to liſten to a long hiſtory, in which he recited all the good qualities of each of the oxen that drew it. I muſt, indeed, do him the juſtice to ſay that he did not deceive me: I have ſince found, and, I muſt allow, much to Mr. Smit's honour, that theſe oxen were the beſt I ever employed, and the moſt to be depended upon; and that, in my extraordinary courſes, and the moſt dangerous paſſes, his waggon, ſolidly conſtructed, held out to the very laſt.

Notwithſtanding the entreaties of this good family, who invited me to ſpend the night with them, I departed as ſoon as we had dined; and, after ſome hours march, we croſſed the river *Bot*, and the whole canton called *Ouwe-Hoeck*. I wiſhed to make up for the time I had loſt at dinner; and, on that account, it was eleven at night

night when we halted, near a ſmall pond of brackiſh water.

Scarcely had the ſun appeared above the horizon, when we proceeded on our journey; and, in the morning, we ſtopped at the houſe of Francis Bathenos, who ſent me a loaf which I requeſted from him, and for which he refuſed payment. He ſent to requeſt that I would alight; but I refuſed, not wiſhing in any manner to loſe my time in paying viſits. In this country I every moment met with prodigious flocks of that kind of antelopes which the planters call *reebock*: it is as yet very little known: Mr. Sparmann only makes mention of it; and the name of this animal, in the French edition of his work, is badly tranſlated; for *reebock* does not ſignify *red goat*, but *goat of the ſea ſhore*.—The noon-tide heat became ſo exceſſive, that I was obliged to ſtop; and, whilſt my people and cattle were breathing a little, I made a ſmall excurſion, in which I killed one of theſe reebocks: it was a male; its colour, in general, was a delicate grey, darker upon the back than the ſides, and its belly was white: it was not abſolutely reddiſh, nor were its horns more than five or ſix inches in length. Doctor Sparmann, who ſays he deſcribes them only from memory, muſt have been deceived, when he gives them a foot in length. The deſcription and figure of this antelope will be found in my Account of the Quadrupedes of Africa. In returning to my people, we ſtopped a little time, to eat a few ſteaks from the animal I had killed; and, in the ſpace of four leagues, which we travelled, in order to find a convenient ſpot for encamping, we ſaw near us, on all ſides,

flocks

flocks of antelopes, bontebocks*, and bubales†, together with ſome zebras, &c. &c. and ſeveral oſtriches. The variety and gait of theſe large flocks were very amuſing, and worthy of engaging the attention of a naturaliſt. My dogs purſued with great keenneſs all theſe different ſpecies, which croſſed each other as they fled, and ſometimes found themſelves all promiſcuouſly collected into one body, according as the dogs attacked them. This confuſion, like the machinery of the ſtage, ſcarcely required a moment to be remedied; I recalled my dogs, and each individual inſtantly returned to its flock, which kept at a certain diſtance from the reſt. This ſpectacle will be more eaſily conceived, if one thinks of the month of May in Holland: nothing is then to be ſeen but innumerable flocks of cattle, ſeparated from each other with a kind of ſymmetry, and which are never confounded together. Theſe animals were ſo full of curioſity, and ſo tame, that, had it not been for my dogs, I might have killed a great number of them from my carriage; but the approach of my dogs put them all to flight.

A curioſity equally familiar ſeems to characterize all animals with horns, and particularly antelopes; there were none but zebras and oſtriches which kept at a great diſtance.

Being only four or five leagues from ſome warm baths, much boaſted of by the inhabitants of the Cape, I was deſirous of ſeeing them; though I was, at the ſame time, afraid that my journey would be retarded. To gain on the one hand what I was about to loſe on the other, I departed

* The *antilope ſcripta* of Mr. Pallas.

† The *antilope bubalis*.

departed earlier than uſual; and at ten in the morning we found ourſelves cloſe to them. This ſpring of warm mineral water, diſtant from the Cape about thirty leagues, is generally held in great eſtimation. Government have cauſed a very ſpacious and convenient building to be erected here, for the uſe of ſuch invalids as may be deſirous of bathing: their lodging, indeed, coſts them nothing; but theſe invalids are obliged to furniſh their own neceſſaries, which is not eaſily done in a country that affords very few reſources. In this place there are two ſeparate baths, one for the blacks, and another for the whites. Near this alſo is ſituated that mountain, called the Tower of Babel, the height of which has been ſo much exaggerated by Kolben: it is far from approaching that of the Table Mount. Around this place, the company, under the auſpices of a corporal, have eſtabliſhed ſeveral repoſitories, where they feed all thoſe cattle that are neceſſary for ſupplying their veſſels with proviſions.

Next morning I paſſed the river *Steenbock*, not far from which is a beautiful ſeat belonging to a widow named Wiſſel; and after dinner, before I croſſed a ſecond river called Sonder End, I ſaw in my way the *Zicken-Huys*. This is a repoſitory or rather hoſpital for the diſeaſed oxen belonging to the company: they are here cured ſometimes; but this eſtabliſhment is attended with one utility, which is that theſe animals cannot convey their infection to thoſe that are well, and which are ſeparated from them.

I had reſolved to travel during the whole night; but I was obliged to halt at nine in the evening, in the valley of *Soete-Melck*, as a boggy marſh impeded us in our way: it would not have been

been prudent to entangle ourſelves in it whilſt it was dark.

Early in the morning I obſerved at a little diſtance a beautiful houſe, which was a poſt belonging to the company, and commanded by Mr. Martines. As I was acquainted with him, having been ſeveral times in his company at the fiſcal's houſe at the Cape, I paid him a viſit. Like all the reſt of the planters, he invited me to ſpend a few days with him; but my impatience to proceed on my journey made me reject his kind offer. About noon I paſſed near a ſmall horde of Hottentots, who appeared to me ſo miſerable and wretched, that I gave them a few preſents. I found no cattle of any kind among them; they ſubſiſted entirely by what they could procure for their labour in the neighbouring plantations. I invited ſeveral of them to follow me, and promiſed to pay them well on their return; but they could not be prevailed on, until I had aſſured them that I would give them a quantity of tobacco, ſufficient to ſerve them on the road. They then promiſed that they would be at my ſervice.—Having paſſed the night at *Tiger-Hoec*, or the tigers corner, I waited for my recruits till nine in the morning; but at the moment when I began to deſpair of them, and to think of continuing my journey, they arrived, to the number of three, with their arms and baggage. This ſmall reinforcement gave me great pleaſure: they mixed with the reſt; and, having ſoon got acquainted, I put off my departure till the afternoon, reſolving in the mean time to make a little tour in the neighbourhood. One of the new comers aſked permiſſion to follow me, aſſuring me that he was an excellent huntſman; but as I had carried with me from

Europe

Europe that prejudice which people generally have againſt thoſe who ſound their own praiſes. I had no great confidence in the talents of my Hottentot. I however ordered a fuſee to be given to him; and we ſet out together.

We ſoon ſaw ſome flocks of antelopes, with which the whole country was covered, but they always kept out of our reach: at length, after a good deal of running, my hunter ſtopping all of a ſudden, called out to me that he perceived a *blaw-bock*, a blue goat, ſquatted down. I immediately turned my eyes towards the place which he pointed out, but I obſerved nothing. He then begged me to remain quiet, and not to move, aſſuring me that he would ſoon put me in poſſeſſion of the animal. He immediately made a turn round, creeping on his knees, whilſt I watched him cloſely; but I could not comprehend the meaning of this ſtratagem, which to me was entirely new. Soon after the animal roſe up, and began to browſe quietly, without removing from the place. I at firſt took it for a white horſe; for from the place in which I ſtood it appeared to me to be wholly of that colour, having never before that period ſeen an antelope of this ſpecies; but I was ſoon undeceived when I obſerved its horns. My Hottentot in the mean time continued to drag himſelf along on his belly; and approaching quickly near enough to take aim, fired at it, upon which it inſtantly fell.—I was ſo overjoyed that I made only one ſtep to the place; and I had the pleaſure of contemplating at my leiſure the moſt curious and beautiful ſpecies of antelope that Africa produces. For this ſervice I aſſured my Hottentot that I would reward him generouſly when I returned to our encampment. The intelligence

intelligence of this man, and the various methods he employed to ſurprize the animal, rendered his ſervice of great value and importance: on this account I reſolved to gain him over by all thoſe allurements which ſeduce the Hottentots. I began by giving him a large proviſion of tobacco; and to this preſent I added ſome tinder, a tinder-box, and one of my beſt knives: he immediately made uſe of the latter, and began to flay the animal with the ſame dexterity as he had fired. The ſkin I carefully preſerved.

This antelope has been deſcribed by Pennant under the name of the *blue antelope*, and by Buffon under that of the *tſeiran*. The latter has given the figure of a part of its horns: it is rare, and very little known. During my reſidence in Africa, I never ſaw but two of theſe antelopes, and another which was brought to the governor ſome years before, when I lived at the Cape Town. Theſe, as well as mine, came from the valley of *Soete-Melk*, the only canton which they inhabit. I was aſſured that I ſhould ſee ſome of them in the country of the great Nimiquas; but notwithſtanding this information, and all my reſearches, I found myſelf diſappointed: all the ſavages affirmed that they were not acquainted with them. I was aſſured alſo that the female had horns as well as the male; but I can ſay nothing on that head, ſince the three which I ſaw were all of the ſame kind.

The principal colour of this animal is a faint blue, inclining to grey; but the belly and the interior part of the legs, throughout their whole length, are as white as ſnow; the head, above all, is beautifully ſpotted with white.

I did

I did not obſerve, as Dr. Sparmann ſays, that this antelope when alive reſembles blue velvet, and that when dead the ſkin changes its colour; living or dead it appeared to me always alike. The tints of that which I brought with me never varied. I ſaw another at Amſterdam, which had been kept for more than fifteen years. The caſe was the ſame with regard to that belonging to the governor of the Cape: it was ſtill freſher than mine, but in other reſpects they were equal. I cannot help adding here, that I never found this animal properly repreſented in any of the engravings or figures which I have hitherto ſeen of it. In my deſcription of African quadrupedes, I ſhall give one from a drawing which I made of this upon the ſpot, before it was ſkinned.

Next morning, the weather being cool and cloudy, we marched ſix hours in order to reach the borders of a very large pond abounding with ſmall tortoiſes, of which we caught about twenty; we broiled them all in the ſame manner on the coals, and found them excellent. They were from ſeven to eight inches in length, and about four in breadth. The ſhell on the back was of a whitiſh grey colour, inclining a little to yellow: when alive, they had a diſagreeable ſmell; but by roaſting them it was entirely deſtroyed.

It is very remarkable that, when the waters are dried up by exceſſive heat, the tortoiſes, which always ſeek for moiſture, bury themſelves under the earth in proportion as the ſurface of it becomes dry; to find them, it is then ſufficient to dig to a conſiderable depth, in the ſpot where they have concealed themſelves. They generally remain as if aſleep; and never awaken,

awaken, or make their appearance, until the rainy ſeaſon has ſupplied the ponds and ſmall lakes with water, on the borders of which they depoſit their eggs, where they continue expoſed to the air; they are as large as thoſe of a pigeon: they leave to the heat and the ſun the care of hatching them. Theſe eggs have an excellent taſte; the white, which never becomes hard by the force of fire, preſerves the tranſparency of a blueiſh jelly.

I do not know whether this inſtinct be common to every ſpecies of water tortoiſes, and whether they all employ the ſame means; but this I can aſſert, that every time, during the great droughts, when I wiſhed to procure any of them, by digging in thoſe places where there had been water, I always found as many as I had occaſion for.

This method of fiſhing, or whatever elſe it may be called, was not new to me: for at Surinam a ſtratagem of the ſame kind is employed to catch two ſpecies of fiſh, which bury themſelves alſo; and which are called, one the *varaape*, and the other the *gorret* or the *kevikwi*.

Our waggons being ſtationed on the banks of this pond, frightened a great number of antelopes which were coming to drink, and prevented them from approaching us.

The bontebocks, above all, appeared in flocks of two thouſand at leaſt. I am perſuaded that this day, including bubales, antelopes of all kinds, zebras, and oſtriches, I had before my eyes at one time more than four or five thouſand animals: of all theſe, however, I wiſhed only for an oſtrich; but could find no method of gratifying my deſire, for theſe birds would not ſuffer us to approach them. The other ſpe-

cies, though rather timid, were from time to time within reach of a ſhot; but I was unwilling to fire for the mere pleaſure of deſtroying them: we had abundance of proviſions; and my powder, beſides, was too valuable.

Between us and Swellendam we had now only two rivers: *Breede-Rivier*, the broad river; and *Klip-Rivier*, or the river of flints. I was extremely deſirous of being acquainted with this ſpot, which is the principal place of the colony: I propoſed to ſpend a few days in it, and to ſurvey all theſe animals attentively at my leiſure. We arrived there the day following, very early.

Of all the rivers which we had croſſed, the moſt conſiderable were Diep-Rivier and Breede-Rivier. The reſt are ſcarcely rivulets, during the great heats; but in the rainy ſeaſon they are ſoon converted into impetuous torrents, which cut off all communication with the Cape Town.

At Swellendam I remained ſeveral days with Mr. Ryneveld, the bailiff of the place, who treated me with great civility and politeneſs. Finding my two carriages overloaded, and too heavy, I was ſenſible that it would be neceſſary for me to procure a third. My hoſt was kind enough to order one with two wheels to be conſtructed for me; and, when I departed, he ſupplied me with a large quantity of freſh proviſions.

I recruited a few more Hottentots; and I purchaſed ſeveral oxen and goats; together with a cow, to afford me milk; and a cock, which I intended to be my natural alarum in the morning.

There is not a ſingle naturaliſt, nor even a clown, in the country, who does not know that

that a cock crows regularly during night at the ſame hour, and that he takes care to proclaim the return of day.

I muſt here obſerve that ſome have pretended, in more than one public paper, to ridicule this precaution (which procured me pleaſure, if it did not afford me a reſource in the moment of neceſſity), by making me utter abſurd ſpeeches, which agree very ill with the emphaſis of the narrator. When they aſſured the public that I expected to ſupply by a cock the place of my watch, ſhould it happen to be deranged, they ought alſo to have informed the incredulous, at leaſt, in what manner a cock can ever become a watch. In the ſame ſtyle it has been ſaid, that, meeting a lion for the firſt time, "*we meaſured each other with a haughty look*, " and ſuffered each other to paſs quietly; both " ſatisfied with our noble countenances."

But leaving theſe poetical romances, I can ſay that my hopes in my cock were not diſappointed. This animal, which always rooſted either on my tent or my waggon, regularly announced to me the appearance of aurora. He ſoon grew tame; never quitted the neighbourhood of my camp; and, if the want of food induced him to go any diſtance, he always returned on the approach of night. Sometimes he was purſued by ſmall quadrupedes of the weaſel or polecat kind; and I have ſeen him, half flying and half running, retreat towards us, making as loud a noiſe as he could: but on ſuch occaſions ſome of my people or dogs never failed to go ſpeedily to his aſſiſtance.

An animal that rendered me more eſſential ſervice; which, by its uſeful preſence, ſuſpended and even diſſipated certain bitter and diſ-

agreeable reflections that occurred to my mind; which, by its ſimple and ſtriking inſtinct, ſeemed to anticipate my efforts; and which comforted me in my languor—was an ape, of that kind ſo common at the Cape, under the name of *bawians*. As it was extremely familiar, and attached itſelf to me in a particular manner, I made it my taſter. When we found any fruit or roots unknown to my Hottentots, we never touched them until my dear Kees had firſt taſted them; if it refuſed them, we judged them to be either diſagreeable or dangerous, and threw them away.

An ape has one peculiarity which diſtinguiſhes it from all other animals, and brings it very near to man. It has received from nature an equal ſhare of greedineſs and curioſity: though deſtitute of appetite, it taſtes without neceſſity every kind of food that is offered to it; and always lays its paw upon every thing that it finds within its reach.

There was another quality in Kees which I valued ſtill more. He was my beſt guardian; and, whether by night or by day, he inſtantly awoke on the leaſt ſign of danger. By his cries, and other expreſſions of fear, we were always informed of the approach of an enemy before my dogs could diſcover it: they were ſo accuſtomed to his voice, that they ſlept in perfect ſecurity, and never went the rounds; on which account I was extremely angry, fearing that I ſhould no longer find that indiſpenſable aſſiſtance which I had a right to expect, if any diſorder or fatal accident ſhould deprive me of my faithful guardian. However, when he had once given the alarm, they all ſtopped to watch the ſignal; and on the leaſt motion of his eyes, or ſhaking of his head,

head, I have ſeen them all ruſh forwards, and ſcamper away in that quarter to which they obſerved his looks directed.

I often carried him along with me in my hunting excurſions; during which he would amuſe himſelf in climbing up trees, in order to ſearch for gum, which he was remarkably fond of. Sometimes he diſcovered honey in the crevices of rocks, or in hollow trees; but when he found nothing, when fatigue and exerciſe had whetted his appetite, and when he began to be ſeriouſly oppreſſed by hunger, a ſcene took place which to me appeared extremely comic. When he could not find gum and honey, he ſearched for roots, and ate them with much reliſh; eſpecially one of a particular ſpecies, which, unfortunately for me, I found excellent and very refreſhing, and which I greatly wiſhed to partake of. But Kees was very cunning: when he found any of this root, if I was not near him to claim my part, he made great haſte to devour it, having his eyes all the time directed towards me. By the diſtance I had to go before I could approach him, he judged of the time that he had to eat it alone; and I indeed arrived too late. Sometimes, however, when he was deceived in his calculation, and when I came upon him ſooner than he expected, he inſtantly endeavoured to conceal the morſels from me: but, by means of a blow well applied, I obliged him to reſtore the theft; and in my turn becoming maſter of the envied prey, he was obliged to receive laws from the ſtronger party. Kees entertained no hatred or rancour; and I eaſily made him comprehend how deteſtable that baſe ſelfiſhneſs was, of which he had ſet me an example.

To

To tear up theſe roots, he purſued a very ingenious method, which afforded me much amuſement. He laid hold of the tuft of leaves with his teeth; and preſſing his fore paws firmly againſt the earth, and drawing his head backwards, the root generally followed: when this method, which required conſiderable force, did not ſucceed, he ſeized the tuft as before, as cloſe to the earth as he could; then throwing his heels over his head, the root always yielded to the jerk which he gave it. In our marches, when he found himſelf tired, he got upon the back of one of my dogs, which had the complaiſance to carry him for whole hours together: one only, which was larger and ſtronger than the reſt, ought to have ſerved him for this purpoſe; but the cunning animal well knew how to avoid this drudgery. The moment he perceived Kees on his ſhoulders, he remained motionleſs, and ſuffered the caravan to paſs on without ever ſtirring from the ſpot. The timorous Kees ſtill perſiſted; but as ſoon as he began to loſe ſight of us, he was obliged to diſmount: and both he and the dog ran with all their might to overtake us. For fear of being ſurpriſed, the dog dexterouſly ſuffered him to get before him, and watched him with great attention. In ſhort, he had acquired an aſcendancy over my whole pack, for which he was perhaps indebted to the ſuperiority of his inſtinct; for among animals, as among men, addreſs often gets the better of ſtrength. While at his meals, Kees could not endure gueſts: if any of the dogs approached too near him at that time, he gave them a hearty blow, which theſe poltroons never returned, but ſcampered away as faſt as they could.

It appeared to me extremely ſingular, and I could not account for it, that, next to the ſerpent, the animal which he moſt dreaded was one of his own ſpecies: whether it was that he was ſenſible that his being tamed had deprived him of great part of his faculties, and that fear had got poſſeſſion of his ſenſes; or that he was jealous, and dreaded a rivalſhip in my friendſhip. It would have been very eaſy for me to catch wild ones, and to tame them; but I never thought of it. I had given Kees a place in my heart, which no other after him could occupy; and I ſufficiently teſtified how far he might depend on my conſtancy. Sometimes he heard others of the ſame ſpecies making a noiſe in the mountains; and, notwithſtanding his terror, he thought proper, I know not for what reaſon, to reply to them. When they heard his voice, they approached: but, as ſoon as he perceived any of them, he fled with horrible cries; and, running between our legs, implored the protection of every body, while his limbs quivered through fear. We found it no eaſy matter to calm him; but he gradually reſumed, after ſome time, his natural tranquillity. He was very much addicted to thieving, a fault common to almoſt all domeſtic animals; but in Kees it was diſguiſed into a talent, the ingenious efforts of which I admired. Notwithſtanding all the correction beſtowed upon him by my people, who took the matter ſeriouſly, he was never amended. He knew perfectly well how to untie the ropes of a baſket, to take proviſions from it; and, above all, milk, of which he was remarkably fond: more than once he has made me go without any. I often beat him pretty ſeverely myſelf;

ſelf; but, when he eſcaped from me, he did not appear at my tent till towards night.

On theſe details I have dwelt with great pleaſure; and if they are nothing to the progreſs of human knowledge, they are a great deal for my ſimple and ingenuous heart. They recal to my memory very agreeable amuſements; hours of ſerenity and peace, and the only moments of my life in which I have known the full value of exiſtence. During the whole time that I reſided at Swellendam, I made a ſuitable return to the tender cares of my hoſt by the moſt lively gratitude: but this was not the manner of life that ſuited my humour; and as ſoon as my two-wheeled waggon was finiſhed, I packed up my kitchen furniture and my other effects, and ſet out, without delay, on the 12th of January 1782. According to the information I had received, I directed my courſe always along the eaſtern coaſt, keeping at a certain diſtance from the ſea. The corn farms do not extend further in this quarter: the moderate price of grain is not an equivalent for the difficulty of tranſporting it to the town.

Two leagues from this place I paſſed a ſmall river, named *Bufflas*; and after two days march we arrived at a wood called the Grandfather's wood. Whilſt I was making preparations for ſpending twenty-four hours in this wood, which I wiſhed to traverſe, and was counting my dogs, I perceived that one was miſſing, which was a favourite bitch, named *Roſetta*. Her abſence embarraſſed me very much: it was a real loſs, that reduced my pack almoſt to nothing; and deprived me of my favourite, which on her part loved me much. Having aſked one of my people if any of them had obſerved her on the road, one of them

them aſſured me that he had given her ſome food, but in the morning. After a fruitleſs ſearch of an hour or two, I made my people diſperſe, and call her on all ſides: I alſo ordered ſome fuſees to be fired; that the reports, if they reached her, might direct her what courſe to purſue. But as all this did not ſucceed, I cauſed one of my Hottentots to get on horſeback, bidding him return the ſame way we had come, and bring her back to me whatever it might coſt. After four hours I had the pleaſure of ſeeing my meſſenger arrive full gallop, carrying before him, on the bow of his ſaddle, a chair and a large pannier. Roſetta ran before him; and leaping upon me, almoſt oppreſſed me with her careſſes. My Hottentot told me that he had found her at the diſtance of two leagues from the place where we halted, ſitting upon the road, cloſe to a chair and a baſket, which had got looſe from our baggage without being perceived. I had heard many circumſtances, no leſs extraordinary than this, related of the fidelity of dogs; but I had never before been a witneſs to an inſtance of it. I confeſs that the account given me by my meſſenger affected me ſo much, that I ſhed tears. I again careſſed the poor animal; and this mark of attachment which ſhe had given, endeared her ſtill more to me. Had ſhe not been found, ſhe muſt have periſhed by hunger on the ſpot, or become a prey during night to the firſt ferocious animal that might have met her. As the fuſees which I ordered to be diſcharged on her account, had not rouſed any game; and as I was beſides convinced, from an exact ſurvey of the foreſt, that I could not hope to find any, we proceeded on our march the next morning.

Scarcely

Scarcely had we advanced four leagues, when, in croſſing a ſmall river which takes its ſource in this foreſt, my two-wheeled waggon was overturned. The remainder of the day was ſcarcely ſufficient for us to recover, dry, and put in order, my kitchen furniture and neceſſaries: a great part of my porcelain being broken, was left on the ſpot; but very luckily I had more to replace it. Having proceeded three leagues further, we were ſtopped by the river Duyvenochs, which at that time was not fordable. As this country was covered with wood, I flattered myſelf with the hopes of finding pretty birds and inſects: reſolving, therefore, to wait till the river ſhould decreaſe, I ordered my tents to be erected at the edge of the foreſt, while my Hottentots conſtructed ſome huts.

I was, however, very unlucky; for the inhabitants of the neighbourhood, informed of my arrival, came with great eagerneſs to pay me a viſit, and to diſturb me in my charming retreat. I was teaſed with the long preambles they made to their obliging ſpeeches, in which they reproached me for not ſtopping among them; and haraſſing me with the offers which they repeated, under a thouſand different forms, to prevail upon me, they mentioned, with much emphaſis, ſeveral curious travellers whom they had entertained, and particularly Dr. Sparmann, a member of the Swediſh Academy: but, however reſpectable this authority appeared, I thought proper not to quit my camp.

I had reſolved never to lodge in any habitation, during the courſe of my travels, that I might be more at freedom, both in the day-time and in the night; and that I might have my people and baggage always at hand, in order

to

to huſband thoſe valuable moments which one muſt always ſacrifice to the idle talk and abſurd relations of theſe planters, who fatigue you with their tales, and exhauſt you with their queſtions; but, above all, that I might ſave my ſpirituous liquors, with which I ſhould have been continually obliged to enliven their tedious converſations. I therefore thanked theſe gentlemen, who were not able to divert me from my purpoſe, ſo firm and irrevocable was my reſolution. The conduct of Dr. Sparrman was no example to me; for our different views muſt have given us different ideas: he had occaſion only for daylight, to enable him to purſue his botanical reſearches; but as I often ſpent a part of the night in hunting, if I found it neceſſary, I ſhould have been obliged to abſtain from this practice, or to derange my hoſts. Another motive, which is purely perſonal, may, in two words, give an idea of my character, and of the plan of life which it had induced me to embrace: ſhould it appear to be a mark of ſelf-love, my age, the education I have received, my country, and the difficulties I overcame, will, I hope, eaſily plead my excuſe. Though I acknowledge the utility of proper highways among civilized nations, my being accuſtomed to form them myſelf, in my youth, at Surinam, made me always conſider them as a reſtraint which leſſens the value of liberty. Proud of his origin, man thinks it an indignity that people ſhould beforehand dare to number his ſteps. I have always carefully avoided beaten tracks; and never thought myſelf completely free, but when ſurrounded by the rocks, foreſts, and deſerts of Africa. I was certain of meeting with no other traces of human labour than thoſe which

I left

I left myſelf. By the freedom of my will, which commanded then with ſovereign ſway, and by my complete independence, I really perceived in man the monarch of all animated beings, the abſolute deſpot of nature. Situations which I thought delightful, might by others be thought very alarming. Theſe whimſical notions proceeded from the impreſſions I received in the early part of my life; they are only the pure and natural ſentiments of liberty, which rejects, without diſtinction, every thing that ſeems deſirous of preſcribing it bounds. I was attached to my principles by too many reaſons not to adhere rigidly to them; and if I except only one inſtance, when through policy it was abſolutely impoſſible for me to refuſe an invitation, I never deviated from my plan during all my travels.

I diſtributed the employment of my time; and the uſual order of my occupations was as follows:—During the night, when we did not travel, I ſlept in my tent, or in my waggon: at the break of day, awakened by my cock, I immediately got ready every thing myſelf for making my coffee, whilſt my people were employed in cleaning and taking care of my animals. On the firſt appearance of the ſun's rays, I took my fuſee, and ſetting out with my ape, we made a diligent ſearch every where around till the hour of ten. When I returned to my tent, I found it always clean and well ſwept: it was under the particular care of an old African, named *Swanepoel*; who, being no longer capable of following us in our excurſions on foot, remained to guard the camp, in which he preſerved good order. The furniture of my tent was not cumberſome; one or two chairs, a table which I employed only for diſ-

ſecting

ſecting animals, and ſome utenſils neceſſary for preſerving them, formed all its ornaments. I then laboured from ten o'clock till noon; and during that interval I claſſed in my drawers the inſects which I had caught.—The ceremony of my dinner was equally ſimple. I placed upon my knees a piece of board, covered with a cloth, upon which one diſh only of roaſt or broiled meat was ſerved up. After this frugal repaſt, which did not detain me long, I returned to my labour, if I had any work to finiſh; and then I ſet out to hunt till ſunſet. On my return I lighted a candle, and paſſed a few hours in committing to my journal my obſervations, acquiſitions, and in ſhort all the events of the day. During this time my Hottentots collected my oxen around my waggons and tent. The goats, after they were milked, lay down here and there indiſcriminately among my dogs. When buſineſs was finiſhed, and a large fire kindled, as uſual, we placed ourſelves in a circle round it. I drank my tea; and while my people were cordially ſmoking their pipes, they told tales, the natural humour of which often made me ſhake my ſides with laughter. I took great pleaſure in encouraging them; and in proportion as I ſhewed more frankneſs, good-nature, and attention, they were the leſs timid before me. Often indeed, when in better humour, or more favourably diſpoſed by the ſight of a charming evening, after the fatigues of the day, I felt myſelf hurried away by an involuntary charm, and I gently yielded to the illuſion. I then ſaw them contending who ſhould ſhew moſt wit to pleaſe me; and the beſt ſtory-teller could judge favourably of his performance by the profound ſilence which prevailed among us.

us. I know not what powerful attraction continually carries me back to theſe peaceful ſcenes. I ſtill behold myſelf in the middle of my camp, ſurrounded by my people and animals: a plant, a flower, a fragment of rock, ſcattered here and there—nothing eſcapes my memory; and this ſpectacle, always affecting, every where amuſes and follows me.

Our converſations were ſometimes prolonged till very late at night; and I muſt candidly confeſs that lively ſallies which greatly delighted me, often eſcaped from theſe clowniſh people, who had never been poliſhed by education. I aſked them many queſtions; above all, reſpecting Kolben, and different authors; and concerning their religion, their laws, and their cuſtoms: but they openly laughed in my face. Sometimes, taking the matter in a ſerious light, I ſaw them fall in a paſſion, ſhrug up their ſhoulders, and give vent to their imprecations. I remember that, endeavouring to vilify their faculties and intelligence, in order to nettle them, I compared them to thoſe people who, in the capital of a great nation like Paris, procure without labour a genteel ſubſiſtence to a prodigious number of vagabonds, honoured with the modeſt appellation of *ſharpers*. I repreſented to them, under a thouſand different forms, the ingenious reſources of theſe cameleons, and greatly extolled their merit: but with what ſatisfaction did I obſerve them unanimouſly prefer the ſimplicity of their rural and peaceful life, and conſider theſe reſources as baſe and ſordid means, for a nation who boaſt of their ſuperiority over the people of nature!—Worthy mortals, who have been painted to us as devouring your fellow-creatures, and whom a child

child however might manage! peaceful Hottentots! treat with contempt thoſe people who reduce you to a ſtate of ſlavery, and diſtinguiſh you from brutes only by the cruelties which they withhold from them, in order to beſtow them upon you.

My animals were ſo well accuſtomed to mix among us, that I was often obliged to force many of them to riſe before I could reach my tent. I had a few ſheep, which I ſpared as a reſource, in caſe of ſcarcity; but I always kept ſome old ones to tame the new comers.

The canton in which we reſided abounded with partridges of three different kinds; one of which was as large as our pheaſant. This was our uſual food. We put a ſcore of them into our kettles at once, and they made excellent ſoup and jelly broth. We found alſo a kind of antelope, of the ſize of our European goats; the ſkin of which was of a blackiſh brown colour, with a few white ſpots on the thighs. I never found any thing more excellent eating. I killed ſeveral of them; as well as of another ſpecies, much ſmaller, which I ſhall deſcribe hereafter.

My reſidence in this place had conſiderably augmented my collection of inſects and of curious birds; and as an inhabitant of the neighbourhood, who was going to the Cape, came to offer me his ſervices, I readily accepted them, and begged him to deliver my ſmall treaſure into the hands of Mr. Boers the fiſcal. I had agreed with the latter that I would ſend him all my novelties as often as I could find an opportunity: by this plan, even in the commencement of my journey, I preſerved many valuable

able objects from the danger of accidents, and reſerved room for others.

My neighbours occaſionally ſent me vegetables and fruit; and Mr. Vanwerck, who reſided nearer my camp, knowing that I was fond of milk, ſent me every evening a pailful, which I ſhared with my people. Kees always perceived the approach of the perſon who brought it, even at a great diſtance, and never failed to run to meet him.

From Swellendam, as far as Duyvenochs, the paſtures are excellent; and the land, ſuperior to that of the Cape, would produce corn in abundance: but the planters cultivate no more than what is neceſſary for their own conſumption; and the only trade they carry on with the Cape conſiſts in cattle and butter. Some vineyards are found here; but, as the wine is of a bad quality, it is converted into vinegar or ſpirits, which are ſold in the neighbourhood.

On the 27th of the month, perceiving that the river had ſubſided much, we croſſed it without ſuſtaining any damage. We croſſed alſo the river Falſe; and, after a march of thirteen hours, arrived at the river of Gous or Gourits: at the latter, however we were ſtopped; for we found it impoſſible to croſs it, as it was larger than the Seine oppoſite the king's garden at Paris. Great ſtorms muſt have inundated the country through which it flows; for at that ſeaſon it is generally, like the reſt, only a rivulet which may be eaſily forded. Its banks abound with large thorny trees *, and with great numbers of partridges; particularly of that large ſpecies which the inhabitants of the Cape call *pheaſants*.

* The *Mimoſa Nilotica*.

pheaſants. After remaining encamped three days, obſerving no decreaſe in the river, and being always impatient to penetrate ſtill farther, I found only one method of extricating myſelf from my embarraſſment. I reſolved to cauſe a large raft to be conſtructed; and, having cut down ſome trees, we employed the bark of them to make ropes. But to what labour did this fatal operation ſubject us! We were obliged to unload our carriages, to take off their wheels, and to embark them piece by piece. All my animals croſſed by ſwimming; and in ſeveral paſſages I reached the oppoſite ſhore, with my people and effects, without the ſmalleſt diſorder, or the leaſt accident. This attempt, which was attended with wonderful ſucceſs, gave me great confidence reſpecting the future, and tended greatly to increaſe my courage.—This operation, however, coſt us three days continued labour; during which time I was obliged to ſuſpend my hunting excurſions. I myſelf ſet an example to the reſt, and handled the axe like the meaneſt of my Hottentots. I judged the precaution of removing a little farther very neceſſary to our common ſafety; for the banks of the river which we had quitted were ſo parched and ſo barren, that all my oxen muſt have died of hunger.

Our carriages being remounted, and well loaded, we continued our journey, and travelled fourteen leagues in two days, when we found ourſelves oppoſite *Moſſel-Baie*, or Muſcle Bay, which in charts is called the Bay of Saint Blaiſe. It is very difficult for ſhips here to approach the coaſt, on account of the ſharp rocks that border it, the baſes of which extend a good way into the ſea; but on the northern ſide there is a

ſmall beach, where boats may land with great eaſe. The environs of this country are interſperſed with excellent plantations, which might be a great reſource for ſhips that come hither to water: a ſalubrious ſpring, diſtant about a thouſand paces from the ſea, would ſupply them with abundance of water. During our abode in this bay, we found no want of oyſters. We often fiſhed with a line, and this method alone procured us a great many excellent fiſh; what we could not conſume, I ordered to be ſalted. Every night we were alarmed with the cries of hyænas, which appeared to be very furious animals: our oxen were much diſturbed by them; but by means of large fires, with which we ſurrounded our camp, they were prevented from attempting to approach us.

At the diſtance of a league, I found a kraal, conſiſting of four huts, in which was a Hottentot family, not exceeding twenty-five or thirty perſons, to whom I gave a ſmall quantity of tobacco in exchange for ſome mats, which I was very glad to procure. This diſcovery gave me great pleaſure, both on account of the profit which I derived from it, as well as of the agreeable ſurpriſe it occaſioned. I took great delight in contemplating them, for a long time, in their peaceful occupations. They poſſeſſed five milch cows, and a ſmall flock of ſheep. In the labouring ſeaſon, the men diſperſed themſelves over the neighbouring plantations, where by their induſtry they amaſſed enough to procure themſelves tobacco, and to render their ſituation more comfortable. They aſſured me that, in the large woods with which all the ſides of the mountains in this country are covered, elephants and buffaloes were ſometimes to be met with. Upon this intelligence

intelligence I immediately began to ſearch the mountains and foreſts; but my labour was in vain, for neither I nor my people could diſcover any of them. I perceived, indeed, the prints of the feet of elephants, but they had been made long before; from which I gueſſed, what was afterwards told me, that if chance at any time brings one of theſe animals into this country, the inhabitants aſſemble, and oblige it to betake itſelf to flight, if they cannot deſtroy it.

On the 7th, at five in the morning, I quitted Muſcle Bay, and at two in the afternoon croſſed a river called *Klein-Brak*; it has its ſource in a wood, riſing on a ridge of mountains, which in this place is only a league diſtant from the ſea. Next morning we arrived at a large river, of the ſame name, which is no more than three leagues from the former. The flowing of the tide renders the water of this river brackiſh: to croſs it without danger, we were obliged to wait for the ebb-tide; and during that interval I procured ſeveral ſea-fowls, which were extremely abundant in this canton. I found here thouſands of pelicans and flamingoes; the deep roſe-colour of the one, and the dull white of the other, exhibited a contraſt altogether new and curious.

After quitting the river, we had to climb a ſteep and rugged mountain, which at firſt frightened me a good deal; but by the help of patience, care, and time, we left it behind us. When we had entirely reached its ſummit, we were well repaid for all our fatigue, by the noble view which opened on our ſight; we had here an opportunity of admiring the moſt beautiful country in the univerſe. At a diſtance we diſcovered that chain of mountains, covered with lofty foreſts, which bounded our proſpect towards the

weſt; and under us we beheld an immenſe valley, adorned with agreeable hills, variegated in an infinite number of ſhapes, and which extend in an undulating manner as far as the ſea. Enamelled meads, and the moſt beautiful paſtures, ſtill added to this magnificent ſcene, with which I was truly enchanted. This country bears the name of *Autinequa*; which, in the Hottentot idiom, ſignifies a man loaded with honey. One indeed cannot proceed a ſtep here without ſeeing a thouſand ſwarms of bees: the flowers on which they feed ſpring up in myriads; the mixed odours which exhale from them, and which yield a delightful gratification to the ſmell—their colours, their variety, and the pure and cool air which one breathes—all engage your attention, and ſuſpend your courſe. Nature has made theſe enchanting regions like a fairy land. The calices of all theſe flowers abound with excellent juices, from which the bees compoſe their honey: they depoſit it every where around, in hollow rocks and trees, My people were extremely deſirous of ſtopping ſome time in this charming retreat, but I was afraid it would be to them what Capua was to Annibal's ſoldiers. Without loſs of time, therefore, I gave orders for continuing our journey, and haſtened towards the river Wet-Els, which takes its name from the woods that grow on its banks. From the large brackiſh river to this place, we had travelled only ſeven leagues.

On the 9th, we croſſed ſeveral ſmall rivulets, which, flowing down from the mountains, run into the ſea through an hundred different channels.

All the ſtreams of theſe rivulets have the amber colour of Madeira wine, and I found that their

their taſte was ferruginous; but I did not take time to examine whether this taſte and colour proceeded from their flowing through ſome mine in their paſſage, or from the roots and leaves of trees which they water, and carry along with them. From this place the laſt poſt belonging to the Company was not far diſtant, and we arrived at it after a quick march of three hours. I was now about to withdraw myſelf from the dominion of man, and to approach a little towards his original condition.

Mr. Mulder, the commander, came to receive me, and ſhewed me every mark of friendſhip. He has under him only a ſubaltern officer, and about fifteen men, who have all been either ſoldiers or ſailors on board the Company's ſhips. Theſe people cut down all the timber they have occaſion for, and conſtruct the carriages deſtined to tranſport it: which is a very abſurd plan; for if this timber were depoſited at Muſcle Bay, a paltry bark might in one voyage carry more to the Cape, than would be conveyed on carriages in thirty years: this would aſſuredly be a conſiderable ſaving to the Company, and a general benefit to the colonies. I may add alſo that the inhabitants of the Cape would not find themſelves reduced to the neceſſity of burning ſmall wood, which they collect at a great expence every where around, by ſlaves who have no other employment; a method which coſts at leaſt the double of what is paid for the fineſt wood in the timber-yards at Paris.

Can it be believed that the directors of the Company, for their own uſe, ſhould order ſhips to be ſent every year from Amſterdam, loaded with planks and boards of every kind, whilſt in this country there are immenſe foreſts, and the moſt

moſt beautiful trees in the world? This abſurdity, however, is not at all aſtoniſhing. The Company gratuitouſly furniſhes the governor and all the officers with whatever wood they have occaſion for, and it is delivered to them at their houſes, without any expence; the governor therefore has no perſonal intereſt to extend his views to this part of the adminiſtration, and to aboliſh an abuſe ſo prejudicial to the colony.

The whole country of Auteniqua, from the chain of mountains to the ſea, is inhabited by ſeveral planters, who rear a quantity of cattle, make butter, cut down timber, and collect honey, all of which they tranſport to the Cape.

I was in ſome meaſure filled with indignation to ſee people, who have wood within their reach, employ it in commerce, and not have the courage to build for themſelves habitable houſes. They live in wretched habitations, conſtructed of wicker-work daubed over with clay: the ſkin of a buffalo, fixed at the four corners to as many ſtakes, ſerves them for a bed; and the door, which is at the ſame time a window, is ſhut by a mat; while two or three mutilated chairs, a few pieces of plank, a kind of table, and a pitiful box two feet ſquare, form all the furniture of theſe real huts. Thus is the picture of the moſt profound miſery contraſted with the charms of this terreſtrial paradiſe; for the beauties of theſe regions, which I have already ſketched out, extend even beyond Auteniqua.

Theſe people however live well; they have game and ſalt-water fiſh in abundance; and enjoy excluſively, over all the other cantons of theſe colonies, the advantage of having the whole year, without interruption, vegetables and plants of every kind in their gardens. For theſe valuable

able advantages they are indebted to the excellence of the ſoil, and to its being naturally watered by ſmall ſtreams, which croſs each other in a thouſand different directions, and, as one may ſay, lay the four ſeaſons under contribution to fertilize it. This country may juſtly be called the Limagne* of Africa. Theſe ſtreams, which never dry up in this delightful territory, proceed from a cauſe well known. The high mountains towards the eaſt, which are covered with foreſts, ſtop the clouds and the fogs carried by the eaſt wind from the ſea, and this occaſions very abundant rains.

It ſeemed favourable to my views that I ſhould remain ſome days here with the commander; and this is the only inſtance in which I deviated from my plan. Beſides particular motives which induced me to take this ſtep, I was detained by political reaſons, and I could not refuſe his invitation with any kind of decency: an order had been every where ſent to ſuffer me to paſs, to aſſiſt me, and to furniſh me with every thing that I ſhould have occaſion for. As Mr. Mulder occupied the laſt poſt, he had received more poſitive orders than the reſt, and I could not help complying with his wiſhes: the honourable motives of his behaviour were to me a ſufficient invitation; and perhaps he himſelf depended upon the teſtimony which my gratitude would give in his favour, when I returned to the Cape.

As ſoon as I arrived at his habitation, I began, according to cuſtom, to examine the neighbourhood. In traverſing the woods, I found the traces of buffaloes and elephants, which appeared to

* A territory of France, in Lower Auvergne, lying along the river Allier. It is one of the fineſt and moſt fertile plains in France. T.

to be very freſh; I ſaw alſo ſome of their dung: and obſerved a great number of different birds, none of which I had hitherto met with, and among others ſeveral touracos. Leſs than this would have been ſufficient to detain me in this ſpot. At the diſtance of four or five leagues from the place where Mr. Mulder reſided, I found, on the edge of a wood, a very commodious and convenient ſpot for fixing my camp.

As Mr. Mulder was about to depart for the Cape, he ſupplied me with twenty pounds of gunpowder; I embraced this opportunity alſo to write to my friends, and to ſend Mr. Boers about an hundred birds, and a ſmall box of inſects. I increaſed my train with a few oxen, engaged three more Hottentots, purchaſed a young horſe, which I propoſed to breed myſelf to hunting; and on the 9th of February bid adieu to Mr. and Mrs. Mulder, in order to take poſſeſſion of my foreſt, and to eſtabliſh myſelf in the ſpot which I had made choice of.

I had beforehand ſent my people to prepare the place, to cut down ſome trees, and to clear away the buſhes with which the ground was covered, that on my arrival I might be able to erect my tents, which I accompliſhed in a moment. My kitchen was eſtabliſhed under a large tree, that ſeemed to have grown old there on purpoſe; and my Hottentots, on their part, built and arranged a few huts as well as they could. At the diſtance of ten paces from us we had a ſmall ſtream of water, pure as cryſtal; and oppoſite a little hill, covered with excellent graſs for our horſes and oxen; by theſe means we kept them always near us. So many advantages united, rendered this an agreeable reſting place: but unluckily we were obliged to remove

remove ſeveral times; as the game of all kinds, rendered ſhy by our continual purſuits, began to grow ſcarce, and would have retired from us altogether.

I was ſometimes viſited by the inhabitants of this diſtrict; which enabled me to procure a ſufficiency of fruits, vegetables, milk, and of every thing elſe they could ſupply me with: their viſits indeed coſt me ſome bottles of ſpirits; but as I deteſt theſe noxious liquors, and never drank of them, this attraction retained them a little, and the impreſſion which they made on my caſks was not deadly.

I conjectured that the wood near which I had placed my camp, would furniſh me with ſome touracos. As I was not acquainted with theſe birds, and had never ſeen one of them, I went in ſearch of them, and was lucky enough to diſcover a few. I ſpent a long time in purſuing them, but without effect; for as theſe birds perch always on the extremities of the higheſt branches, I never found them within the reach of my fuſee. One afternoon, however, I followed one, and did more execution. Hopping from ſpray to ſpray, ſtill going only a little way from me, it deceived me for more than an hour, and conducted me to a great diſtance; till being out of patience with its ſport, and finding that I could not approach it, I fired, though I concluded it to be out of my reach, and had the ſatisfaction of ſeeing it drop. My joy on this occaſion was inexpreſſible: but the moſt difficult part was not accompliſhed; it was neceſſary for me to ſeize my prey; and, as I had remarked the place where it fell, I ruſhed through the buſhes to take it up, at the expence of having my legs and hands torn, and all covered with blood.

When

When I reached the ſpot, I ſaw nothing; and though I carefully ſearched every where around, going backwards and forwards twenty times over the ſame places, cloſely examining the ſmalleſt holes and crevices, my labour was fruitleſs, for I could not find my touraco. My reſearches and reflections led me to think that I had perhaps broken only one of its wings, which had not prevented it to get away from the ſpot where it had fallen. Full of this idea, I went a little farther, and began again to ſearch all the environs for more than half an hour; but ſtill no touraco. This diſappointment reduced me almoſt to a ſtate of deſpair; and the thick buſhes and prickly ſhrubs, which ſcratched even my face, had really agitated me with tranſports difficult to be deſcribed. To ſatiate my anger, I am ſenſible that nothing leſs would have been ſufficient at that moment than to purſue a lion or a tiger. That a paltry bird, which I had brought down after ſo many difficulties, and ſo much deſire for it, ſhould eſcape and thus vaniſh from my ſight, was truly diſtreſſing. Unable to contain my paſſion, I began to ſtamp, and to beat the ground with my fuſee; but the earth ſinking ſuddenly below me, I diſappeared alſo, and fell with my arms into a pit twelve feet in depth. My aſtoniſhment, and the hurt I received by my fall, ſoon made me forget my anger; and I found myſelf at the bottom of one of thoſe covered ſnares which the Hottentots employ to catch ferocious animals, particularly elephants. When I recovered from my ſurprize, I began to conſider how I ſhould extricate myſelf from this embarraſſment, extremely happy that I had not been impaled on the ſharp-pointed ſtake placed in the bottom of

the

the pit, and ſtill happier that I found in it no company. I was however apprehenſive that ſome might arrive every moment; eſpecially if I ſhould be obliged to remain there during the night. Its approach began to fill me with great terror; as it oppoſed and retarded the only reſource I had deviſed to ſave myſelf from the fatal pit, without the aſſiſtance of others. This reſource was to dig away the earth on one ſide with my ſabre and my hands, in order to form a kind of ſteps; but as ſuch an operation might be very tedious, I formed, though under the moſt diſmal perplexity, the wiſer reſolution of loading my fuſee, and of firing ſhot after ſhot in hopes that I might be heard at my camp. I from time to time liſtened with the utmoſt anxiety, and a palpitating heart; and at length had the ſatisfaction of hearing two reports, which inſpired me with the utmoſt joy. I then continued to fire by intervals, to direct thoſe who had anſwered me which way to purſue their courſe; and ſoon after I ſaw them arrive, all completely armed, but full of trouble and uneaſineſs. They had imagined that I was purſued by ſome ferocious animal; but they ſaw me, on the contrary, in the moſt pitiful ſituation, and caught fooliſhly like a fox. Their alarm, however, was ſoon diſſipated; they immediately cut a long pole, which they let down to me; and by means of this expedient I glided up in the beſt manner I could, and reached the brink of the pit. This trifling accident, from which heaven would not have ſaved me as it ſaved young Daniel, did not make me forget my touraco. With my dogs, which had followed my Hottentots, I truſted I ſhould be able to diſcover it, in whatever place it might be concealed:

concealed: ſending them out, therefore, on the ſearch, they found it ſquatted down under a tufted buſh. I inſtantly laid down my hands upon it; and the pleaſure of at length poſſeſſing this charming animal, ſoon obliterated from my mind the dangers and embarraſſment it had coſt me.

I afterwards procured as many of them as I wiſhed: I even caught them all alive; for having remarked, in the ſtomach of this one, the fruits on which they principally feed, I always had recourſe to the trees which produced theſe fruits, whether I wiſhed to fire or to lay ſnares for them.

This bird, as agreeable by its form as by its colour and notes, which are very diſtinct, unites nimbleneſs to elegance; all its motions are laſcivious, and its attitudes full of grace. Its colour is a bright graſs green; a beautiful tuft of the ſame colour, bordered with white, ornaments its head; its eyes, which are of a lively red, are crowned with eyebrows of a dazzling white; and its wings are of the moſt beautiful purple, which changes to a violet, according to the attitudes it aſſumes, or the point of view under which it is ſeen.

Naturaliſts have very improperly claſſed this bird among the cuckows, with which it has no relation whatever. The cuckow, in every country of the world, is a bird that feeds only on caterpillars, inſects, &c. but the touraco feeds on fruits.

The cuckow, in every climate, never lays but in the neſts of other birds; which, by theſe means, ſhe loads with the burden of hatching her young: the touraco, more affectionate and more careful of its family, conſtructs its own neſt,

neſt, where it lays its eggs and hatches them itſelf.

Theſe two characters are ſufficient to form a ſpecies entirely diſtinct from the cuckow; but I ſhall reſume this ſubject, and enlarge upon it, in my ornithology.

In thoſe intervals when the heavy rains or exceſſive heats ſeemed to compel me not to go abroad, which was however very rare, I did not, on that account, ſpend my time in indolence. I employed myſelf, in my tent, in making ſnares to catch animals alive, of every ſpecies. It will hardly be believed that I invented a method of procuring them with my fuſee, more entire and in much better condition than thoſe which I caught in my ſnares: it was in this manner, however, that I procured the ſmalleſt and moſt delicate birds.

It is highly neceſſary that every naturaliſt who labours himſelf in forming a collection, ſhould be acquainted with the method which I *invented*. This expreſſion is not too bold; my idea is abſolutely new, for I never heard that any perſon ever thought of it before me.

The manner in which I proceeded was as follows: I put a ſmaller or larger quantity of powder into my fuſee, according as circumſtances might require. Immediately above the powder I placed the end of a candle about an inch in thickneſs, ramming it well down; after which I filled the barrel with water up to the mouth. By theſe means, at the proper diſtance, when I fired at a bird, I only ſtunned it, by watering and moiſtening its feathers; and, as I inſtantly laid hold of it, no time was left to ſpoil its plumage by fluttering. The water, impelled by the powder, went directly to the mark; but the piece of tallow,

tallow, being lighter than the water, did not reach ſo far. In my firſt attempts it often happened, that having ſometimes fired too near, or put too much powder, or too thick a piece of candle, I found the latter entire in the animal's belly; but after a ſhort apprenticeſhip I made no more miſtakes, and never miſſed my aim. I have often let my fuſee remain charged in this manner from morning till night: yet the powder was never damaged, nor did the piece go off leſs readily. It may be eaſily gueſſed that I never fired horizontally in this manner.

One day, after my return to Europe, being at the houſe of a friend, I happened to mention before ſome ſtrangers this method which I have deſcribed. One of them, who durſt not flatly contradict me, or openly avow his incredulity, endeavoured to prove to the reſt, by very clear arguments, that my aſſertion was at leaſt exaggerated. Whilſt they were diſputing, I retired without being perceived by the company; and having prepared a fuſee according to my own manner, I returned through the garden to the window, where theſe gentlemen were continuing their diſpute. Pointing with my finger to a little bird perched near them, I took aim and fired at it, upon which it fell. I immediately ſeized it; and, delivering it alive into the hands of my antagoniſt, put an end to all his fine reaſoning.

Towards the end of the month we were much impeded by new rains, which continued a long time, and almoſt without intermiſſion. Theſe ſtorms ſucceeded each other with great rapidity: the lightning fell ſeveral times in the foreſt near us; the water gained upon us on all ſides: and, to add to the diſagreeableneſs of our ſituation, our camp was in one night entirely overflown:

overflown: we therefore quitted the wood, and went to eſtabliſh ourſelves on ſome higher ſpot in the open country. I now ſaw, with the utmoſt uneaſineſs, that it would be impoſſible for us to get out of this place in which we were ſurrounded: thoſe ſmall rivulets, which had before appeared to us ſo pleaſant and agreeable, were changed into furious torrents, which carried ſand, trees, and fragments of rock along with them. I was ſenſible that, unleſs I expoſed myſelf to the greateſt dangers, it would be impracticable to croſs them. On the other hand my oxen, haraſſed and chilled with cold, had deſerted my camp; nor did I know how or which way to ſend after them to catch them. My ſituation was far from being comfortable; and I paſſed many moments in great dejection. My poor Hottentots, fatigued and ſick, began already to murmur. We had no more proviſions, and no more game: what we killed was ſcarcely ſufficient for our ſubſiſtence; becauſe, confined by the torrent, which increaſed more and more every day, we had not even the reſource of our neighbours to obtain aſſiſtance. How afflicting our condition with ſuch preparation! One might have ſaid that an univerſal deluge was about to inundate Africa. I however kept part of my apprehenſions to myſelf; whilſt I beheld my ſad companions caſt their reſtleſs looks towards me, and atteſt by their ſilence what fears they entertained for themſelves. Never did a proſpect appear under more gloomy colours: our charming walks, laid waſte by the waters, were in an inſtant ravaged; and thoſe delightful gardens were changed into a diſmal and inhoſpitable deſart. In this diſtreſs, collecting all my forces, I entreated my friends to ſearch, at leaſt, for our loſt and

diſperſed

diſperſed oxen; and to reſolve to croſs one of the torrents, whatever might be the conſequence. By the ſtrangeſt caprice of fortune, the fatal event which threatened us with ſudden deſtruction, was in part the occaſion of our ſafety. One of my Hottentots, in ſearching for a paſſage, perceived in the middle of the water a buffalo, which had probably been drowned the evening before, for it was ſtill very freſh: on this diſcovery he came, with ſhouts of joy, to convey us the agreeable intelligence; and nothing indeed could have arrived more ſeaſonably. We drew the animal to the ſhore, not without conſiderable danger; cut it to pieces on the ſpot; and, having carried away the ſoundeſt parts, left the reſt to my dogs, which, having faſted a long time, found great relief in this refreſhment. We ſaw them return from their repaſt with their bellies ſo full that they could ſcarcely walk. I cannot help mentioning another circumſtance, as it will tend to convey a ſtill better idea of the dreadful ſituation to which we were reduced. Theſe dogs, which were now like walking ſkeletons, watching our motions, followed cloſely at our heels whenever any of us retired to eaſe the wants of nature; and I have ſeen them fight deſperately with one another for this diſguſting nouriſhment.

Nothing in this life is durable; and a period is allotted to misfortunes as well as to felicity. The end of March brought a change in the weather; the rains became leſs frequent, the torrents decreaſed; and I diſpatched four Hottentots in queſt of my oxen, which they brought almoſt all back, after an abſence of four days. Some of them had returned the way we came, and had even repaſſed the large brackiſh river; others had taken ſhelter in different plantations, and ſome had

ſhifted

ſhifted for themſelves in the beſt manner they could.—Four of them, however, were miſſing, which my people could not find, nor did I ever afterwards hear any accounts of them. Without delay I prepared to quit this inhoſpitable country, and to tranſport my camp three leagues farther, to a hill named *Pampoen-Kraal.* I took advantage of two days of fine weather to dry my effects, great part of which were moiſt and half rotten; and the ſkin of the buffalo which we had flayed, ſerved to renew the traces of my waggons and carriages, which the moiſture had rendered unfit for ſervice. Notwithſtanding theſe continual rains, and my cruel diſappointments, I had found in the woods an old tree, the trunk of which was hollow; and I went thither with my fuſee almoſt every day, to watch for ſuch ſmall birds or game as might appear. I was there ſheltered at leaſt from the rain, and I ſupported my courage with hope. From this ſacred niche I brought down, without mercy, every thing that preſented itſelf before me. Thus the ſtudy of Nature engaged my attention, in preference to more preſſing wants. Continually inflamed with the powerful deſire of robbing her of her treaſures, I was dying with hunger, and yet thought of my collections. In ſpite of all obſtacles I ſaw my riches gradually increaſe: I had acquired a ſmall collection of rare objects entirely unknown in Europe, which I expoſed to the air; and I found that they were not ſo much damaged by the moiſture as the reſt of my effects. In this wood we found no game but the boſbock antelope, and a ſmaller ſpecies, of which I have already ſpoken. On the plain, beſides the three ſpecies of partridges above-mentioned, we obſerved another called the *red pheaſant*, becauſe its feet and the

naked ſkin of its throat are of that colour. Of carnivorous animals we ſaw tigers and hyænas, but not a ſingle lion.

The heavens became every day more and more ſerene, and ſeemed to preſage that our ſituation would ſoon be as happy as it had been miſerable and gloomy. The hill of Pampoen-Kraal, on which I had placed my camp, pleaſed me much. Not far from my tent ſtood a ſmall eminence, crowned by a thicket of thirty or thirty-five feet in diameter. The trees and ſhrubs of which it was compoſed, in growing had ſo interwoven their branches, that the whole appeared as one very thick and buſhy body. Having imagined that I might convert it into a little palace, I ordered a path to be traced out to its center, and the branches to be lopped off on each ſide to the height of a man, ſo as to afford an eaſy paſſage. In the middle of the thicket, by the force of labour and employing the hatchet, we were able to cut out two chambers perfectly ſquare; in one of which I placed my table and my chair: this was my ſtudy. The ſecond I ornamented with my kitchen utenſils: but this did not prevent me from uſing it at the ſame time as a dining room. Theſe two apartments, naturally covered with branches and leaves impenetrably thick, afforded me a delightful and cool retreat, when haraſſed and covered with ſweat and duſt, after my hunting excurſion in the morning, I retired from the heat of the day, and the ſcorching rays of the ſun. When fatigue had ſharpened my appetite, what delightful repaſts! when ſleep ſtole upon me, what voluptuous and gentle repoſe!—Ye ſumptuous grottoes of our financiers! ye Engliſh gardens twenty times changed with the wealth of the citizen! why do your ſtreams, your caſcades,

your

your pretty ſerpentine walks, your broken bridges, your ruins, your marbles, and all your fine inventions, diſguſt the taſte and fatigue the eye, when we know the verdant and natural bower of the Pampoen-Kraal?

Whatever it coſt me to abandon this amiable ſolitude, I was however obliged to think of departing. One day having traverſed the whole neighbourhood, to diſcover what route I ought to purſue, in order to travel with the greateſt eaſe and ſafety, I found, at the diſtance of a league from my camp, a very rapid torrent, named *Kayman's Hole*; but I know not for what reaſon, as in all this country I never obſerved either a kayman or a crocodile. This torrent flowed from two mountains not very high, but exceſſively ſteep: on my right I had the ſea, at the diſtance of about a thouſand paces; and on my left mountains and woods, which it was impoſſible for me to paſs with my cattle and carriages: no other reſource therefore remained for me, but to croſs the dangerous Kayman's Hole. On this account I was very uneaſy, and even vexed. Let the reader imagine to himſelf my ſituation—ſtopped thus at every ſtep; and, when one obſtacle was overcome, ſeeing new ones ſtill riſe before me, while I was fully ſenſible of the neceſſity of penetrating farther. The torrent appeared to me too much ſwelled, and too rapid, to attempt to croſs it. I was, above all, afraid for my oxen; and rafts could only have been employed in tranſporting my effects. I was therefore obliged to arm myſelf with patience, and to wait a more favourable opportunity.

On the 18th of April I received an expreſs from Mr. Mulder, who, having returned from the Cape, conveyed to me ſome letters which he

had brought along with him, and which were in anſwer to thoſe I had entruſted to his care in the beginning of February. I found that my friends were very uneaſy for my fate, and wiſhed me to return. Others exhorted me to perſevere; and, ſitting at eaſe by their fire ſides, gave themſelves little trouble concerning obſtacles, provided my journey could prove of utility to ſcience; or, without going ſo far, ſupply food for their curioſity, in fables related after their manner. I found each of them intereſted according to his particular views; but I reſolved to follow my original plan. It may be eaſily imagined how much the bad ſeaſon had retarded my progreſs, ſince I had ſcarcely travelled eight leagues during the time which Mr. Mulder employed in his journey to the Cape. In a letter which this gentleman wrote to me, he appointed a place of meeting, and propoſed that we ſhould amuſe ourſelves a few days with fiſhing on the ſea ſhore, if ſuch an excurſion would not derange me: he promiſed to bring with him nets, and every thing neceſſary for our ſpending a week together on the coaſt; and he likewiſe informed me that his wife would be one of the party. This propoſal gave me great pleaſure; and, ſoon after the arrival of the meſſenger, Mr. and Mrs. Mulder made their appearance, accompanied by an officer next under Mr. Mulder in command. One might have compared them to ſo many patriarchs on a journey. The latter on the bow of his ſaddle, over his piſtols, carried a young child four months old, which was ſuckled by his wife. They were all four on horſeback. His carriage, with his nets and baggage, had gone to wait for us on the ſea ſhore. Having ordered one of mine to be got ready alſo, I loaded it with my tent, one or

two

two empty caſks, and every thing that I conceived would be uſeful to us for our miraculous fiſhing. When we reached the ſhore, after a few compliments and the uſual ceremonies, we caſt our nets ſeveral times into the water, but always in vain; we ſcarcely caught any thing: and this exerciſe afforded amuſement to nobody. Reſolving, therefore, to proceed a little further, to a ſmall lake formed by the tide, where we hoped to be more ſucceſsful, we began to march forwards; but, as I was much leſs curious in fiſhes than in birds, I ſhould have been ſoon tired of our ſport, had not the politeneſs of my friends, and the open and eaſy gaiety of the ladies, engaged a little of my attention. I however rambled a good deal about on foot, from one ſide to another, exploring every part around with eager eyes, and not ſuffering either the air, the roads, or the trees to eſcape me. Having arrived at the borders of the lake, I ſought for a commodious ſpot where I might erect my tents: but an alarm, which we little thought of, had nearly deranged all our groteſque cavalcade. In croſſing a ſpot covered with very high and thick reeds, the workmen all of a ſudden came upon a buffalo, which had lain down there to reſt. They were ſo near, that the animal, as much frightened as they by this unexpected apparition, in retiring threw down the horſe of the under commander, and that of his wife. The conſternation now became general; every one endeavoured to fly, and to make off as faſt as poſſible. Mr. Mulder's people, who were not much accuſtomed to buffaloes, being nearer the water, plunged into it up to the neck. Mine, better trained to hunting, aſſumed a bold look; but the animal, ſcared by the ſight of ſo many people on all ſides, and not knowing where

to

to fly, remained motionleſs, poſted againſt an enormous rock. On hearing the noiſe, I immediately ran up; but unluckily I had no other arms except my double-barrelled fuſee. It was not to be ſuppoſed that an ordinary ball would kill a buffalo. I however ventured to approach him, and to fire. As ſoon as I had diſcharged my piece he quitted his poſition, and in a furious manner came ſtraight towards me; but a ſecond ball, which hit him, inſtantly damped his courage: he turned round, and paſſing near one of my oxen, which carried our kitchen apparatus, diſcharged all his fury on this peaceful animal, gave it two blows in the belly with his horns, and ſoon diſappeared. I could not prevail upon the company to remain longer in this place. The huſbands feared much for their wives; and, as I judged by their diſordered looks that they were really affected by their tender alarms, I adviſed them to return to our firſt fiſhing place on the ſea ſhore. In our ſecond attempt fortune became more favourable; and we had the ſatisfaction of catching ſo great a quantity of fiſh, that I ordered ſome of them to be ſalted, and to be packed into my caſks, whilſt Mr. Mulder imitated my example. This ſport, which continued eight whole days, and the occupations which it gave us, amuſed us indeed much more than I had expected. From time to time I abſented myſelf for a little, and I killed ſeveral rare birds; but I was not under the neceſſity of contending with a ſecond buffalo. When we ſalted all our fiſh, we divided our proviſion, and took leave of one another: but I confeſs that I could not leave theſe worthy people without regret; for they had enlivened our little excurſion with a good humour ſo natural, ſo ſimple, and ſo mild. With my

eyes

eyes I followed their little caravan; and I did not depart until I had entirely loſt ſight of them.

When I returned to my camp, I found every thing in order; my cattle properly taken care of, and my people employed on their duty, for which I teſtified to them my ſatisfaction.

I committed to the care of Mr. Mulder all the animals I had preſerved ſince I diſpatched my laſt cargo, as well as the living touracos I had caught in ſnares; which he promiſed to tranſmit to Mr. Boers at the Cape. He had alſo the complaiſance to give me one of his nets, and to ſend me a pair of wheels which I aſked from him. As my cart was very inconvenient, and always in danger of being overturned, I reſolved to mount it in the ſame manner as the reſt of my carriages.—This being a work of great neceſſity, we ſet about it immediately; and every one took a ſhare in the labour. The timber requiſite for this operation was ſoon cut out; and in leſs than a fortnight our cart, transformed into a waggon, rolled upon four wheels. It did not indeed in its conſtruction diſplay the hand of a maſter; but it anſwered my purpoſe as well; and I muſt obſerve that the whole fortnight was not employed in altering it. When I perceived that it went well, and that my cartwrights would acquire honour by it, I ſent a detachment of my people to the neighbourhood of the torrent, which we were about to paſs, with orders to fill up the fiſſures, and repair the highways which the waters had ſpoilt. I made them carry ſtones and large branches of trees with them, to render the quagmires paſſable; which, without this precaution, might have disjointed, and even broken, my carriages. When by the force of exceſſive labour we had

ſmoothed

ſmoothed every paſs, on the 30th of April I cauſed my caravan to file off before me; and caſting my eye, for the laſt time, on the delightful hermitage of Pampoen-Kraal, quitted it with the ſame regret as that with which a lover ſeparates from his miſtreſs. I often afterwards enquired reſpecting this happy aſylum; and I had the ſatisfaction of learning that it had not only been reſpected, but that the Hottentots had named it after me.

Notwithſtanding all my precaution, we found great difficulty at *Kayman's Hole*, as well as at a river called by the Hottentots in their language *Krakede-Kau*, which ſignifies the *girls ford*. This country was formerly inhabited by Hottentots, who are all now extinct or diſperſed: the deep pits which are to be ſeen at certain diſtances, indicate that they were hunters; and that they caught in their ſnares buffaloes and elephants; but theſe animals are never or rarely now ſeen in this canton.

After a journey of eight hours, we arrived near the *Swarte Rivier*, or Black River: as it was ſtill ſwelled by the rains, we obliged to paſs it on rafts, which we conſtructed in the ſame manner as before. The freſh traces of buffaloes which we obſerved on the other ſide made us remain here ſome time: and I at length had the pleaſure of killing one; a Hottentot I carried along with me, killed alſo another. I was ſo pleaſed with my ſucceſs, that I inſtantly returned to my camp, to announce this agreeable intelligence, which promiſed a ſupply of proviſion to my people for a long time, in caſe we ſhould be reduced to diſtreſs. As we had killed theſe two animals on the banks of the river, above the place where I had ſettled, I ordered

ordered them to be puſhed into the ſtream, which conveyed them oppoſite to my tent, where they were cut up: and I deſired them to be cut into very ſmall pieces, that they might be more eaſily ſalted, and expoſed afterwards to the air and the ſun. Our waggons, as well as the buſhes and trees that ſurrounded us, were all loaded with bloody fragments of our buffaloes; but on a ſudden, in the midſt of our operation, and while we were not expecting it, we found ourſelves attacked by flights of kites and vultures; which, without any fear, perched among us. The kites, above all, were the moſt impudent. They rapaciouſly ſeized upon the morſels of fleſh, and even contended furiouſly with my people. When they had each carried away a pretty large piece, they retired to ſome branch, at the diſtance of ten paces from us, and devoured it before our eyes. Though we fired our fuſees, they were not frightened, but returned inceſſantly to the charge; ſo that, finding that I waſted my powder in vain, we reſolved to diſperſe them, and drive them away with large poles, until our proviſions ſhould be quite dry. This manœuvre, which for a long time haraſſed my people, did not prevent us from being plundered without mercy; but, had we not employed it, nothing abſolutely would have remained of our two buffaloes.

The tongues I ordered to be ſmoked; and I never omitted to purſue the ſame method with thoſe of all the animals I afterwards killed. This was a great delicacy; and a reſource for me when our proviſions fell ſhort. When I wiſhed to indulge in ſenſuality, or to awaken my appetite, I added a ſmall plateful of it to my uſual allowance. There were none but the

tongues

tongues of elephants which I did not wiſh to preſerve in this manner: their taſte, and even their figure, always occaſioned a diſguſt which I could never overcome, and which it would be very difficult to account for.

When our proviſions were prepared and packed up, we quitted the Black River; and having croſſed the *Goucom*, two leagues thence, we reached the *Nyſena*, after travelling two leagues more. The latter is a conſiderable ſtream, and was ſtill ſwelled by the tide.—Hitherto I had found no ſpot more agreeable for fixing my camp. Here I had a moſt delightful meadow of about a thouſand feet ſquare; a foreſt of tall trees formed a magnificent ſhelter on the ſouth, extending circularly towards the eaſt; on the north I had before me the river, which appeared to be very abundant in fiſh; and a variety of ſmall game ſwarmed on its banks. So many advantages might have almoſt made me forget Pampoen-Kraal; but all its attractions could not tempt me to ſtop. Agitated by a ſecret uneaſineſs, I ſaw on the other ſide of the river a difficult mountain, which it was neceſſary for us to paſs. It was ſo prodigiouſly ſteep, that I apprehended ſome accident would befal me; for an internal foreboding ſeemed ſtrongly to announce it. I had indeed almoſt loſt, in one moment, the whole fruits of my labours, and of my incredible fatigues. I had taken the prudent precaution to conduct my waggons one after the other; for, had I attempted to make them mount altogether, I ſhould not have had oxen enough to draw them. I ordered twenty to be yoked to my *maſter waggon*; which, as I have already ſaid, carried all my artillery and my principal riches. My oxen ſet out; and,

by

by climbing with great exertion, had almoſt reached the ſummit: but the chain which kept the firſt eighteen together breaking all of a ſudden, the waggon rolled down with great precipitation to the bottom of the mountain, carrying with it the two oxen yoked to the pole. From the eminence on which we ſtood, my conductors and I followed it with our eyes, almoſt petrified with fear, and in the moſt dreadful agitation.—Twenty times did we ſee it ready to fall over the precipice that bordered the way: and this misfortune would have infallibly taken place, had it not been for the ſuperior ſtrength of the two oxen attached to the pole, which nothing could overcome. This accident, had it happened, muſt have entirely ſuſpended my journey. My carriage, and my moſt valuable effects, would have been daſhed to pieces; my powder, my ſhot, and my arms, would have been ſcattered: and I ſhould have been entirely ruined without the leaſt reſource. The waggon was, however, ſtopped by a rock on the banks of the torrent. We deſcended with ſhouts of joy; and having collected my effects, and put every thing in its proper place, we again yoked the oxen to this fatal carriage; which, without danger, regained in an hour what it had loſt in ten minutes. The reſt, being not quite ſo heavy, arrived in perfect ſafety. I had ordered the traces to be doubled, and four men to eſcort the wheels, all ready to put their hands to the ſpokes on the leaſt jolt. The road however was ſo ſteep, that this would not have prevented a fall; but it would have diminiſhed the rapidity of it, and given us time to direct the carriage in ſuch a manner, as beſt to avoid the dreadful precipice.

Fear

Fear is a magnifying glaſs which always enlarges objects. Mine had announced ſomething very unlucky. In vain ſhould I attempt to paint my looks, and the agitation of my mind, in this diſtreſſing moment. I involuntarily followed all the motions of the waggon, and ſeemed to ſet it right by thoſe of my body, and by the geſtures of my arms. Each jolt penetrated to the bottom of my heart.

I however found that our loſs was not ſo great as I expected. I might almoſt ſay indeed that a miracle was operated in my favour; and I perceived that the god of the fatal trident did not always purſue me. I not only found that my carriage had eſcaped without much damage, but the ſhocks it ſuſtained had not materially deranged what it contained. My oxen, which were dragged backwards by a waggon that weighed nearly two tons, and which might have been daſhed to pieces before they arrived at the bottom of the mountain, eſcaped with only a few dangerous wounds, which did not prevent them from continuing their labour. It muſt be confeſſed that our misfortune, allowing for time loſt, was not very great; though we had every reaſon to fear for the future.

In proportion as I got at a diſtance from the plantations, and advanced into the country, every thing in my eyes aſſumed a new appearance. The proſpects became more magnificent; the ſoil ſeemed to be more fruitful and rich; nature appeared to be more majeſtic and grand; and the lofty mountains preſented, on all ſides, more charming and delightful points of view, than I had ever met with. Theſe ſcenes, contraſted with the dry and parched fields of the Cape, made me believe that I was more than a

thouſand

thouſand leagues from it. "What! ſaid I, "in my ecſtaſy, "ſhall theſe ſuperb regions "be eternally inhabited by tigers and lions? "What ſpeculator, with the ſordid view only "of eſtabliſhing a kind of center for com- "merce, could have preferred the ſtormy Table "Bay to the numberleſs roads, and natural and "commodious harbours, which are to be found "on the eaſtern coaſts of Africa?"

Thus was I reflecting within myſelf, whilſt I was climbing the mountain on foot, and form- ing vain wiſhes for the conqueſt of this beautiful country, which the indolent policy of the Eu- ropean nations will perhaps never gratify.

We ſtill continued to advance, having always to the weſt that great chain of mountains, co- vered with wood, which we had before perceived at a great diſtance. After travelling four hours and a half, I halted at a ſmall rivulet about three leagues diſtant from the ſea. Here we obſerved a prodigious quantity of fiſh floating up with the tide; and as ſoon as I ſaw them in a ſtate of ſtagnation, I ordered the net which I had received from Mr. Mulder to be extended acroſs the ſtream. This was the firſt time I employed it; and, as it was too long, I found it neceſſary to have it doubled. Were I to mention the number of fiſh which remained when the tide ebbed, I ſhould be conſidered as an extravagant exaggera- tor: I ſhall only ſay that the net ſuffered conſi- derably. My people cooked theſe fiſh with a va- riety of ſauces: as for me, I reſerved about an hundred for myſelf, which, with different ſpices, I put into a kettle without any water; and hav- ing hermetically ſealed the coverlid with a kind of viſcous earth, I buried the whole under hot aſhes. By this arrangement I procured an excel-

lent

lent diſh of fiſh, with which I could ſcarcely be ſatiated; and which laſted me for ſeveral days.

One could not chooſe a more agreeable and advantageous ſpot, than that upon which I then was, for eſtabliſhing a thriving colony. The ſea advances through an opening of about a thouſand paces in breadth, and penetrates into the country to the diſtance of more than two leagues and a half. The baſon which it forms is more than a league in extent; and the whole coaſt, both on the right and the left, is bordered with rocks, which intercept all communication with it. The land, which is rich and fertile, is watered by limpid and refreſhing ſtreams, that flow down on all ſides from the eaſtern mountains. Theſe mountains, crowned with majeſtic woods, extend as far as the baſon, winding round with a number of ſinuoſities; which exhibit an hundred groves, naturally variegated, and each more agreeable than the other. In this ſpot I found a great many ſmall white herons, of the ſame ſpecies as thoſe ſent from Cayenne, and which I had often ſeen, when young, in Surinam. I diſcovered alſo the large egret*, but it was here more rare.

The woods furniſh ſmall game in abundance: buffaloes, and ſometimes elephants, are alſo found in them. Two or three houſes, the inhabitants of which have no other employment but to carry on a dull and laborious trade in wood and butter with the Cape, are ſeen here; but ſcattered at a very great diſtance from each other.

In this beautiful country I remained till the 13th. We then croſſed, by very diſagreeable roads, a foreſt named *Le Poort;* and, after travelling

* A ſpecies of the heron.

velling ſeven hours more, reached the river *Witte Dreft*. In ſeveral places I obſerved a few more habitations, no leſs miſerable and wretched than the former; for the diſtance, the dangers of the journey, and other obſtacles invincible to theſe poor people, do not permit them, except very rarely, to drive a few oxen to the Cape: and, even when they arrive there, they are in a bad condition; and on that account the owners of them make a bad market, and are as badly paid. At the time I paſſed here, many of theſe people had not been at the Cape for a number of years.

I ſtill continued to advance, but whether it was that fatigue, and the repeated misfortunes I ſucceſſively experienced, had deranged my health; or that I was obliged to pay tribute to theſe new climates, and that the temperature of them made a powerful impreſſion on my conſtitution—I was often attacked by ſudden ſickneſs, and haunted with the gloomy idea that I ſhould leave my aſhes at the diſtance of two thouſand leagues from my family. My imagination, too lively, ſtill exaggerated this misfortune; and I gave way to dejection and deſpair. The moſt diſmal melancholy took poſſeſſion of my mind; for I now ſaw myſelf in reality ſtopped in my progreſs. I was afflicted with violent head-aches, an extraordinary heavineſs, and a general uneaſineſs, that ſeemed to announce very ſerious danger. This was the only event I dreaded when I ſet out. I found it would be neceſſary for me to ſtop, that I might recruit my ſtrength: and I at laſt formed my reſolution; convinced that the moſt acute diſorder muſt here, as well as amidſt the phyſicians noſtrums, take a favourable turn, or relieve the patient by death.

I dragged

I dragged myſelf along, therefore, as well as I could, and took a curſory view of the environs. Having obſerved an agreeable ſituation for my camp, in the neighbourhood of a ſmall rivulet, I ordered my tents to be erected at the edge of a wood. I knew nothing of the practice of phyſic, but regimen and repoſe; my people knew ſtill leſs; and, if my malady increaſed, I was likely in their hands to run very great riſques. I became ſo weak, that I was obliged to remain abed in my waggon, which the heat of the ſun rendered like a burning furnace. I was tormented with excruciating pains in my bowels; a violent dyſentery followed; and I heard my people, in their turn, complain one after the other of the ſame diſtemper. Imagining then that this kind of epidemia was occaſioned by the great quantity of ſalt fiſh which we had eaten, I ordered all that remained of it to be burnt. In the mean time I was waſted by a continual fever; but I did not entirely loſe my ſtrength: and, after a copious perſpiration for twelve days, reſt, and a proper regimen, re-eſtabliſhed me. I took moderate exerciſe, calmed my ſpirits, and I ſoon found myſelf every day get better. The ſame regimen reſtored all my people. I did not fail to add to the liſt of the grand and ſublime diſcoveries in medicine, the warm bath; and I am firmly perſuaded that this bath, or chance, ſaved my life.

When I was perfectly recovered, I reſumed my uſual occupations, exerciſe and hunting. In my firſt excurſion I found that we were flanked by a ſecond river, called *Queur-Bocm*, which falls from the weſtern mountains, and is joined by the Witte-Dreft at the diſtance of a league from the ſea. Its mouth is near a bay, called by navi-

gators

gators the Bay of Agoa. In a journey which governor Blettenberg of the Cape made towards this place, he ordered his name, the year and the day of his arrival, to be engraven on a ſtone column. I examined this wretched monument, which wanted nothing but an inſcription in verſe to render it ſtill more contemptible. This name now prevails in all the colonies; and the Bay of Agoa is known under that of *Blettenberg's Bay*. Thus a paltry poſt, erected by the vanity of an individual, in a moment gives birth to errors which diſconcert conventions before received; and at the ſame time overturn opinions generally adopted by the people. In our neighbourhood there happened to be a flock of from twenty-five to thirty bubales in a place incloſed by the ſea and our two rivers; and as our camp was ſo ſituated, that it filled the whole ſpace which remained for them to eſcape by, theſe animals were entirely at our mercy. Conſidering them as part of our live ſtock, we did not ſpare them; for, whenever our proviſions began to fall low, I brought down a couple of them. Not one of them eſcaped us; and their ſkins, when joined together, made a pretty covering for the waggon I had repaired at Pampoen-Kraal.

As large troops of buffaloes came to browſe in our ſight, on the other ſide of the Queur-Boom, we gave chace to them, and caught ſeveral of them.

This animal is remarkably wild, and one muſt attack it with great precaution in the woods; but in the open fields it is not formidable. It fears, and flies from the preſence of a man. The ſureſt way of catching it, is to haraſs it with dogs. Whilſt it is engaged in defending itſelf, a bullet in the head, or the omoplate, will in-

ſtantly diſpatch it. The bullets to be uſed muſt be of a large ſize, and made either of tin or lead. If the animal is not wounded in the two places above mentioned, it will eſcape.

Its horns are very large and divergent. By the cloſeneſs of their roots to each other, on the forehead, one would almoſt imagine that they proceed from the ſame baſe. The buffaloe is much ſtronger and larger than the moſt beautiful oxen in Europe; and I am of the ſame opinion as many travellers, that it would not be impoſſible to render it tractable and ſubmiſſive to the yoke. That this attempt hath never yet ſucceeded, is but a weak objection; for falſe experiments are no proof. Such an enterprize, indeed, would require time, knowledge, and art; and ought not to be entruſted to the indolence of an ignorant planter, accuſtomed often to ſee inſurmountable obſtacles in a ſlight difficulty. This ſpeculation is worthy of the grand views of a Company who are continually endeavouring to extend every branch of induſtry and commerce. Were ſome of theſe animals caught when very young, and put into proper incloſures, and were they gradually accuſtomed to come and receive ſome favourite food from their keeper, they would ſoon careſs the hand that feeds them. When they grew up, they would produce young; which, inſtructed by their mothers, would follow their example, and become ſtill more familiar. Why ſhould we not believe that, at the third generation, the manners of the buffaloe would be ſoftened, when we every day ſee ferocious bears, taken from the mountains of Savoy, traverſe our ſtreets, dance, leap, ſalute people, and in a word obey the orders of their conductor with the moſt timid ſubmiſſion to his avaricious caprice?

In

In general, all animals with horns and cloven feet have a haggard eye, which gives them a terrible appearance: but, as in carnivorous and ſanguinary animals, this is not a ſign of fury, on the contrary it indicates terror and fear. They have neither the deep cunning, nor the miſchievous diſpoſition, of the lion, the tiger, or even the elephant. Indeed they have no occaſion for them; the vegetables upon which they feed do not cauſe ſo much heat in their bowels: they are exceedingly wild, but they are timid. In this apparent contraſt I ſee nothing contrary to nature, and I diſcover one of the moſt ſtriking features of man.

I ſhall not here enter into an examination of thoſe complicated ſhades, hitherto ſo little known, which diſtinguiſh ſavage animals from each other. It is always either a regard to their own ſafety, or a deſire of providing for their own ſubſiſtence, that leads them to ferocity; but being, like us, ſubject to paſſions variouſly combined, they proceed to it by different routes. This examination, which is foreign to a work merely hiſtorical, I ſhall reſerve for my deſcription of animals.

I had never yet taken a cloſe ſurvey of the bay, very improperly called Blettemberg. The attention I paid to my health, at the cloſe of my diſorder, had hitherto prevented me from examining it; and, when I went thither for the firſt time, I was much ſurpriſed to find that it was only a very open road, ſcarcely extending into the country at all. It is very ſpacious, and has a ſufficient depth of water for the largeſt veſſels; the anchoring ground is ſure; and, by means of boats, they may be eaſily carried to a beautiful part of the ſhore, which is not confined by the rocks that abound there, as they are all detached

from one another. By advancing a league from the coaſt, the crews would arrive at the mouth of the Queur-Boom, where they would find water. Refreſhments might be procured from the inhabitants of the environs; and the bay would ſupply fiſh, with which it abounds; and excellent oyſters, with which all the rocks are covered. This bay is one of thoſe places where government ought to eſtabliſh warehouſes and repoſitories for timber: the foreſts every where around are magnificent; and they could be more eaſily cut down than any where elſe: for it is not to ſteep mountains that one muſt go in ſearch of wood, as in the country of Auteniqua; it is here ready at hand. Warehouſes, as I have ſaid, ought to be erected cloſe to the bay; and, during the fine monſoon, it might be tranſported to the Cape in a ſhort time, and without any riſque. This eaſy expedient would open the eyes of the inhabitants to their own intereſt: the exportation would be renewed, and would ſoon increaſe. Theſe inexhauſtible lands once cultivated, beſides affording hopes of abundant crops, would draw thither a great number of intelligent planters, on account of the ready communication which they could have with the Cape: and theſe people would procure from all parts neceſſaries and conveniences which they muſt now renounce; becauſe, to find them, it is neceſſary to go more than an hundred and fifty leagues into the country. Were this ſcheme carried into execution, theſe honeſt Dutchmen would no longer be loudly and ſincerely wiſhing that ſome nation would form a ſettlement in their neighbourhood, and furniſh them with thoſe articles that contribute to the happineſs of life, and the pleaſure of ſociety. It would alſo, at the ſame time, extend

the

the treaſures of commerce, at the Bay of Agoa. Theſe wiſhes, ſo contrary to their political intereſt, could not be gratified without hurting them. The Company have nothing to do but to form here a proper eſtabliſhment. To the general profits of ſuch an inſtitution would be added thoſe of individuals, which could not fail to be of importance. The might, for example, cut down a certain tree, called *ſtinking wood*, and export it to Europe, where it would undoubtedly ſoon be preferred to every other kind employed by cabinet-makers.

The advantages which the Company and the colony might derive from this beautiful country, could not certainly have eſcaped the governor, who made a journey hither. But in ſettlements, the proſperity of which is at the mercy of a few united together, and intereſted in oppoſing every plan that would tend to diminiſh their profits, what is a governor? A paſſive being; indolent with reſpect to the general good, and who is actuated only by a regard to his private concerns. Conſenting to a kind of baniſhment for a certain time, he privately eſtabliſhes in his own mind, as the firſt article of his contract, that, as he muſt rapidly make a fortune, every method of procuring it is honourable and lawful. Full of theſe ideas, when he arrives at the ſeat of his government, where he finds every thing favourable to his views, he exerciſes his rapacity with impunity; when he returns to his own country, he inſults his fellow-citizens by inſolent pomp: and he undoubtedly never thinks of opening the eyes of his employers, concerning thoſe improvements and regulations which in a little time would increaſe the happineſs of a populous colony.

I am

I am of opinion that colonies, under the management of excluſive companies, are like thoſe public carriages which circulate through all Europe, carrying paſſengers and goods at the ſame time; provided the latter arrive ſafe, the proprietors care very little whether the poor travellers who deſcend from the coach have their limbs broken or ſound.

In the neighbourhood of this bay I found means to increaſe my collection with ſeveral beautiful birds, and even with ſome new ſpecies, which were common here in the woods: but I wiſhed, above all, to procure one which more than once put my patience to the proof, and had like to have coſt me very dear. It was a bald-buzzard*, of a moſt beautiful ſpecies. This bird, of the genus of the eagle, is almoſt as large as the oſpray. Every day I ſaw it hovering over my camp, but at ſuch a diſtance that it could not be reached by a ball. I however conſtantly obſerved its motions; and I made a perſon always keep watch, and never loſe ſight of it. One day that I had croſſed the Queur-Boom, while walking along the bank oppoſite to that on which my camp ſtood, I perceived a number of heads, fragments of large fiſhes, and the bones and remains of ſmall antelopes, ſtrewed on the ground, near the rotten trunk of an old tree, I immediately concluded that this muſt be the place where two of theſe bald-buzzards had eſtabliſhed their fiſhery, or at leaſt their ordinary haunt: and it was not long before I ſaw them ſoaring round in the air, at a great height. Without loſs of time I concealed myſelf in a thick buſh; but this ſtratagem was not executed with ſufficient alertneſs

* By ſome naturaliſts called the ſea eagle. T.

neſs to deceive the piercing eyes of theſe two eagles. They doubtleſs obſerved me; for they did not deſcend. Next day, and for ſeveral days ſucceſſively, I returned to my ſtation, at break of day. I poſted myſelf in the thicket, but all my vigilance was ineffectual. This buſineſs was very laborious, becauſe, to go and return, I was obliged to paſs the river twice: and at theſe times it was neceſſary to wait for the ebbing of the tide.

Tired out at laſt, as I waſted my time without being able to ſucceed, I took two Hottentots with me; and croſſing the river, in the middle of the night, conducted them to a ſpot near the trunk of the old tree, where I made them dig a hole three feet wide and four deep. When it was made, I placed myſelf in it; and having ordered them to cover the hole over my head with a few ſticks, a piece of a mat, and ſome earth, I reſerved only a ſmall opening, ſufficiently large for me to put my fuſee through it, and to ſee the old trunk. I then deſired my people to return to the camp. Day approached, but the cruel birds did not make their appearance. The earth ſeeming to be newly thrown up, had no doubt rendered them ſuſpicious; and this was a circumſtance which I had not at firſt thought of. At the cloſe of the night, I came forth from my hole, and went to paſs a few hours at my camp; after which I returned, and interred myſelf as before. This expedient I continued for two days ſucceſſively, with much patience. During that interval, the ſun had dried the earth, and made it all of one colour. About the middle of the third, I obſerved the female ſoaring above the tree, upon which ſhe ſoon alighted, with a very large fiſh in her talons. I inſtantly diſcharged my

my piece; and had the pleaſure of ſeeing her fall, flapping her wings: but before I could diſengage myſelf from my mat, and the earth which covered me, ſhe ſo far recovered her ſtrength as to fly; and, bruſhing the ſurface of the river, reached the other ſide, where ſhe expired.

The joy which I felt on finding myſelf in poſſeſſion of this bird was ſo great, that, without obſerving that the tide was up, I threw myſelf into the water, with my fuſee on my ſhoulder; and I was not ſenſible of my imprudence, till in the middle of the river I found myſelf up to the chin. To add to my misfortune, I was alone, and entirely unacquainted with ſwimming. Had I attempted to return, the rapidity of the current would have undoubtedly thrown me down. Without knowing what was to become of me, I purſued my way, as it were, mechanically; and I had the good fortune to reach the oppoſite bank: an inch more would have infallibly drowned me. I ruſhed upon my bald-buzzard; and the pleaſure of ſecuring my prey, ſoon effaced every remembrance of fear and danger. I was, however, obliged to pull off all my clothes, and to ſpread them out to dry: in the mean time I amuſed myſelf in examining my prize; and, when my clothes were perfectly dry, I returned without any danger to my habitation. When I arrived, I was told that ſeveral of my people were gone in purſuit of a buffaloe, which they had met with; and, towards evening, I ſaw them return, loaded with the limbs of the animal, which they had cut up on the ſpot. Next morning, very early, I did not neglect to ſend in ſearch of the fragments, which they had left to attract birds

birds of prey. This method procured me the male bald-buzzard; which differed from the female in nothing but the general diſtinction of carnivorous birds, that of being always a third ſmaller. I ſhall give a figure and deſcription of the latter, under the name of *Vocifer*.

The ſame morning, as I was ſitting calmly in my chair, at the entrance of my tent, having before me a table upon which I was diſſecting my bald-buzzard, an antelope, of that ſpecies called the *boſ-bock*, ſuddenly croſſed my camp, and paſſed through my carriages; while my dogs, which had firſt ſeen it, and which endeavoured to oppoſe it, were not able to make it alter its courſe. After this alarm, it ran ſtraight towards a net extended to dry, at the ſide of my camp; tore it to pieces; carried away ſome fragments of it; and purſued by my whole pack, threw itſelf precipitately into the river. At the ſame inſtant I ſaw nine wild dogs arrive, which had probably given chace to it, and which were following its traces. At the ſight of my camp, theſe animals ſtopped ſhort, and, making a little tour, reached a ſmall hill, upon which I had poſted myſelf; and from which, as well as I, they could ſee their prey ſeized by my dogs and my Hottentots; who did every thing in their power to tear it from the teeth of the former, and to bring it to me alive. They indeed ſucceeded effectually, after having laſhed its legs. Nothing could be more pleaſant than to ſee the ſimple look of theſe wild dogs; which being ſtill ſpectators of this provoking ſcene, had not quitted the eminence; and, being ſeated on their rumps in a melancholy poſture, ſufficiently ſhewed by their impatient geſtures what ideas they entertained of our injuſtice, and of their own

own right to the repaſt which we had deprived them of. I wiſhed much to catch one of them, and ſome of my people crept ſoftly along in order to reach them; but being more cunning than we, they ſuſpected their manœuvres, and made off full ſpeed. I ſent a bullet after them, to thank them for the ſervice they had rendered us; but, as it did not take effect, I might as well have ſaved myſelf the trouble. This antelope I attempted to preſerve, and to tame; but it was ſo wild, the ſight of my dogs inſpired it with ſo much fear, and it ſtruggled ſo much, and made ſo many violent motions, that it muſt infallibly have deſtroyed itſelf. To ſave it therefore from this torture, we killed and ate it.

This adventure, for more than eight days, afforded ſubject for my wits to exerciſe their genius on; and they laughed at the poor wild dogs for having ſtarted the game, to ſee themſelves ſo ſuddenly deprived of it.

It muſt however be allowed, that, had not my dogs been ſupported by my people, they would not have been able to ſecure the antelope; for, though they were more numerous than the wild dogs, the latter were ſtronger, fiercer, and more courageous. I ſhall afterwards have occaſion to ſpeak of them, and to rectify a great many errors reſpecting them, which have been propagated and confirmed by men of the greateſt talents. But how can people ſpeak with any certainty of objects which they have never ſeen themſelves, eſpecially when they copy the relations of others who know them as little?

Until the 15th of June I formed ſeveral encampments in the neighbourhood of the Bay in different places. Reſolved to continue my journey into the country, between the chain of

of mountains and the ſea, I went to reconnoitre the way: I endeavoured, but without ſucceſs, to find a place where my carriages could eaſily paſs; for the foreſts were ſo extenſive, and ſo thick, that there was no poſſibility of penetrating through them. My Hottentos, on their part, were not more fortunate in their reſearches than I: we could abſolutely diſcover no outlet. I determined therefore to croſs the chain of mountains; but to accompliſh this, it was ſtill neceſſary that I ſhould find the beginning of a paſſage, where my unfortunate oxen might be able to keep their feet. In vain did I traverſe, run, and ſearch every where around; for nothing appeared to my view but peaked rocks, to whatever quarter I turned. Without knowing it, we had entangled ourſelves in a kind of hollow valley, without any opening, from which we could not get out but by returning the ſame way we had come. This method through neceſſity we were obliged to purſue; and we again found ourſelves at the wood of Poort, from which we had departed a month before.

Such is the happy inſtability of the human mind, that little is ſometimes wanting to reſtore it to its former tranquility. This ſpot, to which I returned with the utmoſt regret, and which before ſeemed ſo barren and diſmal, all of a ſudden reſumed a new and ſmiling appearance. Having obſerved, as I walked along, the traces of a flock of elephants, which muſt have paſſed there the ſame day, nothing more was requiſite to baniſh all my chagrin, and to conſole me for the delay I had experienced in my route; we therefore erected our tents in that place.

Among

Among my Hottentots there was one who had travelled thus far in his youth with his horde and family, who had not been long removed from it. As he had beſides a ſuperficial knowledge of the country, I ſelected him, with four others; and, having put my camp in order, we departed all ſix, carrying with us ſome proviſions; and following the traces, which we never loſt ſight of even for a moment: but they led us on till night without ſeeing any thing. We then ſat down to ſupper very merrily, exhorting one another not to think too much of the enjoyments of our camp, and, having kindled a large fire, we ſtretched ourſelves out around it, on the cold hard ground.

Though each of us had affected to inſpire his companions with courage and patience, we were equally tormented with emotions of fear and uneaſineſs: none of us enjoyed a ſound ſleep: on the ſmalleſt breath of wind, or the leaſt quivering of a leaf, we ſtarted up to liſten, and began to prepare for our own preſervation. Night paſſed away amidſt theſe ſlight alarms; and at the break of day I rouſed my ſleepy companions by loud cries: little time was requiſite for them to be dreſſed; and a glaſs of ſtrong liquor revived their ſpirits, and made them forget the rude manner in which I had awakened them. We ſpent the ſecond day in great dejection; and we were not ſo ſucceſsful as on the firſt. In the evening we repeated the ſame ceremonies as before, but with this difference, that being perhaps become bolder, or even more confident, we hoped that an uninterrupted ſleep would recover us a little from our fatigue, and ſerve at leaſt to refreſh us. We were however diſturbed by a very ſudden alarm. Scarcely had

my

my Hottentots been aſleep an hour, when a buffalo, attracted by the light, approached cloſe to us; but as this animal is afraid of man, no ſooner did he obſerve us, than he was ſeized with terror, and inſtantly fled. The noiſe which he made in retreating precipitately through the buſhes, and the craſhing of the branches, awaked us; upon which we all ſtarted up, and having ſearched around for the ſpace of an hour, diſcharging our pieces at random, we returned to our fire. The third day was ſtill more diſaſtrous: the hiſtory of it I ſhall relate more at length, for it often recurs to my mind; and at preſent, as the fire of youth becomes cooler, it does not lead me into ſuch raſh enterprizes, and has given place to calmer ideas: the remembrance of it ſtill affects me, and makes me ſhudder.

Purſuing the traces of our animals without ever loſing ſight of them, we arrived at a very large open part of the foreſt, in which there were only a few ſhrubs, and ſome underwood. Having ſtopped here, one of my Hottentots climbed up a tree to get a better view; and caſting his eyes every where around, he made a ſign to us to be ſilent, by putting his finger to his mouth; and ſignified by his hand, which he opened and ſhut ſeveral times, what number of elephants he perceived. When he deſcended we held a council; and going to the leeward of them, that we might approach without being diſcovered, he conducted me through the buſhes ſo near, that he brought me quite cloſe to theſe enormous animals. I almoſt touched them, as I may ſay, and yet I did not obſerve them; though I can ſafely declare that my eyes were not faſcinated by fear. In ſuch ſituations one muſt run great riſks, and prepare for

for danger. I ſtood upon a ſmall eminence juſt above the elephant. In vain did my courageous Hottentot point it out with his finger; and twenty times repeat, in an eager and impatient tone, *there it is.* I ſaw nothing of it; for I caſt my eyes to a much greater diſtance, and never imagined that what I beheld below me could be any thing elſe than a rock, ſince the maſs I ſaw was entirely motionleſs. At length, however, a ſlight movement attracted my attention; and the head and tuſks of the animal, which eclipſed its enormous body, turned towards me. Without loſing this opportunity, or waſting my time in fine contemplations, I reſted my large fuſee on its pivot, and taking aim at the middle of its forehead, diſcharged my piece, upon which it inſtantly dropped down dead; whilſt about thirty more, ſtartled by the report, fled on all ſides. Nothing could be more amuſing than to ſee the motion of their large ears, which flapped about in proportion to the ſwiftneſs with which they ran: but this was only a prelude to a much more animated ſcene.

I was ſurveying them with great pleaſure, when I fired at one of them as it paſſed cloſe to us. By the excrements tinged with blood which it dropped, I judged that it was dangerouſly wounded, and we began to purſue it. Sometimes it fell, then got up, then fell again; but we were cloſe at its heels, and ſtill made it riſe by the ſhots which we diſcharged at it. On the fourteenth ſhot, it turned with great fury upon the Hottentot who had fired; whilſt another diſcharged a fifteenth, which only ſerved to increaſe its rage; and, as it advanced rapidly towards us, he called out to us to be upon our guard. I was only twenty-five paces diſtant from

from it; loaded with my fuſee, which weighed thirty pounds, beſides ammunition: and I was more diſadvantageouſly ſituated than my people; who, not having gone ſo far, could more eaſily eſcape the avenging trunk, and extricate themſelves from danger. I therefore betook myſelf to my heels: but the elephant, at every ſtep, gained upon me; ſo that, more dead than alive. for only one at that moment ran up to defend me, I found no reſource but to lie down cloſe to the trunk of an old tree, which was extended on the ground. Scarcely had I reached my lurking place, when the animal arrived, leaped over the trunk, and, being much frightened with the noiſe of my people, whom he heard before him, he ſtopped ſhort to liſten. From the place where I lay I could have eaſily fired, as my fuſee very luckily was loaded; but the animal had already received ſo many ſhots without effect; and it was in ſo unfavourable a poſition, that, deſpairing to kill it by one diſcharge, I remained motionleſs waiting for my fate. I however watched it, reſolved to ſell my life at a dear rate, ſhould it attempt to return towards me. My people, uneaſy for their maſter, called to me from all quarters; but I was very cautious not to give them any anſwer. Convinced by my ſilence that they had loſt their chief, they redoubled their cries, and were filled with the utmoſt deſpair. The elephant, frightened, immediately turned round, and a ſecond time jumped over the tree, ſix paces below the ſpot where I was, without perceiving me; upon which ſtarting up, fired with impatience in my turn, and wiſhing to ſhew to my Hottentots ſome ſigns of life, I diſcharged my fuſee in its poſteriors. The animal then entirely diſappeared; leaving

every

every where as it paſſed certain traces of the cruel ſituation to which we had reduced it.

The picture is not yet finiſhed; gratitude and friendſhip demand the laſt touch. Worthy man, who poſſeſſeſt a feeling heart, the moment is now come when I muſt erect to thy memory that monument which I promiſed thee. Thou canſt never comprehend with what pleaſure I diſcharge this duty: may it confer ſome honour on my travels, and even ornament the relation of them. It will never reach thee in the boſom of thy peaceful deſarts: but thou wert ſenſible of my tears. and thy fraternal arms have preſſed me to thy boſom. Whether thou art alive or numbered with the dead, I ſtill feel it. The remembrance of me will be preſerved longer and more gloriouſly among thy ſavage hordes, than by empty trophies reared by the vanity of man. I confeſs myſelf unworthy of it, and I renounce it. But do thou, generous Klaas, young pupil of nature, whoſe virtuous mind was never corrupted by our elegant inſtitutions, preſerve always the remembrance of thy friend. It is to thee alone that he ſtill addreſſes his tears and his tender regret.

When ſtretched out by the trunk of an old tree, at the mercy of a furious animal, which with its wandering eye was ſearching for me every where around; and which, if it had turned towards me, might have deſtroyed me on the ſpot—it was then that my heart, quite palpitating with terror, was opened to the ſenſations of a tender ſentiment, inſpired by one of thoſe people, of whom poliſhed nations never ſpeak but with horror or contempt; whom, without knowing, they conſider as atrocious

cious beings, the refuſe of nature; in a word, by an African ſavage, a Caffre, a Hottentot.

When I left the Cape, Mr. Boers gave me this man, as a perſon upon whoſe bravery and fidelity I could depend. He had expreſsly charged him never to abandon me, whether dead or alive; promiſing to reward him handſomely, if, on my return to the Cape ſound and ſafe, I ſhould give a ſatisfactory teſtimony reſpecting his behaviour. It was this man that never quitted me for a moment; and who, having ſeen me ſuddenly diſappear, hurried to my aſſiſtance, though he fought for me in vain. I heard him through the buſhes call me with a faint voice, which indicated his anxiety; then addreſs himſelf to my dejected and confounded companions, who followed at a little diſtance, and reproach them with their timidity, when ſurrounded by danger, "What will become of "us?" ſaid he, in his own expreſſive and affecting language—"what will become of us, "ſhould we have the misfortune to find our "unhappy maſter trod to death under the feet "of the elephant? Dare you ever return to "the Cape without him? With what face will "you appear before the fiſcal? Whatever ex"cuſe you may make, you will be conſidered "as baſe aſſaſſins: it is you indeed who have "deſtroyed him. Return to the camp; plunder "and diſperſe his effects; do whatever you "chooſe. As for me, I ſhall never quit this "place: dead or alive I muſt find my unfortu"nate maſter; I have reſolved to periſh along "with him."—Theſe words were uttered with ſighs and lamentations ſo affecting, that, even in the moſt critical moment, I perceived the tears ſtart from my eyes, and the tendereſt

ſenſations ſucceed to terror. My firing my fuſee was a ſignal of joy; and I found myſelf in an inſtant ſurrounded by my people, and in the arms of my dear Klaas, who ſqueezed me ſo cloſely that I could ſcarcely diſengage my body from him. This faithful youth in turns kiſſed my perſon and clothes; while his companions, with the utmoſt ſorrow, and in a ſuppliant attitude, ſtretched out their hands towards me, as if to implore my pardon. I took care to conſole them; for I was too highly gratified by this ſcene to diſturb it by uſeleſs words or reproaches. From that day, the happieſt in my life, in which I knew the pleaſure of being ſincerely beloved, and from no motives of intereſt, I conſidered the worthy Klaas as my equal, my brother, and the confidant of all my pleaſures, misfortunes, and ſecrets: he has more than once calmed my diſquietude, and revived my drooping courage. If he afterwards ſhewed any ſigns of weakneſs which were dangerous, and contrary to the good order I had eſtabliſhed among my people, this teſtimony of his attachment gave him ſo much power over me, that I could never allow myſelf to ſhew ſeverity towards him, or even to alarm his heart.

I drew from nature the portrait of this brave Hottentot; and the faithful and ſtriking reſemblance here given of him was executed under my inſpection, and engraved from my own deſign.

As night was approaching, we haſtened towards the elephant which I had been ſo fortunate as to kill with one ſhot; and indeed nothing could have been more ſeaſonable; for our preſence drove away ſome vultures, and ſeveral ſmall carnivorous animals, which, without

out loſs of time, had begun to devour it. We kindled a number of fires; and, as our proviſions ran ſhort, my people cut a few ſteaks from the elephant, and prepared for me ſome ſlices of the trunk. This was the firſt time I had ever taſted ſuch food; but I firmly reſolved it ſhould not be the laſt, for I found it moſt delicious. Klaas aſſured me that, when I taſted the feet, I ſhould ſoon forget the trunk; and, in order to convince me, he promiſed me a moſt luſcious breakfaſt, which he inſtantly ordered to be prepared. The four feet of the animal were then cut off: a hole about three or four feet ſquare was made in the earth, and filled with burning coals; and the whole being covered with dry wood, a large fire was kept up in it during the greater part of the night. When the hole was ſufficiently heated, every thing was taken from it. Klaas placed in it the four feet of the animal, covering them with hot aſhes; afterwards with coals, and ſome ſmall pieces of wood; and this fire was ſuffered to remain till day-light. All that night I was the only perſon who ſlept; for, according to the orders given by Klaas, my people kept watch. They informed me that they had heard many buffaloes and elephants ranging around. This we expected, as the whole foreſt was filled with them; but the number of our fires prevented them from coming to diſturb us.

At breakfaſt my people brought me one of the elephant's feet; which had ſwelled ſo much by its being baked, that I could ſcarcely diſtinguiſh its form. It however looked well, and exhaled ſo ſweet a ſmell that I was eager to taſte it. I indeed found that it was food fit for a king. I had often heard the feet of bears boaſt-

ed of; but I could not conceive how an animal ſo heavy and coarſe as the elephant could produce ſo tender and delicate fleſh. "Never," ſaid I to myſelf—"never can our modern Lu-"culli diſplay upon their tables a diſh like that "which I now enjoy. In vain with their ri-"ches do they exchange and reverſe the ſea-"ſons; in vain do they boaſt of laying all na-"tions under contribution: their luxury has "never yet attained to this gratification; bounds "are preſcribed to their ſenſuality." And I devoured without bread my elephant's foot; while my Hottentots, ſeated near me, regaled themſelves with other parts, which they found no leſs excellent. Theſe particulars may appear childiſh, or at leaſt indifferent, to a great many readers; but it is neceſſary to relate every thing, ſince ſo many whimſical and abſurd notions have hitherto been entertained reſpecting this ſingular country which I was traverſing.

The reſt of the morning we employed in plucking out its tuſks; as it was a female, they did not weigh twenty pounds: the animal herſelf was eight feet three inches in height. My people then loaded themſelves with all the proviſions they could carry, and we ſet out to return to our camp. We at firſt propoſed to follow the one we had left alive, and which had been wounded in ſo cruel a manner; but ſo many had arrived during the night, that their traces were entirely confounded: we were, beſides, ſo fatigued, that being afraid to diſcourage theſe poor people, I reſolved to lead them back as ſoon as poſſible.

The Hottentots poſſeſs the faculty of ſight in the moſt exquiſite degree; and this advantage is ſeconded by a very wonderful attention.

Upon

Upon the drieſt ground, where, notwithſtanding its weight, the elephant leaves no traces perceptible to a common eye, amidſt withered leaves ſcattered and driven here and there by the wind, the African can diſtinguiſh the prints of this animal's feet: he ſees the path it has purſued, and that which he muſt follow to come up with it. A green leaf reverſed or torn off, a bud deſtroyed, the manner in which a ſmall branch is broken, and a thouſand other circumſtances, are to him never-failing marks, whilſt the moſt expert European hunter would loſe all his reſources. As for me, I could diſcover nothing; though I had beſtowed much time and attention upon this divining part of one of the moſt delightful kinds of hunting. I confeſs that I was ſo fond of it, that I did not diſdain to enter into the minutiæ of it. I acquired inſtruction more and more every day; and, when I ranged the woods with my people, I ſpent whole days in aſking queſtions; and I had ſometimes occaſion to put my precepts immediately into practice.

When we returned to the camp, my old Swanepoel told me that, during my abſence, he had been every night diſturbed by flocks of elephants, which had approached ſo near that they heard them break the branches of the trees, and browſe on the leaves. I made a tour through the foreſt; and I indeed ſaw a great many young trees broken, branches ſtripped of their leaves, and young ſhoots devoured.

This was enough to induce me again to take the field; eſpecially as my people had been allowed ſufficient time to repoſe. I however choſe rather to go and ſurpriſe theſe animals in the day time, than to wait for them in my tent during

during the night. In the morning, therefore, I ſet out; but I was obliged to wander to a great diſtance. From the top of an eminence, at the edge of the wood, I perceived four in ſome very thick buſhes: and taking care to get to the leeward of them, I approached with great precaution; ſurveying them with much pleaſure for half an hour, while they were eating the extremities of the branches. Before they took them in their mouths, they beat them three or four times with their trunks; in order, as I imagine, to ſhake off the ants, and other inſects. After this ceremony, they always graſped with their trunks all the branches they could ſurround; and, conveying them to their mouths always on the left ſide, ſwallowed them without much chewing. I remarked that they preferred thoſe branches which were beſt furniſhed with leaves; and that they were, beſides, extremely fond of a yellow fruit, when it was ripe, which in the country is called a cherry.

When I had ſufficiently examined their method of feeding, I fired at the head of the one neareſt to me, which I killed; and in leſs than ten minutes I in the like manner extended the whole three on the ground *.

We imagined that there were no more: but a great noiſe near us having made us turn round, one of my Hottentots, who obſerved a ſmall elephant, killed it. I was very ſorry for his raſhneſs, and reprimanded him ſeverely. As this animal was not larger than a calf of five or ſix months old, I might have eaſily tamed it.

Among

* When the elephants are in a flock, and purſued, if the firſt that is fired at falls, one may be certain of killing all the reſt, one after the other. I ſhall ſpeak of this ſingularity hereafter.

Among the four I had killed, there was a young male ſeven feet one inch in height. Its tuſks weighed only about fifteen pounds each.

The largeſt of the reſt, which were females, was only eight feet five inches in height; and their tuſks, in general, did not exceed fifteen pounds each.

A ſingularity which aſtoniſhed both me and my Hottentots, who aſſured me they had never before ſeen it—and which naturaliſts, according to their laudable cuſtom of receiving as certain and invariable principles only what is related in books, and by thoſe who travel in their cloſets, will probably doubt—is, that the female, which we judged to be the mother of the young male, had only one teat, ſituated in the middle of her breaſt. It was full of milk, ſome of which I ſqueezed into my hand, and found it to be very ſweet; but the taſte of it was far from being agreeable: this milk iſſued from eight ſmall orifices, very perceptible and diſtinct. The reſt had two dugs, placed generally under the breaſt, of the ſame form as thoſe of women; and of ſuch a ſize, that more than one lady of pleaſure who has loſt a little of her plumpneſs, might have envied this charm in my female elephants.

The young male which my imprudent Hottentot killed, had no tuſks; and when I opened its lips a little, at the place from which they ſhould have grown I perceived only a ſmall white knob, of the ſize of a ſwan ſhot: its fleſh was extremely delicate. In one of the females I hoped to diſcover a fœtus, but I was deceived. I found their ſtomachs filled with a very liquid liquor, ſome of which my people drank, and which I had alſo the curioſity to put to my mouth; but it was ſo diſagreeably nauſeous, that

that to deſtroy the taſte of it, and to refreſh myſelf, I went and drank from a ſpring that happened to be at the diſtance of a quarter of a league from the place where we were.

Having left my people buſy in cutting up the elephants, when I returned from the ſpring, at the end of half an hour, I was much ſurpriſed to perceive nobody. I could not conjecture what had obliged them to leave their work; nor could I conceive the cauſe of this ſudden deſertion. Beginning to bawl out as loudly as I could, in order to recal them, in caſe they ſhould be near enough to hear me, I was much aſtoniſhed when I ſaw them all four come out of the elephant's belly, into which they had entered to detach the interior fibres: theſe, next to the feet and the trunk, are the moſt delicate morſels.

I diſpatched my fifth Hottentot to tell Swanepoel to ſend me a yoke of oxen and a chain. As we had cut off the four heads when they arrived, we began by putting the chain through them; but it required no little art and addreſs to make the oxen approach, and to yoke them to the chain. They ſnorted violently, turned away their noſtrils, and ſtarted back with horror. By ſtratagem, however, we were able to bring them back; and they were yoked to the four heads, which they dragged to my tent, acroſs ſands, duſt, and buſhes ſtained with their blood: a horrid ſpectacle without doubt, but ſtill neceſſary; as the roads were ſo bad that a waggon could never have been conducted to the ſpot. But the caſe was ſtill worſe, when, being deſirous of returning to the elephants, near which I had left a part of my people, I could not make my horſe paſs thoſe places which were tinged with their blood. I was obliged to take another route; and

when

when we arrived near the elephants, as ſoon as he ſaw and ſmelled them, he capered and kicked in ſo violent a manner, that he threw me; and making off full ſpeed, by a very long compaſs returned to the camp.

I am again about to touch upon one of thoſe moments which do not twice occur in life. With what ſenſations is my ſoul agitated! I ſhall curſe pleaſure, and all its inventions. One muſt be a different being to combine ſo many ideas and various ſentiments. He who experiences them cannot ſupport them; he is agitated, oppreſſed, and borne down by them.

Being obliged to return on foot, I perceived through the trees a ſtrange Hottentot on horſeback, taking the neareſt way to come up with me. Having ſtopped to wait for him, I found that he was an expreſs ſent by Mr. Boers. He had received orders to enquire concerning me in every part of the colonies through which I might have paſſed; and to follow my traces, when, quitting the known roads, I ſhould enter the diſtant country. This man had faithfully executed his commiſſion; and, guided by the ruts of my wheels, had viſited all my different encampments, and thence proceeded till he found me.

Before I quitted the Cape, Mr. Boers had promiſed that if he received any letters for me from Europe during my abſence, whatever route I might purſue, or wherever I might be, he would take care to convey them to me. This reſpectable friend kept his word; and in the packet which his Hottentot put into my hands I found ſeveral which bore the French ſtamp. As theſe were the firſt accounts tranſmitted to me from Europe ſince my departure, it would be difficult to deſcribe with what impatience and agitation I received

received them from the meſſenger. Uncertain what I was to learn from them, I had ſcarcely ſtrength ſufficient to open them; and it may be readily gueſſed that I did not wait until I had returned to the camp, to ſatisfy myſelf on this ſubject. They were all from my deareſt friends, and my wife; my eyes ran over them quicker than lightning: but I every where found cauſe for being happy; for I obſerved that I was beloved and regretted. The tendereſt friendſhip came to ſeek me in the boſom of my deſarts, and to overwhelm my heart with its delights. I could neither ſpeak, ſigh, nor weep—I could only remain in the ſpot where I was, ready to die with joy; but I gradually recovered my ſenſes, and returned to my camp.

When theſe firſt tranſports had ſubſided, I ſhut myſelf up in my tent; and giving free vent to my tears, which afforded me relief, I immediately began to write anſwers to theſe letters: I dated mine from *the camp of Auteniqua, the day on which I had killed four elephants.* One of theſe letters, which contained ſome intereſting details, addreſſed to a literary friend, was ridiculouſly handed about ſome years ago through Paris; and was afterwards loſt. I there mentioned ſeveral diſcoveries which contradict opinions hitherto received; and of which I ſhall give an account in my deſcription of animals.

At night, when my camp was put in order, and the fires kindled, I placed myſelf, as uſual, with my papers before me on a piece of plank, while my Hottentots ſat around me.—"My "friends," ſaid I, "you behold one of your "countrymen, whom Mr. Boers has ſent to en- "quire in what ſituation I am; and to know "whether your behaviour be agreeable to what

"he

"he expects from you, and to your duty to-
"wards me. Behold, added I, ſhewing them
"the firſt letter that I put my hand upon—be-
"hold the anſwer which I have written; and in
"which I tell him that you have hitherto behaved
"like honeſt and brave people; and that, during
"the eight months we have been travelling to-
"gether, I have conſidered you as the faithful
"companions of my enterpriſe and labours. I
"tell him that he needs not be uneaſy on my ac-
"count, becauſe I have the ſame confidence in
"you as in myſelf; and that Mr. Boers's meſſen-
"ger, on his return to the Cape, may be able to
"aſſure your friends and families that you are
"well, and that you are contented and happy, I
"wiſh him to be a witneſs of the amicable man-
"ner in which I treat you; and for this reaſon I
"ſhall diſtribute to each of you an excellent roll
"of tobacco: I hope, therefore, that all your
"pipes will be inſtantly lighted."—When my diſtribution was finiſhed, each retired to his place, and ſmoked at his eaſe.

I was ſo overjoyed with the teſtimonies of affection which I received from my relations and friends, with their ſincere proteſtations of attachment, and with the accurate information which they all gave me in their letters, that, intoxicated with pleaſure, forgetting Africa, my hunting excurſions, my moſt beautiful birds, and my elegant collections, and in a word for that moment becoming a child, I deviſed in order to amuſe me what might among certain ranks be called a *feſtival*, and by thoſe of an inferior claſs a *farce*.

I had been too generous in diſtributing my tobacco; and my people had received more than was ſufficient to intoxicate them, had I permitted them to uſe it as they pleaſed: but I contrived a method

method to prevent them. Obſerving that the third pipe was drawing to a cloſe, as ſoon as I had drank my tea I ordered a ſmall box to be brought me, which I placed on my knees. I opened it, and never did any quack ſhew more myſterious dexterity; I drew from it that noble and melodious inſtrument unknown perhaps at Paris, but very common in ſome of the provinces, and which is ſeen in the hands of almoſt every ſchool-boy and of the vulgar—in a word, a Jews harp. Scarcely had I begun one of thoſe airs played on the Pont-Neuf, when I ſaw every body with the utmoſt ſilence lay down their pipes, and ſtare at me with their mouths wide open, their arms half extended, and their fingers ſpread, in the attitude of thoſe people whom ſome old woman has bewitched. With their ears attentive, and their heads motionleſs, and inclined to one ſide, they did not loſe the leaſt note of the inſtrument; till, not being able to reſtrain their enthuſiaſm, each inſenſibly quitted his place, to enjoy the pleaſure nearer. I imagined every moment that I ſhould ſee them altogether proſtrate themſelves before the god who performed this wonder; whilſt I could hardly keep from burſting out into a fit of laughter, which would have ſoon diſſipated the whole charm. When I had done, I laid hold of the perſon that was neareſt me, and put the wonderful lute into his hands: I found it very difficult to make him comprehend the method of uſing it; but having at length made him do it ſome how or other, I ſent him back to his place. As I much doubted whether the reſt would be contented if they had not one each, I diſtributed as many Jews harps as I had Hottentots; and being all collected, ſome performing well, others badly, and ſome wretchedly, they regaled me

with

with a concert that might have frightened the Furies. Even my oxen, diſturbed by their horrid humming, began to bellow; and all of a ſudden my camp became ſuch a ſcene of noiſe and riot as was perhaps never ſeen. In every part it exhibited the true picture of a holiday.

By the air of ſtupefaction which they exhibited when I myſelf tried the ridiculous inſtrument, I was perſuaded that ſimple minds may be ſtruck with aſtoniſhment by very ſimple means; and notwithſtanding all that hiſtory relates of the great talents of Orpheus, and of the wonders performed by his muſic, I am always inclined to allow much honour to thoſe poets who have celebrated this harmonious lyre, which their imagination alone has conſecrated.

When I was ſufficiently ſatisfied with the melody of mine, being afraid that theſe pleaſantries might be changed into very ſerious alarms, and that my oxen, which had not yet forgotten the elephants heads, might abſolutely be frightened, and run away, I made a ſign with my hand that I had ſomething more to ſay, and immediately the noiſe ceaſed. "My dear friends, added I, in a ſimple and affectionate tone, "I have regaled "you with the beſt tobacco you ever taſted; I "have made you acquainted with a wonderful "inſtrument: we are now going to terminate "this delightful entertainment with a few bum-"pers of the beſt French brandy; and we ſhall "drink to the health of our families and friends."

This, as I have ſaid, was a real holiday: and even to my domeſtic animals, all muſt ſhare in the general frolic, and act a part in our orgies. Kees at this moment was cloſe by my ſide; a ſtation which he was remarkably fond of, and which he never failed every evening to aſſume.

Reared

Reared like a child of the family, I had almoſt ſpoiled him; for I never eat or drank any thing without allowing him part of it. If I ſometimes happened to forget him, as he was a ſworn enemy to my abſence of thought, he took great care to rouſe me from my reveries by patting my hand, or ſmacking his lips. I have already ſaid that he was remarkably gluttonous; his temperament led him to extremes; for he was equally fond of milk, and of ſtrong liquors. I never gave him any of the latter but in a plate, which I generally ordered to be placed before him; as I obſerved that every time he had drank it from a glaſs, his precipitation made him take as much by the noſe as by the mouth, ſo that he coughed and ſneezed for whole hours, which incommoded him very much, and might have at length cauſed him to break ſome blood veſſel.

He was then on the ground cloſe by me, waiting till his allowance ſhould be ſerved up to him; and following with his eyes the bottle which was paſſing round, and which ſtopped at each of my Hottentots. With what impatience did he wait for his turn! How ſtrongly did he expreſs by his motions and looks that he feared the cruel bottle would be emptied too ſoon, and would not reach him! But, alas! the unfortunate animal, while licking his lips by anticipation, little knew that he was going to taſte it for the laſt time. But be not dejected, O tender reader! My worthy Kees did not periſh, and my brandy was ſaved for the future.

Having finiſhed my diſpatches, and incloſed them in their laſt cover, at the moment when he beheld with ſatisfaction that the bottle had performed its round, it came into my head to deceive his expectation by a trick, without any other

other motive than to ſurpriſe him, and to amuſe myſelf. His allowance had been juſt poured into the plate; and, whilſt he was preparing to taſte it, I lighted at my candle a ſlip of paper, which I imperceptibly conveyed under his belly: the brandy inſtantly caught fire; Kees ſent forth a ſhrill cry, and leaped to the diſtance of ten paces from me. I tried to recal him, by offering him a thouſand careſſes; but, following the dictates of his own paſſion and anger, he immediately diſappeared, and retired to reſt. Night being now pretty far advanced, I received the compliments and thanks of my people; and all of us ſlept very ſoundly.

I muſt obſerve that, after this terrible fear into which poor Kees was thrown, all the means I employed to make the animal forget what had paſſed, and to bring him back to his favourite liquor, were entirely fruitleſs. He never would taſte a drop of it; on the contrary, he ſeemed to have conceived an implacable averſion to it. When any of my people, for their amuſement only, ſhewed him the bottle, he muttered between his teeth: and ſometimes when it was within his reach he would give it a blow; and, inſtantly climbing a tree, there ſhew his diſpleaſure in perfect ſecurity.

Next day, after having properly rewarded Mr. Boers's intelligent commiſſioner, I delivered my diſpatches to him, and ordered him to ſet out on his return.

In the morning I began to diſſect the head of one of the elephants, in which I left the grinders and the tuſks. During this operation, ſeveral of my people, who had gone to procure proviſions, brought back abundance of fleſh, being ſome of the moſt ſucculent parts of the four elephants, which

which they cut into very long and thin ſlices, in order that, being expoſed to the ſun according to our uſual cuſtom, they might dry ſooner. Some broke the bones into ſmall pieces, and put them into our two kettles; after which they threw boiling water upon them: in proportion as the greaſe melted, it floated on the ſurface; and being collected, my people put it into bladders, and ſome of the inteſtines, the better to preſerve it. A Hottentot never neglects to make this proviſion; for, beſides what he daily uſes at his toilette, he employs it alſo in cooking different diſhes. As for us, we never could find too much of it, as we were obliged to greaſe the wheels and traces of our waggons; which, without this precaution, would have been ſoon ſo much dried by the ſun as to be unfit for ſervice. I myſelf uſed it for candles and for my night lamp, which waſted a great deal: for want of ſpun cotton I made wicks of my neckcloths.

The preparing of this fat took us up a conſiderable time; and the operation was not quite finiſhed, when ſome of my people came to inform me that they had obſerved an enormous print of an elephant's foot, at the diſtance of an hundred paces from my tent. As the traces were quite freſh, I concluded this monſtrous animal could not have gone far; and I immediately ſet out in ſearch of it. We ranged the foreſt with great care; and having come up with it at the end of half an hour, I took aim at it in the proper place: but I was much ſurpriſed not to ſee it fall; my fuſee, in all probability, muſt not have been ſufficiently loaded, or the animal was an impenetrable rock. However, when it found itſelf wounded, it ruſhed towards us with great fury, as we expected; but the buſhes being thick, and

ſerving

ſerving us as a kind of rampart, it could do nothing elſe than ſtamp the earth, and ſhew its rage in vain. It loſt a great deal of blood; but it appeared, from the ſwiftneſs with which it fled, that it would be of no avail to purſue it. I was extremely ſorry for this diſappointment, as it was the largeſt I had ever before ſeen. It was at leaſt thirteen feet in height; and, to judge by the eye, its tuſks could not have weighed leſs than an hundred and twenty pounds each.

When our proviſions were thoroughly dried and packed up, we departed, in order to return once more towards the fatal Kayman's Hole, where I had paſſed on the 30th of April, two months before. My Hottentots, whom I had ſent to reconnoitre, having informed me that we could croſs the chain of mountains at one called the *Devil's Head*, we purſued our courſe that way; and this gave me an opportunity of reviſiting the place of my encampment at Pampoen-Kraal, upon which I once more caſt a look of regret.—When we arrived at the bottom of the mountain, I ordered the elephant's head I had diſſected, its tuſks, and all my preſerved birds and inſects, to be put upon one of the carriages; and again leaving my camp to the care of faithful ſervants, I repaired with my waggon to Mr. Mulder's houſe; for, as I was obliged to return in order to find a paſſage, I had approached very near to his habitation. Having engaged to tranſmit my packet and freſh letters to Mr. Boers by the firſt opportunity, I at length took leave of this reſpectable family, whom I was never again to ſee, and went back to my camp.

Next morning, very early, we aſcended the mountain; not without much difficulty and fatigue. But this was nothing in compariſon of

what we experienced in deſcending on the other ſide: the view of it indeed frightened me. As ſoon as we perceived it, we all looked at one another without uttering a ſingle ſyllable, as people unexpectedly caught in a trap: we could not however remain on the ſummit; and it was neceſſary that we ſhould deſcend either on the one ſide or the other. If we eſcaped from Charybdis, we were ſtill expoſed to the danger of falling into Scylla. Always perſuaded that patience and precaution will overcome the greateſt obſtacles, I could not believe that this enterprize would be more difficult for my caravan, than the paſſage of the Alps had formerly been to numerous armies; and I immediately prepared, as one may ſay, for taking this dangerous leap. I took care to make my carriages deſcend one after the other; and that they ſhould be each drawn by no more than two oxen. I cauſed the firſt to advance in good order, eſcorted by all my people: but we were obliged to paſs over pointed rocks, detached one from the other; which, forming ſo many high ſteps, gave the waggon ſuch jolts, as almoſt broke it to pieces. This however was not what appeared to us to be moſt dangerous; for, by the means of ropes affixed to the wheels, we raiſed them up, or ſuffered them to roll as occaſion might require: it was the ſmooth places, and the ſlippery declivities, that made us ſhudder. At every moment I thought I ſaw the carriage and the oxen hurried to the brink of the precipice; while, on the ſide oppoſite to the declivities, we were pulling with all our force the ropes faſtened to the waggon. Our addreſs being crowned with complete ſucceſs, we aſcended to bring down the other two carriages; and, after a conſiderable time, the whole

whole caravan arrived ſafe at the bottom of the mountain. It appeared to me that Nature had oppoſed this barrier, as an obſtacle to prevent me from entering on this new country, and that it was here ſhe had concealed her moſt beautiful treaſures: on this account I had been ſo much the more incited to overcome every thing that ſtood in my way. I knew that this route from Auteniqua to the Ange-Kloof was conſidered by the natives as impracticable; and that no perſon before me had ever attempted it with carriages. This was ſufficient to pique my vanity; and I had the good fortune to paſs theſe rocks: but, as if it had been neceſſary that puniſhment ſhould immediately follow ſuch a raſh attempt, I found myſelf in a moſt frightful and gloomy deſart.

This was no longer the delightful and fertile country of Auteniqua: the mountain which we had croſſed, or rather from which we had precipitated ourſelves, formed a wall of ſeparation between it and us for ever. It no longer preſented thoſe majeſtic foreſts which we had ſo long admired; for the whole back part of the chain was hideous and bare, deſtitute of trees, and without the leaſt appearance of verdure. Another chain, parallel to this, ſeemed involuntarily to bear a few paltry woods, which had ſome reſemblance to that named *Wage-Boom*. This wood, by incloſing the country, and leaving only one opening, has made the name of *Ange-Kloof* be given to this long valley.

My intention being to direct my courſe towards the north, I continued my journey for ſeven hours, keeping along that curſed valley; and we again croſſed the Queur-Boom, which here is but a moderate ſtream, whereas two months before it had made me tremble, when,

to ſearch for my bald buzzard, I threw myſelf into it at its mouth with too much precipitation, and narrowly eſcaped being drowned. Purſuing our melancholy route, after ſeveral encampments no leſs tedious, and a march of twenty-two hours, I paſſed another river, called, and very juſtly, *Krom-Rivier*, or the Crooked River. It formed ſo many turns and windings, that we continually found it in our way: I croſſed it ten times. In proportion as we advanced, the two chains of mountains ſeemed to approach each other on purpoſe, and the country to become conſiderably narrower. The valley was now only a marſhy hollow; which, for full ſix leagues, occaſioned great fatigue to my oxen. We once more had a view of the *Krom-Rivier*; but this was for the laſt time: it took its courſe towards the eaſt, where it throws itſelf into the ſea; and we at length turned altogether towards the north. Here I left one of my horſes that was ſick, and which could not follow us; as I was unwilling to wait in hope of a cure, which perhaps might not ſucceed. I thought it would be much better to leave the care of his preſervation to nature.

Along the Ange-Kloof there are a few wretched houſes, which have more reſemblance to the dens of wild beaſts than to the habitations of men. The inhabitants breed very few cattle. When the eaſt wind blows acroſs this wild country, it is exceſſively cold: I was ſenſible of it from the very firſt to the laſt day. Every morning we had ice and white froſts. I do not exactly know the length of this diſmal valley; but I am certain that I employed forty-ſix hours in going through it.

After

After advancing ſeven or eight leagues I croſſed *Diep-Rivier*, the Deep River; and ten leagues farther, on the 7th of Auguſt, we encamped upon the borders of that of *Gamtoos*. It derivs its name from an unfortunate captain who in a ſtorm was ſhipwrecked near its mouth.

Half an hour before we arrived here, we were obliged to deſcend another very ſteep and dangerous mountain, by which the bellies of two of my oxen burſt, ſo that their bowels came out. This loſs was occaſioned by the perſon who conducted my ſecond waggon, and who had imprudently quitted it.

The beautiful aſpect of this new country made us ample amends for the melancholy moments we had ſeveral days experienced, amidſt the deteſtable roads and the ice of the valley of the *Ange-Kloof*.

The firſt night I encamped, towards midnight, before I had fallen aſleep in my tent, I thought I heard an unuſual noiſe: and liſtening with attention, I found I was not deceived; for I could diſtinguiſh the ſound of ſhouting and ſinging, which ſeemed to proceed from no great diſtance. I immediately called my people, who told me that they alſo heard a confuſed noiſe; but we did not know whether it was occaſioned by Hottentots or Caffres. I had great reaſon to be afraid of the latter; not that they thirſt more after human blood, as ignorant writers have ſaid; but becauſe the cruel manner in which they are treated by the planters, incites them more to war, and becauſe the right of avenging injuries is natural to man. I ſhall ſoon relate ſeveral facts, which will prove, better than vain reaſonings, whether a ſavage or an European is the moſt barbarous.

As

As it was probable that I might be confounded among the victims of their vengeance, I ordered all my people to be under arms, and we removed to ſome diſtance from our camp. The farther we marched the noiſe became more diſtinct; and we obſerved ſome fires. I could not however perſuade myſelf that they were Caffres; for they would have betrayed themſelves: artifice in vain borrows the darkneſs of night, it muſt alſo borrow its ſilence.

Having placed myſelf in ambuſh, that I might be able to ſurpriſe them, in caſe they ſhould paſs that way to plunder my camp, I detached two of my people to take a nearer view of them; who immediately returned to inform me that we had been alarmed without any cauſe; and that they were only a horde of Hottentots, who were ſinging and making merry. This intelligence freed me from my uneaſineſs, and I was even happy in my adventure, which ſeemed to promiſe next morning a very intereſting interview. We therefore returned to our camp, and ſlept very ſoundly.

Early in the morning I was again awakened by a warbling, which afforded me no leſs pleaſure. It proceeded from birds which I did not know, and which I had never before heard. I found them moſt beautiful. I was dazzled by the brilliant and variable plumage of the copper-coloured ſtarling, the amethyſt-coloured throat of the certhia flaveola *, the couroucoucou †, the king's-hunter, and of a great many others; I obſerved alſo ſeveral ſpecies which I had never before ſeen.

Game

* In the original *ſucrier*; called alſo by Briſſon *grimperau*; and by Sir Hans Sloan, in his Natural Hiſtory of Jamaica, *the black and yellow bird.*

† *Curucui*, a Braſilian bird. *Trogon Linn.* T.

Game appeared to me to be very abundant in this place, I ſaw, above all, innumerable flocks of pheaſants, and a few of thoſe antelopes called bos-bock, paſs before me. The facility I found in procuring all theſe animals, of which I had never ſeen ſo great plenty any where, inſpired me with the greateſt joy.

Whilſt I amuſed myſelf with firing at the birds, I permitted my Hottentots to go and pay a viſit to their countrymen. An acquaintance was, in a little time, formed with this ſavage horde; I myſelf in my turn went up to them, and we were ſoon both ſatisfied with one another. Their women every evening brought us a large quantity of milk; for theſe people were very rich in cattle. They made me a preſent of a few ſheep, to which they added a noble pair of oxen for my carriages; and as I was not willing to remain in their debt, I gave them ſome earthen ware, a ſmall quantity of tobacco, and a few knives. All my people inſinuated themſelves inſenſibly into the kraal; each then had his doxy, and the female ſquadron came and eſtabliſhed themſelves among us during the whole of our abode.

I learned that at the mouth of this river I might meet with ſome hippopotami, or river horſes, none of which I had ever ſeen. As I was only five or ſix miles diſtant from the ſea, and on that account had it in my power, perhaps, to be acquainted for the firſt time with this ſpecies of quadrupede, I ſet out with the utmoſt ſpeed. The river however was ſo broad, and its banks ſo encumbered with large trees, that my labour and reſearches were in vain. I ſpent whole days in walking along its ſhores; and in the night time I placed myſelf on the watch, in hopes of ſeeing ſome of them come forth from the water to feed; but I never had even that ſatisfaction.

To

To make me amends, elephants and buffaloes, eſpecially the latter, were ſo common, and eaſy to be killed, that we had more proviſions than we could uſe. I ſupplied the former huſbands of our women with great abundance: being better armed than they, I hunted only for them; ſo that I obliged them in every manner poſſible. Thus, amidſt the deſarts of Africa, I introduced the cuſtoms and polite manners of the moſt civilized nations of Europe. I muſt here remark, that if ſome hiſtorians have ſaid that the Hottentots are of a jealous diſpoſition, thoſe whom we met with were not ſuſceptible of that cruel paſſion. Had I afterwards found any hordes ſubject to it, I ſhould have mentioned this circumſtance with the ſame veracity.

My engaging behaviour had ſecured me the friendſhip and confidence of theſe honeſt ſavages; and they entertained ſo high an opinion of me, that they never undertook any thing without conſulting me. One day having come to complain that the hyænas of the country ravaged and deſtroyed their flocks, I was the more inclined to believe what they ſaid, as one of my oxen had juſt been devoured by the ſame animals. Charmed at having an opportunity of hunting theſe ferocious beaſts along with them, I appointed next day for our excurſion; and early in the morning they arrived at my camp, to the number of about an hundred men, all well armed with bows and arrows. To theſe I added all my hunters; and, putting myſelf at their head, we beat the whole country round with our dogs. With ſuch a number of people I hoped to make a general ſlaughter among theſe deſtructive animals; but three ſhots which we fired, and which killed three of them, had apparently diſperſed all the reſt.

reſt. After this we ſaw none of them; for the noiſe had ſo frightened them, that, from that moment till the time of our departure, we heard no more of the hyænas than if they had never exiſted.

Some days after we had an alarm which might have become ſerious. In the middle of the night we were all at the ſame time awakened by a frightful noiſe, proceeding from a troop of elephants, which in paſſing us almoſt bruſhed againſt our camp: in number they might be about an hundred. On this occaſion I was under ſuch dreadful apprehenſions, which my people ſhared along with me, that we did not think proper to inſult this formidable battalion, nor to diſpute their paſſage. Had I attempted it, my camp, my animals, my carriages, and even my people, would in a moment have been cruſhed to atoms. They however did not ſtop, and my camp remained perfectly ſafe.

At the break of day we received a viſit from our neighbours, who had been expoſed to the ſame terrors. They came expreſsly to inform me that, if I ſhould ever again meet with the ſame ſpecies, I ought to be very cautious not to fire at them; as the elephants we had ſeen were extremely dangerous, and much more miſchievous than the reſt. They aſſured me that their fleſh was good for nothing; that it occaſioned ulcers to thoſe who eat it; and, in a word, that they were red elephants.—Red elephants! This word alone inſpired me with a ſtrong deſire to ſee them, and ſeemed to promiſe the acquirement of freſh knowledge; for I had never read or heard that there were red elephants.

When theſe animals retired into the woods, they had reached a deep hollow, ſurrounded by enormous

enormous buſhes, where it would not have been prudent to approach too near them. I therefore ordered ſome Hottentots to file off behind, and to form a ring; bidding them ſet fire, at certain diſtances, to the dry graſs; and to diſcharge ſome ſhots, to make them paſs by the bottom of a large rock, upon which I had poſted myſelf with my beſt markſmen, and where we could be expoſed to no kind of danger.

My rangers ſeconded my efforts in a wonderful manner; for as ſoon as the fires and the noiſe of the reports had ſpread the alarm, the whole troop, frightened, preſented themſelves before me. A dozen of ſhots, which they did not expect, made them retreat with precipitation, and in the greateſt diſorder. I ſhould in vain attempt to deſcribe the numberleſs ſigns which they exhibited of their fury: on one ſide they ſaw themſelves purſued by the flames of the buſhes, which gained on them behind; and on the other by my ſhots, which I directed to the only paſſage that remained for them to eſcape death. They agitated their bodies as much as the enormity and heavineſs of them would permit; while their deafening cries, and the craſhing of the trees which they broke in retreating or flying, formed ſuch a dreadful tumult, that the ſight of it frightened me, though I was ſheltered by my rock, and could not be diſturbed in any manner. We wounded one, which for a moment ſeparated from the troop; but it ſoon joined them; and being confounded with the reſt, it would have been very difficult to take aim at it again. From the nature of its bellowing, I imagine it was mortally wounded, and that it could not long ſurvive; but we did not think proper to go immediately

diately in ſearch of it, being firmly perſuaded that it could not eſcape us.

In this new kind of hunting I had no other view than to procure one of theſe animals; which were ſaid to be of a different ſpecies from all thoſe I had before ſeen. Satisfied with having wounded one, and conſidering it as certainly dead, I reſolved not to go in ſearch of it till the next morning: I conſequently recalled all my people, and we returned to our camp. I had indeed been ſtruck with the reddiſh colour of theſe animals; and I found this phenomenon extraordinary: but having remarked that the ground upon which we then were had almoſt the ſame tint; and reflecting that the elephant is fond of wallowing in moiſt and marſhy places, and even ſpends a part of its time in this manner, I doubted whether this colour could be owing to any other cauſe, and whether it was not purely factitious.

Next morning, however, I was better convinced, when, on returning to the wood with my people, I found the elephant dead. Every body was perſuaded that our neighbours were deceived; and though they had mentioned that it was dangerous to eat of this ſpecies, they cut off the trunk for me, and reſerved for themſelves the other parts of the animal. I afterwards met ſeveral planters, who believed alſo that there were red elephants; and whatever pains I took to free them from their error, I could not convince them; ſo much were they prejudiced in favour of their own opinion.

The one I killed, which was a female, was nine feet three inches in height: one of its tuſks weighed thirteen pounds, and the other ten. The elephant, whether male or female, has always

always the left tuſk ſhorter and ſlenderer than the right; it is alſo more ſmooth and ſhining. To account for this difference it muſt be obſerved, as I have already ſaid, that it is always from left to right that the animal conveys its food with its trunk to its mouth. The brambles or branches on which it feeds occaſion a continual friction againſt that tuſk, whilſt the right is ſcarcely ever touched: beſides, it is with the ſame tuſk that it is accuſtomed to ſound the earth; and by the ſize of the holes which it makes one may judge of its bulk.

When I deſcribe the elephant, I ſhall ſpeak of its manners, paſſions, and taſtes; and on this ſubject I ſhall advance nothing but what I have ſeen.

I began to take great pleaſure in this kind of hunting, which I found much leſs dangerous than amuſing. I could not then conceive, nor have I been ſince able to comprehend, why authors and travellers have filled with ſo many falſehoods the relations which they have written of the ſtrength and ſagacity of theſe animals; and given ſcope to their imaginations reſpecting the dangers to which thoſe who purſue them are expoſed. It muſt indeed be allowed that, if any one is ſo thoughtleſs and fool-hardy as to attack an elephant on plain open ground, he is certain of being deſtroyed if he miſſes his aim; but if the hunter knows how to take his advantages, all the ſtrength of the animal muſt yield to his coolneſs and addreſs. I confeſs that the appearance of an elephant cauſes an aſtoniſhment which at firſt renders one almoſt ſtupid; it is awful and terrible: but, with a little courage and compoſure, one ſoon becomes accuſtomed to its aſpect. Before he attempts this grand kind of hunting, a prudent

a prudent man ſhould endeavour to examine the character, the gait, and the reſources of the animal; and he ought, above all, according to circumſtances, to ſecure ſome places of retreat, to ſhelter him from danger, in caſe he ſhould be purſued after having miſſed. By means of theſe precautions, this ſpecies of hunting is only an amuſing exerciſe; a game in which there is fifty to one to be laid in favour of the player.

Whilſt I remained in this canton I varied my encampments as well as my occupations; but I always was much attached to the delightful banks of the Gamtoos. I here made an ample harveſt of rarities, and my collection increaſed very ſenſibly.

On the 11th of September, at ſix in the morning, we decamped. I had informed the neighbouring horde of my intentions, and it was with the utmoſt regret that they ſaw us depart. As for me, I could not leave them without being ſenſibly affected. Theſe good people had inſpired me with a very ſtrong attachment. "Can ſo "much mildneſs and ſimplicity," ſaid I, "excite "ſo great contempt? Are theſe then the ſavages "of Africa, who thirſt after the blood of Euro-"peans, and who cannot be approached without "horror?" This goodneſs and affability gave me the greater confidence, as I was then really in the midſt of a deſart, and as nothing ſeemed to threaten me with danger in future. All this country, which is inhabited only by hordes of the Gonaquas, differs eſſentially from that belonging to the Hottentots of the colony. Theſe people have no direct intercourſe one with another: the former are called *ſavage Hottentots*. Before I proceed any farther I ſhall make a few obſervations,

obſervations, without which one could only form very imperfect ideas reſpecting them.

They no longer compoſe, as formerly, one nation, uniform in their manners, cuſtoms, and purſuits. The eſtabliſhment of the Dutch colony was a fatal epoch, which diſunited them all, and occaſioned thoſe differences by which they are at preſent diſtinguiſhed.

In 1652, when Riebeck the ſurgeon, on his return from India, opened the eyes of the Directors of the Company reſpecting the importance of an eſtabliſhment at the Cape, they wiſely thought that ſuch an enterpriſe could not be better executed than by the genius which had planned it. Furniſhed therefore with ample powers, and being provided with proviſions, and every thing that could contribute to the ſucceſs of his project, Riebeck ſoon arrived at Table Bay. Like an able politician, and a ſkilful negociator, he employed every method in his power to ſecure the friendſhip of the Hottentots; and he covered with honey the edge of the poiſoned bowl. Gained over by powerful allurements, theſe ſavages, the unlimited maſters of all this part of Africa, did not perceive how many of their rights, and how much authority, repoſe, and happineſs, this guilty profanation deprived them of. Indolent by nature, true citizens of the world, and little addicted to agriculture, they were not uneaſy that ſtrangers ſhould ſeize on a ſmall corner of uſeleſs land, which was often uninhabited. They thought that whether a little farther, or a little nearer, it was of no importance where their flocks, the only riches worthy of engaging their attention, ſought for their food, provided they could find it. The avaricious policy of the Dutch had a view of great

great hopes from ſo peaceful a beginning; and as it is readier, and knows better than any other to embrace the advantages offered it by fortune, it did not fail to finiſh the work, by holding out two very ſeducing allurements to the Hotentots —tobacco and ſtrong liquors. From that moment theſe unhappy ſavages bid adieu to their liberty, and to that pride which is inſpired by a ſenſe of thoſe rights which mankind inherit from nature. Attracted by theſe two baits, they approached as near as they could to the ſource from which they received them; whilſt the Dutch, who for a pipe of tobacco, or a glaſs of brandy, could procure an ox, paid every attention in their power to ſo valuable neighbours. The colony inſenſibly increaſing, and acquiring more ſtrength, that formidable power which dictated laws to all this part of Africa, and removed to a great diſtance every thing that attempted to oppoſe its eager ambition, was ſeen to riſe on foundations that could no longer be ſhaken. The fame of its proſperity was ſoon ſpread, and drew thither every day a number of new ſettlers. It may be eaſily judged that, according to the uſual practice, founded upon a logic which deſtroys the laws of property, ſo ſacred and ſo reſpectable, the will of the ſtronger party was a ſufficient title for it to extend its poſſeſſions. The Dutch ſeized indiſcriminately at ſeveral times, and even without having occaſion for them, on all the lands which government, or individuals favoured by government, thought proper or found convenient.

The Hottentots, thus confined, preſſed and haraſſed on all ſides, divided themſelves, and purſued plans entirely oppoſite. Thoſe who were ſtill intereſted in the preſervation of their flocks,

flocks, penetrated among the mountains towards the north and north-eaſt; but theſe were the fewer number. The reſt, ruined by a few glaſſes of brandy, and a few rolls of tobacco, impoveriſhed and ſtripped of every thing, did not think of quitting their country; but abſolutely renouncing their manners, as well as their ancient and happy condition, of which they have no remembrance at preſent, they baſely ſold their ſervices to the whites, who of ſubmiſſive ſtrangers having ſuddenly become haughty maſters, and enterpriſing planters, have not ſufficient hands to turn to advantage their immenſe riches; and who eaſe themſelves of the painful and multiplied labours requiſite on their plantations, by laying them upon theſe unfortunate Hottentots, more and more degenerated and corrupted.

A few paltry and miſerable hordes have indeed eſtabliſhed themſelves, and live as they can, in different cantons of the colony; but they have not even the power of chooſing their own chief. As they are in the diſtrict of government, and under its authority, the right of naming him belongs entirely to the governor. The perſon whom he chooſes repairs to the town, and receives a large cane, much like that of our couriers; but with this difference, that the knob of it is only of pure copper; after which a creſcent or gorget, formed of the ſame metal, upon which is engraven in large letters the word *capitein*, is put round his neck as a badge of his dignity. From that moment his melancholy horde, which for a long time has loſt its national name, aſſumes that of the new chief who has been ſet over it. They will then ſay, for example, the horde of captain Kees, who becomes to the governor a new creature,

ture, a new ſpy, and a new ſlave, and to his own countrymen a new tyrant.

The governor himſelf is never perſonally acquainted with thoſe whom he appoints. It is generally the planter neareſt the horde who ſolicits and determines the nomination for one of his own creatures: becauſe he truſts that a low perſon whom he has in this manner patronized will not be ungrateful, and that he will have all his vaſſals ready at his ſervice when neceſſity may require. Thus without any preliminary information, and even without any regard to juſtice, a helpleſs and feeble horde are obliged to receive laws from a man often incapable of commanding them; and thus does the intereſt of one individual prevail over the general good both in great and little affairs: and it is thus that the revolutions of a republic, and the puerile election of the ſyndic of a village, proceeding from the ſame principle, are equally ſimilar in their effects.

Such in general are the Hottentots known under the name of the Hottentots of the Cape, or Hottentots of the colonies: but we muſt not confound with them the ſavage Hottentots, who by way of deriſion are called the *Jackal-Hottentots*; and who, far removed from the arbitrary Dutch government, ſtill preſerve in the deſart which they inhabit all the purity of their primitive manners.

I was now arrived at that point in my journey, where having no more intercourſe with the former, whom I had left behind me, I found myſelf in the middle of the latter; but it is not neceſſary that I ſhould here enter particularly into all the different marks by which they are diſtinguiſhed. To convey ſome idea of the character of the ſavage Hottentots, and of what I had to expect

from them, it will be ſufficient to offer one remark, which is a truth confirmed by experience. In all countries wherever the ſavages are abſolutely ſeparated from civilized nations, and live ſequeſtered, their manners are mild; but they change and become corrupted the nearer they approach to them. When the Hottentots live amongſt them, it is very rare that they do not become monſters. This aſſertion, however mortifying it may be, is nevertheleſs a true principle, which is ſcarcely liable to one exception. When on the northward of the Cape I found myſelf under the tropic, among remote nations; when I ſaw whole hordes ſurround me with ſigns of ſurpriſe, and of the moſt childiſh curioſity, and, approaching me with confidence, ſtroke my beard, my hair, and my face with their hands—"I have nothing to fear from theſe peo-"ple," ſaid I to myſelf; "this is the firſt time "they ever ſaw a white man."

I have entered into this digreſſion with the greater readineſs, as it is of ſome importance to fix the reader's attention to this part, which is the moſt intereſting of all my excurſions and travels. I eagerly return to it; and I always experience a new pleaſure in relating theſe ſimple but delightful adventures.

The whole horde, who could with difficulty ſeparate from me, accompanied me as far as the river *Louri*, four leagues from the Gamtoos; where we ſtopped to take leave of our good friends, and to regale them with ſome glaſſes of brandy; and a few pipes of tobacco. The women, who during my reſidence in the neighbourhood of their kraals had attached themſelves to my Hottentots, and who perhaps regretted a little the loſs of my kitchen, abſolutely

inſiſted

inſiſted upon following us. But I had often remarked, though I pretended not to obſerve it, that my people had ſeveral times quarrelled; and the conſequence was, that they had relaxed in their ſervice: on this account I obſtinately perſiſted in refuſing to ſuffer theſe women to accompany us, or to remain with me. One only appeared to me to be very active: I found that ſhe took great care of my cows and my goats, and that ſhe waſhed my linen well. Theſe reaſons concerned my own perſon; but another motive pleaded very powerfully in her favour. My faithful Klaas had conceived a violent affection for her: to ſeparate them would have been to tear two hearts at once, to be ſevere without any advantage, and to be cruel towards one who would have ſacrificed his life for me on every occaſion. By a policy, therefore, contrary to that which any other would have adopted, I reſolved to retain her. This mark of preference ſhewed how far I diſtinguiſhed Klaas from his companions: whether it proceeded from injuſtice or weakneſs, I could not reſiſt the deſire of making at leaſt one happy, ſince all could not be ſo; and I afterwards had no cauſe to repent of my conduct. To this woman I gave the name of *Ragel*. Thoſe ſervices which ſhe had always performed were aſſigned to her; and ſhe attended me every where till the end of my journey.

After the departure of the horde, we continued our route; but a violent ſtorm obliged us to ſtop at *Galgebos*. It was five in the afternoon when we halted: the place was far from being deſtitute of beauties, and I would gladly have remained here ſome time; but we could not find a ſingle rivulet. We therefore croſſed

the river *Van-Staade*, at the diſtance of two leagues; and unyoked at ſeven on the borders of a lake, where we could procure water ſufficient for our whole caravan.

To how many uſeful proceſſes and inventions does not chance ſometimes give birth! It often ſerves us better, and by means much more ſimple, than any of thoſe ſuggeſted by our own lights, our combinations, or our knowledge. Of this truth I received a convincing proof even in the place in which I had ſtopped.

The horde from whom I ſeparated had come in the morning to bring to my camp a large ſupply of milk; with which I filled a pitcher almoſt to the brim, and placed it in my waggon, intending to uſe it on my journey for quenching my thirſt. The ſtorm by which we were overtaken had ſo cooled me, that I did not touch it during the day: but in the evening, after our fires were kindled, being deſirous of diſtributing it among my people, I found that it was become ſour. I therefore ordered it to be put into a veſſel to regale my dogs; but I was much aſtoniſhed to find it converted into moſt excellent and beautiful butter, for which I was indebted to the jolting of my waggon. This diſcovery, which I afterwards put in practice during the reſt of my journey, procured me, beſides freſh butter, a moſt ſalutary ſupply of buttermilk, which I frequently made uſe of, and which doubtleſs contributed to preſerve me vigorous and in good health.

The day following we were prevented from again ſetting out by a ſecond ſtorm, which was really dreadful. The hail that fell was as large as pullets eggs; and my cattle ſuffered ſo much, that I was under great uneaſineſs for them. One of my

my ſhe goats was ſo ſeverely wounded, that I was obliged to kill her: this indeed was a real loſs. I regretted her much, for ſhe was about to bring forth young.

The weather at length changing, we quitted our lake; and about noon, after croſſing two rivers, the great and the little *Swaar-Kops*, I ordered my oxen to be unyoked on the banks of the latter. Having obſerved the prints of ſome animal's feet with which I was not acquainted, my people, to whom I ſhewed them, aſſured me that they were not thoſe of the rhinoceros. Whilſt my camp was arranging, I followed theſe traces; but night coming on made me loſe them, and I returned without having ſeen any thing. On this river, which was pretty conſiderable, we found another horde of ſavages. The kraal was compoſed of nine or ten huts, inhabited only by fifty or ſixty perſons at moſt. Theſe people adviſed me not to croſs the river Boſſiman, which paſſes near this place: they ſaid it would be much better to turn off to the left, and to puſh farther into the interior part of the country, to avoid a numerous troop of Caffres, who often alarmed that canton, and carried fire and ſword along with them; that nothing was ſeen every where around but diſorder and pillage, fields ravaged, and habitations laid waſte and reduced to aſhes; that the proprietors, to avoid ſudden and certain death, had abandoned their poſſeſſions, dragging behind them a few feeble remains of their flocks; and that, in a word, I ought not to approach the country of Caffraria. So alarming a caution, I muſt own, at firſt ſtartled me a little: I immediately aſſembled my people, and we deliberated what plan it would be moſt prudent to purſue. I was very deſirous of ſounding the diſpoſition of every

every one. Their unanimous opinion, which coincided very well with my private intention, was, that we ſhould firſt avoid, but not in ſuch a manner as to retard us too much, this dangerous troop of Caffres; that, as we were very near them, we ought always to be on our guard both night and day; that, to prevent being ſurpriſed, we ſhould never encamp but in the open country; that our oxen, when out at paſture, ſhould be protected by four men, armed with fuſees; that my horſes ſhould never quit the ſtakes to which they were tied, that in caſe of an alarm they might be always at hand; and that my large fuſee, well loaded, ſhould remain at the camp; and that three ſhots, fired at equal intervals, ſhould be a ſignal for thoſe, who on account of their different occupations might be obliged to go to too great a diſtance from the common center, to rejoin the main body.

When we had taken theſe precautions, and given proper inſtructions for their being obſerved, I mounted my horſe; and, followed by two of my people well armed, made a ſtrict ſearch every where around, to diſcover whether any of the Caffres were ranging in the neighbourhood, ready to fire upon the firſt that I might ſee concealed with a view to ſurpriſe us, in caſe I ſhould find it impoſſible to take him priſoner. Not one however appeared. Having advanced a little farther after dinner, I perceived that the river, as far as its mouth, was bordered with prickly trees; that the ground near it was ſandy, and covered with underwood; and that its environs abounded with game, ſome of which I killed for proviſion. As we ſaw no appearance that could give us any uneaſineſs, I was convinced we had then nothing to fear from theſe Caffres, ſaid to be ſo terrible.

I ordered

I ordered my camp to be moved next morning, and we quitted the *Swaar-Kops*. The horde of Hottentots, terrified merely by the name of theſe cruel avengers, propoſed that we ſhould eſtabliſh ourſelves at a conſiderable diſtance thence, that we might not be in the neighbourhood of Caffraria: and, when they ſaw me depart, they aſked permiſſion to follow me, and to put themſelves under the protection of my camp. This requeſt I readily complied with; and though at bottom I was overjoyed at their propoſal, I artfully made a merit of it, as much with a deſign to keep them dependant upon me, as to give ſpirits to my people by this formidable body, and to ſupport their courage. Nothing more fortunate could have occurred; I reinforced my troop; and, beſides the particular reſources of this horde, I had the advantage of my artillery, which could oppoſe whole clouds of aſſagays*, and baffle all the efforts of an army of ſavages, ſhould I be well ſeconded. In leſs than two hours all the huts were taken down and packed up, and with other effects put on the backs of our ſpare oxen.

I firſt made the half of the men belonging to this horde ſet out before me, with all their cattle, giving them two of my people well armed to eſcort them. They carried with them alſo one of my horſes; that, in caſe of any accident, they might be able to give me earlier intelligence of it.

An hour after I ordered my relays, cows, ſheep, goats, and all the women of the horde, with their children mounted upon their oxen, to follow them, and a party of their men to march behind. This company was eſcorted alſo by ſix of

* A kind of lance which the Caffres uſe with much dexterity.

of my chaſſeurs. My three carriages, with the reſt of my people, cloſed the rear. I myſelf, mounted on my beſt horſe, in order that I might have my eye every where, rode backwards and forwards on the wings, and from right to left, continually afraid of being ſuddenly ſurpriſed; for I can ſafely aſſert that, had the leader been once diſmounted, the reſt of the caravan would have been expoſed to the moſt horrid butchery, and muſt have become the prey of the moment.

I was completely armed. In the ſide pockets of my breeches I carried a pair of double-barrelled piſtols; I had another pair of the ſame kind at my girdle; my double-barrelled fuſee was ſlung at the bow of my ſaddle; and a large ſabre hung by my ſide, and a poniard or dagger from the button-hole of my veſt: I could therefore fire ten times almoſt in a moment. This arſenal incommoded me conſiderably at firſt; but I never quitted it, both on account of my own ſafety, and becauſe by this precaution I ſeemed to increaſe the confidence of my people. My arms, doubtleſs, appeared to them to correſpond with my reſolutions; and, full of this idea, each purſued his way with the utmoſt compoſure, leaving to me the care of defending them.

This caravan on its march exhibited a ſingular and amuſing ſpectacle—I may even ſay grand. The turns which it was obliged to make in following the windings of the buſhes and rocks, continually gave it new forms; and theſe points of view varied every inſtant. Sometimes it entirely diſappeared from my ſight; and all of a ſudden, from the ſummit of a ſmall eminence, I would again diſcover at a diſtance my van-guard ſlowly advancing towards a mountain;

tain; while the main body, who without confuſion, and in fine order, were following the traces of thoſe who had preceded them, was almoſt below me. The women ſuckled their children, and gave them food and drink ſeated on their oxen by them; ſome wept, others ſung or laughed; and the men, ſmoking a ſocial pipe, converſed together, having no longer the appearance of people terrified at the approach of an enemy.

Entertaining a little more uneaſineſs than theſe walking machines, I was fully ſenſible of my critical ſituation; and on the back of my beaſt indulged in philoſophical reveries. At the diſtance of three thouſand leagues from Paris, the only perſon of my ſpecies among ſo many natives, ſurrounded and watched by the moſt ferocious animals, I could not help being filled with admiration, to ſee myſelf conducting, for the firſt time, in the deſarts of Africa, a ſavage horde, who, ſubmitting voluntarily to my orders, executed them blindly, and committed entirely to me the care of their preſervation. Taken collectively, I had nothing to fear from them; nevertheleſs I ſaw ſome among them who would have made me tremble, if, in ſingle combat, ſtrength alone had been to decide the conteſt: but at bottom I was fully convinced, that here, as well as elſewhere, it was not the ſtrongeſt but the moſt ſkilful that commanded.

We had not advanced very far, when my dogs, which were ranging through the buſhes on every ſide, began to ſtop and to bark. My companions were inſtantly filled with terror: imagining that we had fallen in with ſome Caffres, placed in ambuſh to intercept us; but I paid very little attention to their abſurd reaſoning.

ing. I thought it was impoſſible that my advanced guard could have paſſed, without being attacked; and I perceived that they were peaceably purſuing their journey, without the leaſt appearance of diſorder. I therefore put ſpurs to my horſe; and advancing through the buſhes, was much aſtoniſhed to find only a porcupine, ſurrounded by my dogs, from which it was endeavouring to defend itſelf. I immediately killed it; and fearing leſt the report of my muſket might lead my people into an error, and induce them to take ſome raſh ſtep, I returned towards them, and by ridiculing their timidity convinced them that I was not daunted by trifles.

The porcupine defends itſelf in a wonderful manner. Its quills ſhelter it from every attempt; and, when a dog approaches, it artfully eludes him, makes its attack on his flank, and, when he is once wounded he never again returns to the charge. Some of the quills always remain ſticking in his fleſh, which damp his courage, and cauſe him to betake himſelf to flight. One of my Hottentots, who had been wounded in the leg by one of them, was ill for more than ſix months.

Mr. Mallard, an officer belonging to the regiment of Pondicherry, at the Cape of Good Hope, being pricked in hunting one of theſe animals, had nearly loſt his leg by the wound; and, notwithſtanding all the care that was taken of him, he ſuffered dreadful tortures for more than four months, during the firſt of which he was confined to his bed.

The porcupine, however, is excellent eating; and its fleſh is often ſerved up on the genteeleſt tables at the Cape, after it has been carefully ſmoked.

After

After travelling an hour and a half, I ordered my caravan to halt; but we ſtopped no longer than was neceſſary to collect a ſufficient proviſion of ſalt on the borders of a brackiſh lake which we found in our way; and, two leagues farther, I advanced before the reſt, to viſit a plantation which I perceived on our left. I found that it had been plundered and burnt by the Caffres; for nothing remained of it but ſome pieces of the walls, black with ſmoke, and calcined by the flames: a very diſmal appearance in the boſom of a deſart!

An hour after, my advanced guard was ſtopped by the Kouga, on the banks of which we erected our tents.

The Kouga, properly ſpeaking, is only a rivulet, but we found ſcarcely any water in it; there was only a ſmall quantity in ſome hollow places, in which we caught abundance of excellent tortoiſes, though of a very ſmall ſize; the largeſt did not weigh above three pounds. Before the commencement of night I ordered an abbatis to be conſtructed of the branches of trees, to form a defence round my cattle: and, whilſt this was executing, the women were employed in collecting whatever dry wood they could find in the neighbourhood, to ſupply us with fuel; as it was indiſpenſably neceſſary to kindle fires in different places, leſt we ſhould be ſurpriſed by the Caffres, or by lions, which were now very common in theſe cantons. We remained here till the 20th, when we began to be in want of proviſions; but I was ſo fortunate as to kill three buffaloes and two bubales. On the banks of the rivulet I found ſome Guinea-hens, exactly like thoſe of Europe. When boiled a long time, they were excellent; but when roaſted or broiled,

ed, they were good for nothing. They were apparently too old. I found alſo ſome new ſpecies of very pretty birds; and, among others, a barbet, of which I ſhall give ſome coloured figures.

After this we went up the banks of the Kouga, ſtill in the ſame order as we had hitherto obſerved; but we had ſcarcely travelled an hour, when my advanced guard ſtopping, ſent to inform me that they had diſcovered the prints of men's feet. Struck with terror, they imagined them to be the traces of the Caffres, and they now ſaw nothing around them but theſe ſavages. Having haſtened to the ſpot, I obſerved that the traces ſeemed very freſh; and as this diſcovery began now to become very ſerious, I was ſenſible that we ought to put ourſelves in the beſt ſtate of defence, without loſs of time. I therefore ordered the whole caravan to halt; and, whilſt my people were buſily employed in forming a fence round the oxen, and in arranging my camp, followed by my two intrepid chaſſeurs, I ſet out to reconnoitre. After following the traces for an hour, they conducted us to a place where we found the remains of a fire not quite extinguiſhed, and a few mutton bones, which had been lately gnawed. From the fire it appeared evident that the ſavages who had ſtopped here, had alſo paſſed the night on the ſame ſpot; but, on ſeeing the gnawed bones, I could ſcarcely allow myſelf to believe that they had been Caffres, becauſe theſe people never breed ſheep. It was, however, poſſible that they might have procured them by plunder, or have found them among their enemies. During the uncertainty into which theſe reflections had thrown me, I reſolved to advance ſtill farther;

until

until being at length tired of traverſing and ranging the country, finding that theſe traces led us too far from our route, and conducted us to one directly oppoſite to that which we ought to purſue, I returned to my camp. The night following we met with little diſturbance; but the next day a moſt dreadful ſtorm of rain obliged us to remain cloſely ſhut up in our tents; and the day after we were under the diſagreeable neceſſity of croſſing fourteen times ſucceſſively the unlucky Kouga, which every quarter of an hour ſtopped our journey, and above all things ſhook my carriages dreadfully upon the ſtones and fragments of rock which it carried along with it in its courſe. This fatiguing interruption, ſo often repeated, compelled us to paſs the night near a ſmall torrent called *Drooge Rivier*, the Dry River: for our cattle were ſo haraſſed that they were not in a condition to carry us any farther; and the circumſtances of the moment did not permit us to make long marches. Whenever we halted, a great deal of time was neceſſary to arrange our camp; to prepare food for about an hundred animals; to boil proviſions for a ſtill greater number of people; to watch over the ſafety of all theſe individuals; to collect wood for making fires, and to keep them burning during the whole night. Theſe details became very laborious; but they were nevertheleſs indiſpenſable.

That evening our dogs thought proper to be our purveyors. The whole country was filled with Guinea-fowls, which at ſun-ſet perched in hundreds on the trees that ſurrounded us, in order to paſs the night. They made a continual and diſagreeable cackling: but it was of ſome uſe to us, for theſe ſimple birds diſcovered themſelves

themſelves by it: and our dogs, which heard them, began to run round and to bark at the bottoms of the trees where they were ſeated. Theſe Guinea-fowls endeavoured to make their eſcape; but the weight of their bodies, and the ſhortneſs of their wings, not permitting them to fly above the trees, and being obliged on this account to run and to leap on the ground, our dogs watched for them in their paſſage; and, ſeizing them with their teeth, ſoon deſtroyed them. This method of hunting procured us abundance of theſe animals, without waſting a ſingle grain of powder. Next morning I wiſhed to purſue the ſame plan; but theſe birds, better inſtructed by the fate of the preceding evening, did not deſcend. One diſcharge, however, of my fuſee, produced all the effect I expected.

During the night, we heard the diſtant roaring of ſome lions.

On the 23d, after a march of ſome hours, we arrived at the large and beautiful river of *Sondag*. Its channel was very full; the weather ſeemed to threaten rain; and the dread of being again ſtopped by an inundation, made us reſolve to croſs it on rafts. Having ordered a quantity of wood neceſſary for this purpoſe to be cut down, and what might be requiſite for incloſing our cattle in the uſual manner, when we ſhould encamp, I embarked my carriages piece by piece, with the greater part of my effects, and the half of my people, who erected our tents on the other ſide, under the direction of Swanepoel. The cattle paſſed by ſwimming, as they had before done on the like occaſions; and the following day I alſo croſſed the torrent with the remainder of my company and effects. The preparation, execution,

execution, and arrangement of all theſe matters, employed us till the latter part of the month.

In the interval I procured ſeveral birds, and I cauſed ſeveral koedoes to be ſalted. But I was in great danger of loſing my dear Kees. The account of this accident will convey a better idea of my ſimple and uniform manner of paſſing my time than any thing elſe I could ſay on the ſubject.

Every thing was got ready for dinner; and I was dreſſing upon a plate ſome dry haricots which I had juſt fried, when I heard the voice of a bird with which I was not at all acquainted. Forgetting in a moment both my cookery and my dinner, I ſnatched up my fuſee, and hurried from my tent. At the end of half an hour, I returned perfectly ſatisfied with my expedition, and holding my bird in my hand; but I was much ſurpriſed, on entering my tent, not to find a ſingle bean on my table. This was a trick of Kees. I had corrected him pretty ſeverely, the evening before, for robbing me of my ſupper; and I did not imagine that he would have ſo ſoon forgot his puniſhment, as to be guilty of this new fault almoſt immediately after it. He had however diſappeared; but as he always waited for the return of night, when he had committed any error, before he again made his appearance, I well knew that he could not eſcape me. It was generally at the time when I was drinking tea that he glided in, without noiſe, and took his ſtation near me, in his accuſtomed place, with an air of innocence, as if nothing had happened. That evening he did not appear; and next morning, as no one had ſeen him, I began to be very uneaſy, and to be apprehenſive that he had deſerted me entirely. This loſs would have

have been the more diſtreſſing, as, beſides the amuſement he afforded me, he was really of great utility, and rendered me ſuch ſervices that his place could not have been ſupplied by another. On the third day, however, one of my people, who had been in ſearch of water, aſſured me that he had ſeen him in the neighbourhood; but that he had hid himſelf as ſoon as he found that he was diſcovered. Setting out immediately in queſt of him, I ſearched all the neighbourhood with my dogs. All of a ſudden hearing a cry like that which he uſed to ſend forth when I returned from hunting, and when I would not carry him along with me, I ſtopped; and caſting my eyes every where around, I at length perceived him, half concealed, behind a large branch in the middle of a tree. I called him in a familiar manner, and coaxed him as much as I could to deſcend and come to me; but as he ſeemed not inclined to truſt to theſe marks of my friendſhip, and of the joy which I conceived on meeting with him, I was under the neceſſity of climbing the tree. When I had reached the ſpot where he was, he ſuffered me to lay hold of him; while fear and pleaſure were alternately painted in his eyes, and expreſſed by his geſtures. Soon after I returned to my camp, where he ſeemed to wait for his fate; and where I came to a determination reſpecting him. I thought at firſt that I ought to tie him up; but by this I ſhould have been deprived of his amuſing tricks. I reſolved therefore to ſhew my generoſity towards him, and not to treat him with ſeverity. A ſecond correction would not have altered his diſpoſition: and I reflected that he had perhaps more than once received it very improperly; for his reputation, which gave a colour

colour of probability to every accuſation made againſt him, hurt him very much in my opinion, and rendered me unjuſt, eſpecially when I was in bad humour. Several petty thefts, which a fondneſs for dainties cauſed my Hottentots to commit, were often laid upon him; and on this account poor Kees was many times blamed without cauſe.

The river Sondag has its ſource in high mountains, which are almoſt always covered with ſnow; on which account they are named *Snow-Bergen*, or the mountains of ſnow. I ſaw them on my left towards the north. This river, enlarged by various ſmall ſtreams which run into it, diſcharges itſelf into the ſea at the diſtance of ten leagues from the place where I then was.

On the firſt of October we purſued our route in the uſual order. After travelling ſeven hours, we repoſed ourſelves for a moment under the ruins of a habitation deſerted like the former, and no leſs diſmal and melancholy. At four in the afternoon we halted at a lake; and it was very fortunate for us that we had two large fires that night, as two lions and ſome hyænas paid us a viſit, which threw our cattle into great diſorder. We were obliged to paſs the whole night on our legs. Theſe animals appeared ſo ferocious, that we could not drive them away but by repeated diſcharges of our fire arms.

At the break of day we ſaw ſuch numbers of thoſe antelopes called *ſpring-bock*, that I reſolved to employ the whole day in hunting them; eſpecially as our proviſions began to fail, and as it was often neceſſary to have a freſh ſupply. The conſumption made by all my people was ſo great, that a juſt idea can ſcarcely be formed of it; for by carrying a whole horde and their animals along

with me, I had added an additional encumbrance, at which I was ſometimes frightened. We were, however, lucky enough to kill ſeven of theſe antelopes. Though this ſpecies are ſwift-footed, people on horſeback may eaſily come up with them. Being generally collected into flocks, and keeping as cloſely together as ſheep, they mutually impede each other, which greatly retards them in their courſe: one ball, well directed, may kill two or three of them, and ſometimes more.

Next day we made a forced march: we had found bad water the evening before; and to procure better it was neceſſary that we ſhould fall in with ſome arm of the river Sondag. We reached it luckily at four in the afternoon. My oxen had ſuffered ſo much from the exceſſive heat, that they were unable to proceed farther; and I was afraid that ſome of them would die, though I had taken the precaution of relieving them often.

On the 4th we quitted the river entirely; and proceeded that day only three leagues, as the heat was almoſt inſupportable. My oxen had not then quite recovered from the fatigue of the evening before.

On the 5th we ſet out at three in the morning; and at ſeven we ſaw another deſerted plantation. The proprietors, without doubt, oppreſſed by fear, had not taken time to ſecure their effects from pillage. On the ſight of this abode, which was in a perfect ſtate, and which exhibited no marks of fire, it appeared to me that the inhabitants had been terrified without any cauſe. I had the curioſity to enter the houſe, and I found that I was not deceived in my opinion; for I obſerved no derangement in

any

any of the furniture, each utenſil being in its proper place. I permitted none of my people to touch any thing, of however little value it might be; but, as the heat was exceſſive, I took advantage of the ſhade which this building afforded us, in order that we might repoſe ourſelves a little. Towards evening I prepared to ſet out; and we continued our journey for four hours.

The day following we paſſed two more deſerted houſes, which were in the ſame ſtate as thoſe ſeen the evening before; but, as I was unwilling to ſtop, I did not viſit them. After a march of four hours, we arrived at the river *Vogel*, or bird's river, where we halted, as our oxen were in want of water, and had ſcarcely any thing to eat. At noon the heavens became overcaſt, and the ſun was entirely hid by very large clouds; which to me was a lucky circumſtance, as it gave me an opportunity of advancing a little farther. We hoped to reach *Agter-Bruyntjes-Hoogte*; but, when we came to the bottom of theſe mountains, we met with a pond, which obliged us to encamp, as we very much doubted whether we ſhould ſoon find another.

During that night the ſavage Hottentots obſerved our fires; and, as they approached to reconnoitre us, our dogs, which perceived them, took the alarm, and began to bark and make a dreadful noiſe. On this occaſion part of my people, perſuaded that we were inveſted by Caffres (for I muſt here repeat that fear made them imagine that they ſaw Caffres every where), propoſed to leave the camp, and to ſhelter themſelves in the buſhes; as if we ſhould have been in greater ſecurity, when ſeparately concealed in a wretched coppice, than when collected in a

body, well armed and reſolute. Klaas and I were quite furious. The venerable Swanepoel joined us, with a view of encouraging theſe daſtardly ſouls; and he ſwore that he would ſtand by me whatever might be the event, and that he would ſpend the laſt drop of his blood in my defence. In the midſt of this converſation, and the timid irreſolution of the reſt of my company, I heard a voice begging, in broken Dutch, that I would recal my dogs, which I immediately did. When I was fully aſſured that theſe people were only Hottentots, I ſuffered them to approach; upon which they made their appearance, to the number of fifteen men, with ſeveral women and children.

They had ſet out to remove themſelves from the flames of war; and I was informed by them that when I paſſed the mountain I ſhould ſtill find ſeveral deſerted habitations. They told me alſo that the proprietors of theſe different houſes had collected themſelves into one body, to oppoſe the enemy; but that they had formed a reſolution of abandoning their country and poſſeſſions entirely, with a view of getting nearer to the Dutch ſettlements; and that the Caffres, who were ſtill in the field, had ſworn not to leave one of them remaining.

I paſſed the night in converſation of this nature; and I learned from theſe people every thing that I wiſhed to know: but I was the leſs inclined to conſider the Caffres as ferocious animals thirſting after blood, who ſpared neither ſex, age, nor their neighbours, as I was too well acquainted with the planters to confide in their veracity, or to aſcribe to them a part of thoſe horrid cruelties of which they always affected to complain.

But

But why ſhould a people ſo mild as the Hottentots, and who lead a life both peaceable and precarious, be concerned in theſe horrid wars, had they not ſufficient cauſe for ſhewing their reſentment and revenge? The Caffres naturally are not a miſchievous people. They live, like the other ſavages of this part of Africa, on the milk with which they are ſupplied by their cattle; and clothe themſelves with the ſkins of animals. Like the reſt, they are indolent by nature, and warlike by neceſſity; but they are not an odious nation, whoſe name is calculated to inſpire terror. As I was very deſirous of being thoroughly informed reſpecting the motives and riſe of theſe atrocious wars, which thus diſturbed the tranquility of the moſt beautiful parts of Africa, theſe honeſt people, who had truſted to me with ſo much confidence, unboſomed themſelves in the like manner without any reſerve. They informed me, indeed, that the oppreſſion and cruelty of the planters were the only cauſe of the war, and that juſtice was on the ſide of the Caffres: they told me alſo that the Boſhmen, a kind of vagabond deſerters who belong to no nation, and who live only by rapine, took advantage of that moment of diſorder to pillage without diſtinction the Caffres, the Hottentots, and the planters; that nothing but the tyrannical behaviour of theſe wretches could have made the Caffres include in the general proſcription all the Hottentots, whom they conſidered as ſpies attached to the whites, and whom the latter employed to lay ſnares for them with more dexterity. This laſt circumſtance was not void of foundation; but it could by no means be applied to the more remote hordes. Thus were the innocent involved in the common

common fate of the guilty. But how was it poſſible for ſavages to make a diſtinction which even civilized nations are not accuſtomed to do? They told me, beſides, that the Caffres had procured ſome fire arms, which they found in thoſe plundered houſes, or had taken by ſurpriſe from the Hottentots belonging to the colonies.

I was, in ſhort, informed in the moſt minute manner of every thing that had paſſed, of the attacks made, and the battles fought, in which, though they had committed horrid ravages, the Caffres had always been beat, which to me did not appear ſurpriſing. Their aſſagay, their moſt deſtructive weapon, which they handle with great dexterity, cannot ſtand in competition with our fire arms, employed by chaſſeurs who ſeldom miſs their aim. What I had learned intereſted me very much, for the ſmalleſt circumſtance could not be indifferent to me. I found myſelf engaged, on my own account, in the events and chances of this war; ſince I was actually, as one may ſay, on the field of battle; and was approaching towards that moment, when wounded to the ſoul by the diſtreſſing ſpectacle which I had continually before my eyes, and inflamed with the moſt ardent deſire of ſerving thoſe unfortunate wretches, with whom I was not acquainted—whom I had never ſeen, nor was perhaps ever to ſee; but whoſe diſmal ſituation excited my compaſſion—I was preparing, if all theſe people would have followed me, to traverſe fifty leagues of Caffraria, at the riſque of every thing that might happen; and to re-eſtabliſh peace for ever in that unhappy country. I was not however ſeconded in my views by a ſingle perſon. Heaven itſelf, in my opinion, could not have freed thoſe who followed me from their terror:

but

but I can more juſtly cover with opprobrium thoſe daſtardly Hottentots of the colonies whom I viſited two days after, for the ſhameful manner in which their chief refuſed to aſſiſt me in an expedition which would have undoubtedly ſucceeded, and done the greateſt honour to humanity.

A freſh misfortune, which had a little before taken place in theſe unhappy countries, added conſiderably to my courage, and heated my imagination. I was told that, about ſix weeks prior to that period, an Engliſh veſſel had been ſhipwrecked on the coaſt; that being driven on ſhore, a part of the crew had fallen into the hands of the Caffres, who had put them all to death, except a few women, whom they had cruelly reſerved; and that all thoſe who had eſcaped led a wandering life on the coaſt, or in the foreſts, where they muſt ſoon periſh in miſery. Among theſe unfortunate people, there were ſaid to be ſeveral French officers, priſoners of war, who had been put on board in order to return to Europe.

This diſtreſſing intelligence gave me great uneaſineſs; and, after all the information which theſe people could communicate, I judged that, by proceeding fifty leagues to the eaſtward of the ſpot where I was, I ſhould arrive at the veſſel. I therefore formed a thouſand projects in my mind, and invented a thouſand different ſchemes for aſſiſting theſe unfortunate people, whoſe ſituation was ſo deplorable: but all my Hottentots revolted againſt my propoſal; and neither prayers nor threats could have any influence over them. The recital of this adventure had made very different impreſſions on them. A ſudden rumour was ſpread throughout my whole camp;

and

and had I not, ſeconded by two or three of my brave friends, ſtruck a terror into theſe wretches by my geſtures and looks, I ſhould have infallibly fallen a victim to their ſedition. One of them I greatly terrified by clapping a piſtol to his head; but all my efforts were of no avail. The horde who followed me, without any preamble, told me that they were *free*; that they no longer conſidered me as their chief; and that they would inſtantly return, with the fifteen Hottentots who had lately arrived. Even my own people, with a bold air, ſignified that they were not diſpoſed to be cut to pieces by thouſands of Caffres, unanimouſly declaring, with loud cries, that they would not follow me; and that they would, without delay, ſet out for the Dutch ſettlements. I however kept firm to my purpoſe, and oppoſed them to the very laſt; but neither my repreſentations, nor the entreaties of Klaas, produced any effect, except on two of them, who at length conſented to expoſe themſelves with me. Old Swanepoel was one of them: but what could four people have done alone? I in vain remonſtrated with theſe ſavages on the ingratitude with which they repaid my condeſcenſion, in ſuffering them to attend me, and on their ſo ſoon forgetting the care, proviſions, and protection, I had afforded them. In vain did I tell them that I conſidered them all as cowards, traitors, and more deteſtable enemies than the Caffres: I only redoubled their fear, and inſpired them with hatred againſt myſelf. I could read in all their countenances that terror had got entire poſſeſſion of their hearts. On this account I reſolved to ſay nothing farther; and on the approach of night, after having ordered watch to be kept with the utmoſt attention,

attention, I ſhut myſelf up in my tent. Being informed at break of day that theſe ſtrangers were preparing to depart, with their wives, children, cattle, and all their effects, I forbade any one to take leave of them; and, without loſs of time, gave orders for having every thing ready, that I alſo might ſet out and purſue my journey. In four hours we croſſed the mountain Agter-Bruyntjes-Hoogte; and, being refreſhed by a ſhower of rain which came ſeaſonably to our relief, at the end of four hours we encamped, in order to paſs the night. As we marched along we obſerved ſome more deſerted habitations, the proprietors of which were doubtleſs among the number of the confederates. The ſoil in this place appeared to be, in general, good; and the mountains were covered with large beautiful trees; and the plains, interſperſed with the *mimoſa-nilotica*, abounded with antelopes and gnous: the latter, though excellent eating, are however inferior to the other antelopes.

By the information I had received from the fifteen Hottentots who had incited the horde to revolt, and deprived me of their aſſiſtance, I reckoned that I could not be far diſtant from the place where all theſe Hottentots of the colonies were aſſembled. I continually flattered myſelf with the hopes of finding among them ſome well-diſpoſed people, who approving of my plan of pacification with the Caffres, and the hopes of aſſiſting the unhappy ſufferers who had been ſhipwrecked, would heartily join me, and ſecond my endeavours to afford them relief. The idea of theſe miſerable people haunted me every where; and I could not help reflecting on the melancholy ſituation of the poor women, condemned to drag on their exiſtence amidſt the tor-

ment

ment and horror of deſpair. Theſe thoughts were ever preſent to my mind, and attached me more and more to my project; for the deſire of reſtoring them to liberty, and of bringing them back with me, more and more ſhut my eyes againſt any obſtacle that might occur; and ſuffered me to ſee only the poſſibility of ſucceſs: I was therefore impatient to arrive at this horde of Hottentots.

Next morning, after a march of three hours, undertaken at the break of day, I at length diſcovered the habitation ſo much wiſhed for. As ſoon as theſe people perceived me, though at a great diſtance, I ſaw them all aſſemble, and form themſelves into a group, before the houſe; while their motions, confuſion, and the attention with which they all at the ſame inſtant turned their eyes towards me ſufficiently ſhewed that my appearance conſiderably alarmed them, and that my convoy, above all, gave them great uneaſineſs. I however advanced, and, accoſting them with politeneſs, made myſelf known, and told them my name. I pretended that I was travelling under the protection of the Dutch government, to which I was obliged to give an account of my diſcoveries. This concluſion of my diſcourſe, which was very conciſe, ſeemed to impreſs them with great awe; they then received me with every demonſtration of joy, and teſtified with how much pleaſure they ſaw me. They confeſſed that my beard had frightened them a little (it had then eleven months growth); that they did not know what to think of my arms, my waggon, and my numerous train; that they had often heard mention made of me; and that an hundred circumſtances had been related to them, in which I had been in danger of

loſing

loſing my life; but that they had been at laſt aſſured that I had found a veſſel at anchor in the bay of Blettemberg, which had conveyed me to the iſle of Bourbon; and that on this account, when they ſaw me arrive, they had at firſt imagined that I was another perſon. After a hundred queſtions, to which they gave me ſcarcely time to return an anſwer, I mentioned the motives that had induced me to pay them a viſit; and the reſolution I had taken of penetrating to the extremity of Caffraria. I could not help telling them how much I was ſurpriſed that they had not before attempted to ſave the unhappy Europeans, of whoſe fate they were not ignorant; that I hoped to find amongſt them men willing and ready to accompany me to the coaſt where their veſſel had been loſt; that the Dutch government would, without doubt, reward in a noble manner the authors of ſuch a glorious enterpriſe; and, to incite them the more, I did not fail to add, that amongſt the cargo of the veſſel, which was ſtill partly on the coaſt, each of them might eaſily procure a thouſand comforts for the remainder of their lives. This argument ſeemed to have ſome effect upon them for the moment; but I entertained very few hopes; though they eagerly replied that, if things were as I had repreſented them, it was very proper to go to the aſſiſtance of theſe unfortunate people; who, as they ſaid, were their brothers, and their fellow-creatures.

The moſt cunning, as being the moſt timid of the whole company, conſidering my ſpeech only in that view in which his intereſt was concerned, added for the reſt, that it was more than probable that the Caffres had already plundered the veſſel, and carried away the beſt part of the cargo;

cargo; that they ſhould find perhaps nothing at all, or, if any thing, not ſo much as would indemnify them for the riſques and expences of ſuch a journey; and that, during their abſence, their wives, and their children, would be left expoſed to the danger of being maſſacred by the Caffres.

From this diſcourſe I was fully convinced that nothing could tempt them to undertake this expedition. It appeared that they could not carry away a great number of cattle from their enemies; for, after ſharing twenty thouſand ſince the commencement of hoſtilities, theſe ſavages could not have many remaining, as they had been obliged, in order to preſerve thoſe which had eſcaped pillage, to carry them a great way into the interior parts of the country.

I uſed every argument in my power to overcome the reaſoning of this man; and I often told him that he forgot above all the miſerable people for whom I had come to ſolicit aſſiſtance: but he had corrupted his companions, and, after that, not one of them ſhewed the leaſt inclination to ſecond me. As there was no profit in view, I could no longer depend on their aſſiſtance.

As it was in vain to attempt any farther to move them, I had recourſe to imprecations. I threatened them with all the vengeance of government; I wiſhed that ſwarms of Caffres might ſurround their habitations; and, fearing that their example might influence my own people, among whom I found ſome obedience and attachment, I immediately ſet out to purſue my journey.

I had remarked that they were reinforced by a pretty numerous company of Meſtizo Hottentots, who are courageous and enterpriſing, and

and approach nearer to the whites than the Hottentots. As they had always been the firſt to march againſt the Caffres, and to ſignalize themſelves in every rencounter, I reſolved to leave three of my people behind me, with orders to inſinuate themſelves among theſe Hottentots; and to engage ſome of them to follow me; eſpecially thoſe who were acquainted with the country, and who underſtood the language of the inhabitants. Before I ſuffered them to depart, I inſtructed them in what manner to proceed; and being deſirous of approaching the river *Klein-Vis*, I appointed them to meet me at that place. In three hours time I arrived at this river; and, having croſſed it, I ordered my caravan to halt, as it was neceſſary to ſleep here, in order to wait for the return of my people, and to hear how they had ſucceeded in their negociation. Having obſerved the prints of ſome lions feet, I took as many precautions not to be ſurpriſed by theſe animals as I had taken againſt the Caffres. I ſhould not have been very uneaſy reſpecting the latter, had it been poſſible for me to find any means of letting them know that I was not among the number of their perſecutors; and that I neither belonged to their nation, nor entertained the ſame ſentiments: but they might have fallen ſuddenly on my camp, and cauſed great devaſtation, before we had explained ourſelves to each other. This conſideration induced me to chooſe for this time, contrary to my uſual cuſtom, an elevated ſpot for my camp; from which I might have an extenſive proſpect every where around. When I had fixed upon one, I ordered my tent to be erected; my carriages and oxen to be properly diſpoſed; and a few huts, merely for the purpoſe of making a ſhew, to be conſtructed at the diſtance

tance of a few paces. I then pitched my military tent within a gun-ſhot of my camp, and covered it with branches of trees, that it might not be perceived; as I intended to paſs the night in it, along with my people: by this manœuvre I deceived the enemy; for had they made their appearance, with a view of ſurpriſing me in my camp, they would undoubtedly have been diſappointed, to their own ruin. I ſhould then have had time to fall upon them, and to ſurpriſe them in my turn.

We did not paſs the night in tranquility, for our dogs diſturbed us ſo much that we enjoyed no ſleep at all.

At the break of day, I perceived at a diſtance three of my Hottentots advancing towards us, accompanied by three ſtrangers: one of them, named Hans, the ſon of a Hottentot woman by a white man, had lived almoſt his whole life among the Caffres, and ſpoke their language very fluently. By giving him a few glaſſes of brandy, which I had kept in reſerve, I ſoon gained his confidence; and I made him tell me every thing that I wiſhed to know, reſpecting the ſtate of affairs at that time. What I learned confirmed me in my opinion, that the Caffres in general are a harmleſs and peaceful people; but he aſſured me that, being continually oppreſſed, plundered, and maſſacred by the whites, they had found themſelves reduced to the neceſſity of taking up arms in their own defence; adding, that the planters every where gave out, that theſe people were barbarous and ſanguinary, in order to juſtify their robberies, and the cruelty which they daily exerciſed againſt them, and which they endeavoured to make appear as repriſals; that, under pretence of their cattle being carried away,

they

they had, without regard to age or ſex, exterminated whole hordes of Caffres, plundered them of their oxen, and ravaged their lands; that this method of procuring live ſtock appearing to be much eaſier than to rear them themſelves, they had employed it with ſo much indiſcretion for more than a year, that they had ſhared above twenty thouſand among them; and that they had maſſacred without mercy all thoſe who had attempted to defend them. Hans told me that he had been witneſs to a tranſaction, which I ſhall give here exactly as he related it.

A band of planters having deſtroyed a Caffre village, a young child about twelve years of age eſcaped, and concealed itſelf in a hole, where it was unfortunately diſcovered by a man belonging to a detachment of planters. This man wiſhing to make a ſlave of it, carried it away with him: but the commander taking a fancy to it, inſiſted upon its being put into his hands. The perſon who found it obſtinately refuſed to give it up: both ſides grew warm; and the commander, inflamed with anger, and running up in a furious manner to the innocent victim, cried out to his adverſary, "If I cannot have the child, it "ſhall not be thine; upon which diſcharging "his fuſee againſt its breaſt, it dropped down "dead on the ſpot."

I learned alſo, that, in order to amuſe themſelves, theſe wretches had often placed their priſoners at a certain diſtance, and tried who was moſt expert with their fuſees in hitting them. I ſhould never have done were I to relate all the horrid cruelties which they daily commit upon thoſe unhappy ſavages who are under their protection; but private conſiderations, and other very powerful motives, oblige me to be ſilent.

Beſides,

Beſides, what avails the voice of one feeling individual, againſt deſpotiſm and force? I have ſaid enough to ſhew the character of the planters of this part of Africa, whom the inactivity of government ſuffers to go on in their exceſſes, and is even afraid of puniſhing. In this place are committed all the cruelties that hell can invent. In a republican ſtate, diſtinguiſhed more than any other by the ſimplicity of its manners, and a ſpirit of philanthropy, the moſt villanous iniquity remains unpuniſhed; becauſe people do not deign to look beyond thoſe objects which ſurround them. If the governor receives information ſometimes, reſpecting theſe horrid abuſes, the diſtance, the time neceſſary to convey intelligence to him, and other circumſtances, perhaps, which it may be prudent not to inquire into, diſguiſe it ſo much when it reaches the town, that it ſcarcely furniſhes ſubject for the converſation of the day.

A planter arrives from the diſtance of an hundred leagues; he complains to the governor that the Caffres have carried away all his cattle; and he requeſts a *commando*, that is to ſay, permiſſion to go and recover his property with the aſſiſtance of his neighbours. The governor, ſuſpecting no deceit, or pretending not to diſcover any, takes every thing in the ſame light as it is repreſented to him, and ſees nothing but juſtice in the demand of an impoſtor: a previous enquiry would require too much time, beſides being laborious and embarraſſing. To grant permiſſion is eaſy; it coſts little, and is only a ſingle word. This fatal word is therefore written, and it becomes the ſentence of death paſſed againſt thouſands of ſavages, who have neither the ſame reſources nor the ſame means

means of defence. The monſter who thus deceives the credulity of the governor, returns ſatisfied amidſt the accomplices of his rapacity, and gives to his *commando* whatever extent he may find uſeful to his intereſt: a new maſſacre then takes place, which is only a prelude to more carnage; for if the Caffres have the audacity to recover, by force or by ſtratagem, the cattle taken from them in conſequence of this order, ſurreptitiouſly obtained from the governor, and which continues in force till there are no more victims, theſe planters ſatiate their vengeance by the moſt horrid ſlaughter.

Thus did this war, or rather this pillaging, continue all the time that I reſided in Africa. Neither commercial ſpeculations nor a fondneſs for any ſervice conducted me to the Cape. The natural impulſe of my diſpoſition, and a deſire of acquiring new knowledge, made me direct my courſe to that part of the world: I arrived there perfectly free, and with a mind not in the leaſt biaſſed with prejudice. I made myſelf better acquainted with the interior parts of the country, and the unknown natives by whom it is inhabited, than with any of the colonies belonging to the Cape, or even the Cape itſelf, which I did not know, but at the different periods of my return. I had no perſonal intereſt in view to make me be ſuſpected of partiality; but I have every where ſeen very powerful reaſons for obſerving, that the foreſeeing eye of policy has been opened too late on thoſe poſſeſſions, which are at a diſtance, and which every day become more remote from the metropolis. I have ſeen that the authority of a governor, however great it may be, does not extend far enough to check at their ſource thoſe dreadful irregularities, which

are continued, and ſtill increaſing, in the interior parts of the country. Should it ever happen that the Caffres, inceſſantly haraſſed, unite in ſupport of the common cauſe with the neighbouring nations, who begin alſo to complain of the planters, their union would certainly occaſion the greateſt diſorder; and who knows what might be the conſequence of ſuch a confederation, formed for the purpoſe of defending inalienable rights, and of avenging ancient injuries? There are many methods by which government might prevent theſe misfortunes; and it is full time that they ſhould be employed, for the danger increaſes by delay. There have been inſtances of the governor, when informed of ſome cruelties exerciſed againſt the ſavages, ſummoning in vain the perſon who was the author of them to come to the Cape, and give an account of his conduct. The criminal has not ſo much deigned to return any anſwer to the order ſent to him; he has continued to haraſs and plunder in the ſame manner as before: and his diſobedience has been attended with no bad conſequences to him; nay it has been even ſoon forgotten.

One day, while diſcourſing with ſome of the planters on theſe abuſes, ſeveral of them told me that they had more than once received ſuch orders from the governor, without ever paying the leaſt attention to them. Growing a little warm in the cauſe, I expreſſed my aſtoniſhment that in ſuch circumſtances the governor did not ſend a detachment to enforce obedience to his orders; and, in caſe of a refuſal, to ſeize upon the culprit, and to conduct him to the town under a ſtrong guard. "Are you well aware," ſaid they, "what would be the reſult of ſuch an "attempt? Aſſembling all in an inſtant, we "would

"would maſſacre the half of the ſoldiers, ſalt "their fleſh, and ſend it back by thoſe we might "ſpare; with threats of doing the ſame thing to "thoſe who ſhould be bold enough to appear "among us afterwards." Such was their anſwer; to which I thought it would be altogether uſeleſs to offer any reply. To deal with people of this character, muſt be a work of great difficulty; and no ſmall ſhare of addreſs will be neceſſary to reduce them to obedience. I do not conſider it as impoſſible, that, ſhaking off the yoke, they may ſome day dictate laws to the head of the colony; and that day will be when a man of abilities, gaining the minds and confidence of the multitude, ſhall preſent to them, under ſeducing colours, a view of independence and liberty. They are already too ſenſible of the facility with which ſuch an enterpriſe may be undertaken; and of the advantages that will reſult from its ſucceſs. Nothing will be neceſſary but to put them in mind that they are about ten thouſand in number, all crafty and reſolute, and all accuſtomed to hunting; that every ſhot they may fire will do execution; that without difficulty, and without danger, they may beat and deſtroy any forces with which the governor may oppoſe them; that they will enjoy abundance the moment they ceaſe to acknowledge the irkſome and often tyrannical laws of government, which are contrary to every kind of private proſperity; that placed in a delightful climate, the poſſeſſors of the fineſt fields and the moſt beautiful woods in the country, abundanly ſtocked with game of all kinds, they may, by adding to all theſe advantages thoſe of cultivating the earth, and breeding flocks, procure to themſelves, from the firſt hand, every reſource ariſing from bar-

ter; and that, by means of the harbours and roads which are to be found in great plenty on the coaſts of their territories, it is in their power to bring the induſtry of other nations amongſt them, to extend their population, to increaſe their riches, and to have every convenience that an extenſive foreign trade can ſupply. The government at the Cape are already fully ſenſible of the importance of theſe reflections; and this perhaps is one of the juſteſt cauſes of their apparent ſupineneſs with reſpect to the planters. They know the genius and character of theſe robuſt people, almoſt all educated in the midſt of the woods; and they were more cautious in their conduct towards them during my reſidence at the Cape, becauſe they thought the fate of the whole town depended upon their powerful aſſiſtance, had the Engliſh in the war of 1781 attempted to make a deſcent there, as they expected. The following anecdote will ſhew how far they were to be depended on:—An alarm having been ſpread, though without any foundation, in leſs than twenty-four hours, from a thouſand to twelve hundred of them made their appearance in a body; and theſe would have been followed by all the reſt, had not an order been iſſued to ſtop them.

Thoſe however would be in great error, who from what I have ſaid ſhould imagine that all theſe planters are ſo many Cæſars. This is far from being the caſe; and indeed ſuch an idea would ill agree with the accounts I have before given when ſpeaking of their war with the Caffres, and of their poſſeſſions every where abandoned and deſerted. Born for the moſt part among rocks, a ſavage and ruſtic education has made them like ſo many giants with reſpect

to

to ſtrength; but, though accuſtomed from their earlieſt infancy to watch and ſurpriſe the monſtrous animals of Africa, they are abſolutely not fit but for a firſt attack, or to ſucceed in an ambuſcade. They would not ſtand in the open field, nor would they ever return to a ſecond charge. They are not acquainted with that courage which is inſpired by a ſenſe of honour, but with that only which ariſes from a conſciouſneſs of one's ſtrength or dexterity; and if the reader calls to mind my adventure with them in the Bay of Saldanha, it may be eaſily ſeen that it tends ſtrongly to corroborate what I have here advanced. The ſame thing cannot be ſaid of the greater part of the women. Courageous with reflection, their deliberate coolneſs knows neither obſtacles nor fear; being equally ſkilful as their huſbands in managing their horſes, and in the uſe of fire arms, they are much more indefatigable, and never retreat on the appearance of danger: they are real Amazons.

I was acquainted with a widow who managed her own plantation; and when the wild beaſts came to alarm her flocks, ſhe mounted her horſe, followed them in cloſe purſuit, and never left them till ſhe had either deſtroyed them, or obliged them to quit her poſſeſſions.

In one of my excurſions two years after to the great Nimiqua Land, I ſaw upon a very ſolitary plantation a young girl of twenty, who always accompanied her father on horſeback, when he took the field, at the head of his people, to repel the Boſhmen who came to diſturb his repoſe. In defiance of their poiſoned arrows, ſhe would purſue them with fury, overtake them in their courſe, and fire upon them without mercy.

The

The annals of the Cape make mention of a great number of women who have diſtinguiſhed themſelves by acts of intrepidity that might do honour to the moſt reſolute of the other ſex.

The tragical fate of a widow, who lived upon a very remote plantation with her two ſons, the oldeſt of whom was not above eighteen years of age, ſtill afforded a ſubject for converſation at the Cape, when I arrived there. One obſcure night ſhe and all her family being awakened by the kicking and bellowing of her oxen and cows, which were in an encloſure not far diſtant, every body flew to arms, and haſtened towards the place from which the noiſe proceeded. When they reached the ſpot, they found a lion, which, having got over the pales, was making a dreadful devaſtation among the cattle; and no reſource was left but to enter the encloſure, to inveſt the ferocious animal, and to kill him. None of the ſlaves or Hottentots of this woman had however ſufficient courage to try this expedient; and even her two ſons would not venture to preſent themſelves before the ferocious beaſt. In this dilemma the intrepid widow entered alone, armed with a fuſee; and penetrating to the lion, which on account of the darkneſs was ſcarcely perceptible, ſhe diſcharged her piece: but unluckily the animal being only wounded, darted upon her with the utmoſt fury, and threw her down. On hearing the cries of their poor mother, the two children haſtened to her relief; and having become deſperate at this horrid ſight, while the formidable lion was engaged with his prey, they fell upon him, and ſtrangled him, though too late, on the mangled corpſe of their mother. Beſides ſeveral deep wounds which ſhe had received in her throat,

and

and ſeveral parts of her body, the lion had torn off one of her hands above the wriſt, and devoured it. Every poſſible aſſiſtance was immediately given her; but ſhe expired that evening in great agony, amidſt the unavailing lamentations of her children and ſlaves aſſembled around her.

I have already ſaid that Hans gave me every information that I required reſpecting Caffraria. He told me that the territories in which I then was belonged to a powerful prince, who reſided at the diſtance of thirty leagues from us, more towards the north, and that he was named king *Faroo*. He adviſed me to penetrate as far as the place of his abode; aſſuring me that I had nothing to fear, and no danger to run: on the contrary, he told me that both the prince and his ſubjects would receive me with great pleaſure; in hopes that, on my return to the Cape, a relation of what I had ſeen of their manners, their character, and their way of life, would efface thoſe unfavourable ideas every where formed of them, from the accounts of the planters, whom they deteſted; and that perhaps they would then be ſuffered to enjoy tranquillity, the only favour which they requeſted from the white people.

On the firſt view, this reaſoning was plauſible and ſeducing; and I was fully ſenſible of all the advantages that might ariſe to me from the execution of ſuch a project. I ſuffered myſelf, indeed, to be almoſt perſuaded; but, on the other hand, if through imprudence, or exceſs of confidence, I ſhould loſe the fruits of all my travels, or if I ſhould happen to be maſſacred, this ſtep would be conſidered as a maſterpiece of folly and extravagance. I well knew the fickle and unſteady diſpoſition of the offspring of the whites and the Hottentots; and I reflected, for the firſt time,

time, on what this man might be capable of doing. The bribe of a glaſs of brandy might make him a traitor: he was a friend to the Caffres; had paſſed part of his time amongſt them; and, beſides this, he had come from a retreat which I had every reaſon to ſuſpect, and was there perhaps only to watch the motions of the planters, and to betray them. Might it not be poſſible that his intention was to ſacrifice me, that he might ſhare my effects with the Caffres; and to acquire ſome merit among them, by leading me into a ſnare?

Having weighed theſe conſiderations for a long time, agitated by a thouſand contrary ideas, and incapable of forming any reſolution myſelf, I ſuddenly fixed upon an eaſier and much more prudent plan. By theſe means I gained a little more time to indulge in new reflections, and to acquire better information, without expoſing either my perſon or my fortune. I reſolved to ſend a deputation to king *Faroo;* and, on the firſt overture made to Hans, he accepted this commiſſion without the leaſt heſitation. Though his conduct upon this occaſion ſeemed to preſage well, I was however determined to take every precaution. This young meſtizo promiſed to engage two or three of his friends to undertake the journey along with him; and to theſe I added two of my moſt faithful Hottentots, Adams and Slanger, who were to give an account to the king of every thing I had done for eleven months before, from the time that I quitted the Cape. In order that he might be enabled to judge that curioſity alone had conducted me to his territories, I charged my meſſengers to tell him that, being born in another world, and above all a ſtranger in Africa, I was in no manner either a friend to the planters who were carrying on war againſt

againſt him, or an accomplice in their deſigns; that I did not even live amongſt them; that I highly diſapproved of their conduct; and, in a word, that he might reſt aſſured that, as long as I remained in his country, he would have no occaſion to be uneaſy at my conduct or motions, as they tended to one harmleſs end, that of procuring ſuch objects as related to my taſte and ſtudies; and that, far from carrying ravage and terror into his poſſeſſions, I would on the contrary embrace every opportunity of being uſeful to his ſubjects and to himſelf, as I had been to ſeveral Hottentot hordes, who neither ſuſpected my ſincerity, nor refuſed my aſſiſtance: I added, that the government at the Cape, to whom I would give a faithful account of every thing I had ſeen, would loſe no time to reſtore tranquillity in his territories, and to re-eſtabliſh that harmony which had ſubſiſted between him and the planters. Having inſtructed my deputies in this manner, particularly thoſe belonging to my camp, to whom I enjoined the greateſt ſecrecy reſpecting certain particulars which I entruſted to them alone (ſuch, for example, as the expreſs orders of bringing ſome Caffres along with them, that I might be able to judge what degree of confidence they repoſed in me, and to ſee how far I ought to grant them mine), I gave them a few preſents for the prince, and diſmiſſed them. Having promiſed to return ſoon to Koks-Kraal, where I was to wait for them, each of them made ſuch proviſion as he thought neceſſary, and then they departed.

I myſelf ſet out in the morning; and, after a march of three hours, we found ourſelves on the banks of the Groot-Vis-Rivier, where the heat was exceſſive. Though the earth, covered all over

over with large round pebbles, rendered the way exceedingly laborious for the oxen, we proceeded along the banks of the river; but, overcome by fatigue, we were forced to halt, at the diſtance of three hundred paces from its current: it was then only four in the afternoon. Whilſt we were making the uſual preparations to enable us to paſs the night in tranquillity, I walked towards the banks of the river; not far from which I perceived the remains of a kraal belonging to the Caffres. Curioſity having induced me to go up to it, I found ſeveral huts perfectly entire, and others wholly deſtroyed: but I beheld a more diſmal ſpectacle in ſome human bones which lay ſcattered here and there. From their apparent age, I concluded that they were the relics of thoſe unfortunate wretches whom the planters had made the firſt victims of their revenge; and that they had been left there ſince the commencement of this unjuſt war.

We paſſed the night of the 10th without any interruption. Some hyænas, indeed, paid us a viſit; but being accuſtomed to ſuch gueſts, we were under very little uneaſineſs. In the morning, my Hottentots, on their return from procuring water, informed me that they had ſeen ſeveral freſh traces of koedoes* and hippopotami. As our ſtock of proviſion was nearly exhauſted, and the weather favourable, I reſolved to ſpend this day in hunting.

My people having diſperſed themſelves on the banks of the river, in order that they might diſcover the preciſe ſpot which theſe hippopotami haunted, I myſelf went to the other ſide, in hopes of finding ſome koedoes or other game. I however

* The *antilope oryx* of Pallas. T.

however ſaw only ſome ſtruggling antelopes, and a few flocks of oſtriches. Being on foot, and finding that I could by no means approach them, I began to fear that the whole day would be ſpent in contemplation and courſing; but, after having traverſed a great deal of ground, I ſuddenly obſerved, in a plain which was covered with long graſs and a few ſhrubs, ſeven koedoes, which very luckily did not perceive me. Followed by a man who attended me, I approached with great precaution; and, when we were within two hundred paces of them, I ordered him to fire firſt; for, as I was certain that I could overtake theſe animals by running, I wiſhed to reſerve my ſhot till the moſt dubious moment. As ſoon as he had fired, they all betook themſelves to flight, as I expected; but very luckily as they paſſed me, at the diſtance of about thirty paces, I killed the only male which was in the flock. My Hottentot maintained that this was the animal he had fired at; but I convinced him of his miſtake, for we found only one wound and one ball in it. Having covered it with a few branches, and tied my handkerchief to the end of a pole, which I fixed in the ground, to frighten away ferocious animals, we ſet out in purſuit of the reſt of the koedoes; becauſe, the male being killed, I was certain that the females would not go far. We obſerved ſome traces of blood, which plainly ſhewed that one of them had been wounded: and indeed, at the diſtance of four hundred paces, we found one juſt expiring. My Hottentot, whom I had reproached for ſhooting badly, was highly flattered by this event; but he had taken aim at the male, and it was by chance that he hit the female. Having ſkinned it, and taken out its bowels, we thought we might then both of us be

be able, as the diſtance was not very great, to convey it to the ſpot where we had left the male. Being conſiderably fatigued by this labour, and our appetite beginning to be whetted, we kindled a few ſticks, and broiled the liver. I do not know it was owing to our hunger, or to the delicacy of the food, but I remember that, though we had neither ſalt nor bread*, I could ſcarcely be ſatisfied with it; and that this was one of the moſt delicious repaſts I ever made in my life; after this we tied the four feet of the animal together, and with a pole carried it upon our ſhoulders to the other which we killed. I then diſpatched my Hottentot to bring me two horſes, with a few of his companions, and we ſoon conveyed the game to our camp. Some inſtantly filled the kettles with it, while others broiled ſteaks of it upon the hot coals; and, in leſs than two hours, two thirds of the fleſh diſappeared.

The Hottentots are gluttonous as long as there is abundance of proviſions; but, in times of ſcarcity, they can be contented with a very little. In this reſpect I may compare them to hyænas, or other carnivorous animals, which devour all their prey in an inſtant, without thinking on the future; and which indeed remain ſeveral days without finding any nouriſhment, and are ſometimes obliged to appeaſe their hunger with clay. A Hottentot is capable of eating in one day ten or twelve pounds of meat; but, on preſſing occaſions, a few locuſts, a piece of honeycomb, and often a bit of the leather of his ſandals, will ſuffice him. I could never make mine comprehend that it was prudent to reſerve a little proviſion for the day following. They not only eat as much as

* The latter I had not eat for ſome time.

as they can, but they diſtribute what remains to whomſoever they meet with; they are never diſturbed reſpecting the conſequence of this prodigality. *We will hunt*, ſay they—or *we will ſleep*. The latter is a reſource which often relieves them in caſes of neceſſity. I never paſſed in thoſe barren and deſart places, where game is ſcarce, without ſeeing whole hordes of theſe ſavages aſleep in their kraals, a too certain evidence of their wretched ſituation; but what may appear very ſurpriſing, though I have obſerved it more than twenty times, is, that they command ſleep, and deceive at their pleaſure the moſt preſſing want of nature. There are however ſome wakeful moments ſuperior to habitude, and to all their powers. In ſuch caſes they employ another expedient no leſs ſtrange, and which, though incredible, is nevertheleſs ſo certain that it cannot be controverted. I have ſeen them confine their ſtomachs by a leather bandage, in order to diminiſh their hunger, which they endure for a long time, and appeaſe with very little. This curious method of employing ligatures is alſo among them a general remedy, which they uſe for all diſeaſes. They bind a cloſe bandage round the head, or any other part affected, and think that in confining the diſtemper they drive it away. I have been more than once preſent at ſuch operations; and, after they were finiſhed according to the patients wiſh, I have ſeen them become quite compoſed, and reply with more readineſs when I enquired tenderly how they did, and aſſure me that they found great relief. However whimſical this cuſtom may appear, it would not be ſo generally adopted by theſe people, did it not anſwer the high idea which they entertain of it.

Thoſe

Thoſe Hottentots whom I had ſent to ſearch for hippopotami ſoon returned, and informed me, that in coaſtng along the river they obſerved one in a place ſo covered with reeds, that they found it impoſſible to reach the water in order to examine it more cloſely, but that every time he approached the ſurface to breathe they had heard him diſtinctly; that they had in vain fired ſeveral times to frighten him, and make him change his poſition; and that in all probability next morning he would chooſe ſome other ſpot more favourable to our deſigns. They had fallen in with about twenty buffaloes alſo, but they did not kill one.

The night following, being the 11th of the month, we were viſited by ſome lions, hyænas, and jackals, which kept us continually on the watch till two o'clock in the morning. The ſmell of our ſteaks and freſh proviſions had undoubtedly attracted them. We found it very difficult to keep our horſes quiet, and eſpecially the one I had bought from Mr. Mulder in the country of Auteniqua. On hearing the cries of theſe ferocious beaſts, this young animal was ſo terrified, that we were under the neceſſity of putting ſhackles on his four legs, and double reins to his head, to prevent him from deſtroying himſelf: the appearance of day reſtored us however to our former tranquillity.

The evening before I had ſent a Hottentot to reconnoitre Koks-Kraal, which was the rendezvous where I agreed to wait for my deputies. They had been gone only three days; and as I could not expect to ſee them ſo ſoon, I thought that this retreat might enable me to follow a new plan of life; and it was here that I intended for a little while to eſtabliſh my petty empire, if diſagreeable

diſagreeable news, or ſome misfortune, did not oblige my meſſengers to return. I had however no time to loſe; and precaution, always more indiſpenſable, and which I made a moſt ſevere law, ſufficiently engaged me to be expeditious. On the report of my commiſſioners, I judged that we might encamp very conveniently in Koks-Kraal; and the firſt view of this charming ſpot did not deceive my expectation. Having reached it in three hours, we found an encloſure about fifty feet ſquare, formed by a dry hedge of branches of trees and thorns; it was deſtroyed in ſome places, but it required ſcarcely a day to repair it. For ſheltering our cattle the diſcovery of this encloſure was ſo much the luckier, as it commanded a view of almoſt the whole neighbourhood; on one ſide we obſerved the river, from which we were diſtant not more than three or four hundred paces. Wild beaſts, however, were not the principal objects of my uneaſineſs; I thought more of ſecuring them from the Caffres diſperſed over the country. I conſidered that, not knowing the pacific meaſures which I was purſuing with one of their kings, and not being acquainted with my manner of thinking reſpecting them, they might every moment come to attack my camp; and the perſon whom I chiefly dreaded, was he to whom I had entruſted the conditions of my embaſſy. Having ſeen with his own eyes what number of people remained with me, and my ſtrength as well as my weakneſs, and knowing from my own information my plan and the place where we were to meet, it was in his power either to corrupt ſuch of my people as accompanied him, or to betray and aſſaſſinate them by the way. What was there at that time to prevent him from coming unexpectedly at the

head

head of a numerous party, and falling upon me, and, by one of thoſe ſtrokes too common in war, effacing my name from the number of the living? I muſt openly confeſs, that with the well-formed deſign of ſelling my life at a dear rate, my terror increaſed in proportion to the precautions which I every day took in reſpect to my ſafety; but, as the time after the departure of my envoys increaſed, my thoughts became a little calmer: long abſence leſſened the danger, and theſe diſmal ideas at length became familiar to me.

Having ordered my large tent to be erected without the encloſure, and at one of its extremities, I cauſed it to be ſurrounded by a few falſe huts to deceive the enemy, as we had attempted at Klyn-Vis-Rivier. At the end of the encloſure, oppoſite my tent, and in one of its angles, we formed a ſeparate place for my horſes, with another for my ſheep and goats. Near theſe I erected my ſmall tent, in which I propoſed to ſleep; and we raiſed the hedge of the encloſure ſo much with prickly trees, that it was impoſſible for any ferocious animal to leap over it: by theſe means my flocks were perfectly ſafe in a ſpace forty feet ſquare, which was ſufficiently wide and commodious. This kind of a fortification might, in caſe of neceſſity, have even ſerved both me and my people as a place of retreat, where we could have braved two thouſand Caffres.

Theſe arrangements ſatisfied all my companions, ſtill more uneaſy than their chief, and I ſaw them gradually reſume their former gaiety. We did not however neglect the uſual precautions on the approach of night: at the diſtance of fifty paces from each ſide of the encloſure we kindled large fires, to drive away the lions and the hyænas, and, for the greater ſecurity, we lighted

others

others around us. This diſpoſition was attended with the completeſt ſucceſs. I purſued my ordinary occupations, and thought of nothing elſe but hunting. Having obſerved the firſt afternoon ſome peroquets flying through the air in order to go and drink at the river, I watched them, and was lucky enough to kill one of them. It was a new ſpecies, which has never yet been deſcribed: its ſize approaches that of the aſh-coloured peroquet of Guinea; its general colour is a green of different ſhades, but the legs and the tip of the wings are of a beautiful orange. I ſhall give an ample account of it in my deſcription of birds. We were viſited alſo during the day-time by conſiderable troops of *bawians*, or apes of the ſame ſpecies as my friend *Kees*. Theſe animals, aſtoniſhed at ſeeing ſo many people, were ſtill more ſo to obſerve one of their own kind remaining very peaceably amongſt us, and to hear him anſwer them in good language. One day they came down from a little hill which ſtood near my camp; and in leſs than half an hour above an hundred of them, prompted by curioſity, ſurrounded us, continually repeating *gou-a-cou, gou-a-cou*, for the voice of Kees had greatly emboldened them. There were many among them much larger than the reſt, but they were all of the ſame ſpecies: they performed a thouſand tricks and geſticulations, which I ſhould in vain attempt to deſcribe. Thoſe would be much deceived who ſhould judge of them from thoſe degenerated apes, which pine in a ſtate of ſlavery, languor, and fear, in Europe, or which are ſtifled by the careſſes of our ladies, or poiſoned by their dainties. The thick atmoſphere of our climates damps their natural livelineſs, and deſtroys

them, nor can they be made to laugh but by the force of blows.

A ſingularity however, which I have already had occaſion to remark, engaged my attention. Kees, which I held by the paw, though he knew theſe animals to be of the ſame ſpecies, and replied to them, would never go near them. I dragged him towards them, but, contented with being on their guard, they ſhewed no ſigns of fear, and ſaw me approach with as much tranquillity as Kees ſhewed agitation in reſiſting. All of a ſudden he made his eſcape from me, and ran to hide himſelf in my tent. The cauſe of this terror was perhaps owing to his being afraid that they would carry him along with them. He was very ſtrongly attached to me, and I wiſh to do him honour for this ſentiment. In the mean time the reſt of the apes continued their geſticulations, and ſeemed to force themſelves to exhibit tricks and emit cries in order to amuſe me, till fatigued by their noiſe, and tired of this ſpectacle, I wiſhed to procure myſelf another. On diſcharging a fuſee, all my dogs were ſoon at their heels; and it was very amuſing to ſee in how light a manner and with what nimbleneſs they fled; they inſtantly diſperſed themſelves, and, leaping from rock to rock, diſappeared with the velocity of lightning.

On the 13th I was awakened very early in the morning by the cry of a bird which I did not know. Its tones, which were full and well ſupported, had no reſemblance to any thing I had ever before heard. As they appeared to be really extraordinary, I inſtantly ſtarted up, and got cloſe to the bird without being perceived; yet as it was ſcarcely day, I ſaw it but very indiſtinctly through the buſhy branches of a tree upon which

it

it was perched, and I was ſo unfortunate as to ſuffer it to eſcape. By its flight, however, I could diſtinguiſh that it was a goat-ſucker*; I indeed was not deceived, for ſome days after I had an opportunity of killing ſeveral of them.

This bird is very different from the goat-ſucker known in Europe, and which has only one plaintive cry like that of the common toad, which probably has given riſe to its French name†; but that of Africa is very diſtinct, and ſuch as cannot poſſibly be imitated. It continues ſinging for whole hours after ſunſet, ſometimes during the whole night; and this difference, added to that of its feathers, makes it a new ſpecies.

I killed alſo ſeveral very pretty birds; and among others a barbet‡, of a very ſmall unknown ſpecies, and a cuckoo which I named the bawler§, becauſe its ſhrill cry may indeed be heard at a great diſtance: this cry, or, to expreſs myſelf more correctly, this ſong, has no reſemblance to that of our cukoo in Europe, and its plumage alſo is entirely different. In this canton I found likewiſe a great many of the golden cuckoos deſcribed by Buffon under the name of the *green-golden cuckoo* of the Cape. This bird is undoubtedly the moſt beautiful of its ſpecies, for its plumage is enriched with white, green, and gold. Perched on the tops of large trees, it continually repeats, and with a varied modulation, theſe ſyllables, *di, di, didric*, as diſtinctly as I have written them; for this reaſon I have named it the *didric*. As I was thus amuſing myſelf in purſuing ſome ſmall birds, I perceived a flock of

* The goat ſucking owl; called alſo in ſome parts of England the churn owl, or fern owl. T.

† *Crapaud volant*, or the flying toad. T.

‡ Bucco capenſis Linn. T.

§ In French *Criard*.

vultures and crows, which were making a great noiſe, and ſoaring round and round in the air. When I reached the ſpot almoſt below them, I ſaw the remains of a buffalo, which had been devoured by lions perhaps not twenty-four hours before. On the firſt view of the field of battle, I concluded that the conflict muſt have been terrible; all the ground around ſeemed to have been beat and trod upon; I could count how many times the buffalo had been thrown down, and I found tufts of the lion's mane ſcattered here and there, which the former had without doubt torn away either with his feet or his horns.

Having obſerved near this ſpot, which was not far diſtant from the river, the freſh traces of two hippopotami, I followed theſe marks, and eaſily diſcovered the place where the animals had again entered the water. I liſtened very attentively, but I heard nothing; and the banks of the river were ſo encumbered with reeds and ſhrubs, that I could not get near them. Theſe animals therefore had every advantage to enable them to conceal themſelves, and to avoid riſing up from the water to breathe. It would have been loſing time to wait for them; the hour of dinner was approaching, and I was both tired and hungry. As I had advanced too far in purſuit of my goat-ſucker and other birds, I ſet out to return to my camp by the ſhorteſt way; and while I was going towards the eaſt, and directing my route by the ſun, the report of a fuſee, fired almoſt at my ear, made me ſtart, and filled me with the greater fear, as it was unexpected. Knowing that it could be fired only by ſome of my people, I ran towards the place whence the ſound ſeemed to proceed, and found one of my worſt markſmen waſting my powder in vain. He told me that he had been

been watching an hippopotamus from the break of day, that he had fired at him, and that he had not the leaſt doubt of his being killed. A very unſkilful hand may ſometimes do execution by chance; and though it was neceſſary to wait more than a quarter of an hour before we could ſee the animal riſe up from the water, I reſolved to watch him myſelf, and to ſend my Hottentot in queſt of more people; giving him orders at the ſame time to bring me ſome refreſhment. At the end of an hour and an half, which I paſſed very impatiently, my people arrived, but the hippopotamus had not appeared. The hunter however aſſured me, that after he had fired he had ſeen him plunge into the water, and had obſerved alſo a violent ebullition and ſeveral ſpots of blood on the ſurface. He added, that the current being very ſtrong, the animal might perhaps have been carried away by it, which I thought very probable; on this account he ſet out in hopes of finding it lower down, while I returned to my camp to diſſect the birds which I had killed.

About three in the afternoon we were attacked by a dreadful ſtorm; and the foreſt which bordered the mountain was ſeveral times ſtruck with lightning. One of my people returned with an antelope he had killed; and he who had fired at the river horſe came back very late without having ſeen any thing. This diſappointment afforded his companions a ſubject for ridiculing him. He became the object of the ſarcaſms of all my wits; every one put in his word; and they wiſhed to perſuade him that the animal at which he fired had been only a guana.

guana *. Theſe pleaſantries being inſenſibly converted into abuſe, I obſerved that their ridicule was about to be terminated by a combat with fiſts; but by one word I put an end to their warmth, and made the orators be ſilent.

On the 14th the rain fell ſo abundantly during the whole night, that it extinguiſhed our fires, nor was it poſſible for us to kindle them again. Our dogs made a dreadful noiſe, which kept us all awake, but we ſaw no ferocious animals. I obſerved that in theſe rainy nights the lion, the tyger, and the hyæna, are entirely ſilent, and it is then that the greateſt danger is to be apprehended; for as theſe animals never ceaſe on ſuch occaſions to range through the fields, they fall upon their prey without giving warning, and without allowing people time to be upon their guard. What ſtill adds to the dread which this diſagreeable circumſtance occaſions is, that the moiſture deprives the dogs of their ſenſe of ſmelling, and on this account they are of no uſe. My people were too well aware of this danger; for when the rain had put out our fires, it was with great difficulty they could be prevailed on to re-light them, ſo much were they afraid of being ſurpriſed.

It muſt indeed be allowed, that ſtormy nights in the deſarts of Africa exhibit a picture of deſolation, and people find themſelves involuntarily ſtruck with terror. When they are ſurpriſed by theſe deluges, they ſoon penetrate a tent, and inundate all the mats; continued flaſhes of lightning in their rapid paſſage exhibit a momentary blaze amidſt the moſt profound obſcurity; the loud

* The guana is a kind of large lizard, very common in the rivers of Africa.

loud claps of thunder, which burſt forth on all ſides with an awful noiſe, ſeem to claſh together, and are multiplied by being re-echoed from mountain to mountain; the cries of domeſtic animals, and a few intervals of dreadful ſilence, all conſpire to render the ſcene more diſmal, while the danger of being attacked by ferocious beaſts ſtill adds to the common terror: nothing but the appearance of day can leſſen the dread, and reſtore tranquility to nature.

The following morning was ſtill gloomy: the atmoſphere was loaded with clouds, and the rain redoubled at intervals. Being therefore little diſpoſed to go abroad, I employed myſelf in reviewing my collection of birds, which I had recently preſerved. As I had a ſufficient quantity to fill a box, I arranged them in one with much care, and daubed it over with pitch as uſual, to prevent inſects from getting into it. The number of thoſe which I then poſſeſſed, added to thoſe I had before ſent from the country of Auteniqua, already exceeded ſeven hundred.

About four in the afternoon the ſky became ſerene, and very ſeaſonably revived our drooping ſpirits. We reſumed therefore our uſual occupations, and I amuſed myſelf with making my people fire at a mark, which afforded them much entertainment. From time to time I took care to grant them this indulgence, as it exerciſed them; and I remarked, from the commencement of my journey, that their courage increaſed in proportion to their dexterity: but they conſidered as a great favour what I permitted only with a political view of procuring more ſafety to my caravan. The ordinary prize was a ration of tobacco; a bottle ſuſpended from a rock was the mark, and the conditions were to break it at the diſtance

diſtance of two hundred and fifty paces. One named Pit gained the prize that day at the fifty-fourth ſhot; and he very generouſly ſhared it with all the reſt who had contended. The balls were not all loſt; they were almoſt all found at the bottom of the rock, but it was neceſſary to have them all caſt again.

As the ſetting of the ſun ſeemed to announce fine weather the next morning, I formed a deſign of hunting hippopotami in proper form. I ſent ſeveral men to try what diſcoveries they could make on the banks of the river: we cleaned all our fire-arms, and we caſt ſeveral balls of a large ſize, into which I put, according to the African cuſtom, an eighth part of tin. By theſe means balls are capable of making a greater reſiſtance, and they penetrate better, becauſe they do not become flat when they meet with bones. Their effect would be more certain were it poſſible to employ pure tin only; but being then much lighter, they would not fly ſo far, nor hit ſo exactly. After our fires were kindled for the night, which was not eaſily done, as the earth was moiſt, and our wood exceedingly wet, I regaled my people with tea, and I am certain that upon one ounce they poured at leaſt fifty pints of boiling water.

This evening was one of the moſt amuſing I had ever ſpent. I had ſtill the ſame jokes and the ſame merry tales from theſe good people, who, all ſeated around a large fire, endeavoured to divert their maſter, and, deſirous to engage his attention and give him proofs of their attachment and ſincerity, made him eaſily forget what maſter-piece was crowned that day in ſuch or ſuch an academy. My Lyceum was undoubtedly as good as any other of the ſame kind.

The

The proweſs to be ſhewn next morning in hunting the hippopotamus was above all brought upon the carpet: every body hoped to be of the party; and I found great difficulty in arranging it ſo as to pleaſe all. I was deſirous that ſome of theſe ſportſmen ſhould diſperſe themſelves throughout the country, to ſhoot antelopes, on which I depended more for proviſions than on hippopotami, as the banks of the river were ſo covered with reeds and large trees, that it always appeared to me more and more difficult to diſcover them, and to get near them. As night was in the mean time advancing, and as I did not ſee thoſe hunters arrive whom I had ſent out to make diſcoveries, I ordered my largeſt piece to be fired three times; yet it was nearly half an hour before they returned any anſwer. At length, however, we heard, four or five minutes after each other, three reports, which made us conclude that they had perhaps fallen in with ſome of theſe animals. A quarter of an hour after, we heard three reports more; but the ſound did not ſeem to proceed from ſo great a diſtance as the former: at length the firing continued at certain intervals, and ſeemed more and more to approach us; which induced us to believe that theſe unfortunate people were purſued by ſome ferocious animals. On this account, I ran immediately to meet them; and, when I found them, they appeared to be trembling and in great terror. They had, however, ſeen nothing; but, by the reſtleſſneſs of the two dogs which they had carried with them, it was too clear that their lives had been in danger from lions, and that they had narrowly eſcaped. The dogs indeed had not deceived them. I learned from them alſo, that they had heard the ſnorting

ing of ſome hippopotami above the place in which they had hid themſelves: this account renewed my hopes; but, as we had great need of repoſe, I retired to my tent. Scarcely had I fallen aſleep, when, at about half an hour after eleven, I was ſuddenly alarmed by the roaring of a lion, which was heard by another, that ſeemed at firſt to anſwer from a very great diſtance; but in a quarter of an hour the latter joined him, and both of them began to prowl around our camp. We marched about, however, with ſo much boldneſs and ſpeed, and we fired ſo often, that we intimidated them by the noiſe, and obliged them to depart. We were now under no doubt that they were the ſame which had followed our hunters. On this occaſion they were indebted for their ſafety to the dogs, which they had carried along with them: being informed by them of the danger which threatened them, the ſignals of diſtreſs directed to us had been ſufficient to keep the enemy at a diſtance.

It is hardly poſſible to conceive how much the boldeſt dogs tremble on the approach of a lion. Nothing is ſo eaſy as to diſcover, by their looks, during the night, what kind of ferocious animals are in the neighbourhood. If it be a lion, the dog, without ſtirring from the ſpot, begins to howl in a moſt melancholy tone; he ſeems very uneaſy and reſtleſs; he approaches his maſter, keeps cloſe to him, and fawns upon him as if he meant to ſay, *You muſt defend me.* Other domeſtic animals are under no leſs agitation; all of them ſtart up; not one of them remains in a lying poſture; and the oxen bellow in a plaintive manner, but with a low voice. Horſes beat the earth, and caper about in all directions;

directions; goats expreſs their fear alſo by peculiar ſigns; and ſheep, with their heads hung down collect themſelves into a body, and preſs as cloſely againſt one another as they can. They appear then as one maſs, and continue in that poſition without the leaſt motion. Man alone, haughty and confident of his own ſuperiority, ſnatches up his arms, palpitates with impatience, and pants after his victim.

On ſuch occaſions the terror of Kees was ſtill more apparent. As much frightened by the reports of our fuſees which we fired on the approach of the lion, the leaſt movement would make him ſtart; he moaned like a ſick perſon, and dragged himſelf along at my ſide in a moſt languid condition. My cock ſeemed only aſtoniſhed at the convulſive agitation of my camp, while a common hawk would have thrown him into the greateſt conſternation. He dreaded the ſmell of a weaſel more than all the lions of Africa united. Thus each being has ſome enemy which it defies, and the latter in its turn bends before a ſtronger. Man, however, braves all, except thoſe of his own ſpecies.

We indeed ſee animals of the ſame kind fight with one another; but they are impelled to this, merely for a moment, by love, the only paſſion that diſunites them, after which every thing again returns to its former order. A more continued and durable hatred may however be obſerved among domeſtic animals. Is this the effect of education or of example?

But I return to the different ſigns by which danger is announced; and it may be readily believed that no one has had a better opportunity of obſerving them in the minuteſt manner. All the books and compilations, and all the ſpeculative

tive eloquence in the world, can never overturn obſervations ſo often repeated on the grand theatre of the African deſarts.

If it be an hyæna that is prowling in the neighbourhood, the boldeſt of the dogs purſues him to a certain diſtance, and ſeems not to be much afraid of him; and an ox continues lying without manifeſting terror, unleſs it be a young one, which for the firſt time hears this dangerous animal. The caſe is the ſame with the horſe, which, with his foot tied to his halter, remains all night in the meadows, and ſhews no kind of fear.

If it be jackals (a kind of foxes) that are ranging around, the dogs purſue them briſkly as far as poſſible; unleſs, happily for the latter, there be lions or hyænas in the neighbourhood; for as ſoon as they perceive them, fear obliges them to return, and brings them ſoon back to their retreat.

The Hottentots pretend that the jackal is a ſpy to ſome ferocious animals, and that it comes to provoke and detain the dogs, in order that the lion or the hyæna, ſeizing that opportunity, may more eaſily lay hold of their prey, which, as an acknowledgment for the ſervice received, they ſhare amicably with them.

What I have ſeen confirms pretty ſtrongly this aſſertion, which, perhaps, may be a little exaggerated. However this may be, it is certain that the moment the jackals begin their concerts, the hyænas never fail to arrive ſpeedily; but they do not ſhew themſelves openly, till they ſee the dogs fully engaged. We always kept two of them coupled together, to bark in the abſence of the reſt, in order to prevent the hyænas, which are leſs afraid of fire than the lion, from approaching.

Next

Next morning, the 15th, day-light had ſcarcely appeared, when we were on foot. After breakfaſt, I diſpatched three hunters to the woods and the plain, with orders to ſearch for buffaloes, antelopes, gnous, and koedoes; whilſt I took with me four of the beſt ſhooters, and three men to carry my large carabine, ammunition, and a few pieces of dried fleſh, in caſe we ſhould be obliged to paſs the whole day in the field; and, leaving old Swanepoel, with the reſt of my people, to guard the camp, we departed.

In going along the ſide of the river, we kept as near the banks as we could, obſerving the greateſt ſilence. In this manner we marched three hours without diſcovering any thing; but perceiving at length the tract of an hippopotamus which muſt have paſſed that way in the night, we followed it for an hour and a half, and it conducted us to the place where the animal had thrown itſelf into the water; upon which we diſtributed ourſelves along the banks, at a certain diſtance one from the other to liſten. The perſon who was at the greateſt diſtance having diſcharged his fuſee, we ran towards him, and found that he had fired at the animal, but miſſed it. Very luckily we did not wait long before we ſaw it appear again, and heard it breathe, but it had reached the oppoſite ſhore. Though the river was very broad, two of my people ſwam over, in hopes of forcing it to keep at leaſt in the middle, if they could not bring it within reach of us. This attempt perfectly ſucceeded; but the animal was ſo timid, that when it breathed it ſcarcely raiſed its noſtrils above the ſurface of the water. As it changed its place every moment, it never ſhewed itſelf in the ſpot where we were waiting for it, and it plunged ſo often

often and ſo quickly, that it gave us no time to take aim. We had already fired thirty times without touching it. The two Hottentots who croſſed the river had no fuſees; and the cunning animal remarking that they did not fire, kept continually on that ſide. I therefore diſpatched Pit, who had won the prize in ſhooting at a mark, ordering him to croſs the river out of the animal's ſight, to join his companions by going a little way about, and, above all, not to fire till he was ſure of his aim: all which he executed with much intelligence. The animal, which on the other ſide thought itſelf out of our reach, having no ſuſpicion, raiſed its whole head ſometimes out of the water, and at one of theſe moments, Pit directed his ſhot ſo well, that the hippopotamus received it, and immediately dived. It was ſeverely wounded, I am certain, for it appeared ſoon after with the greater part of its body above the ſurface, and agitated with convulſive motions. Embracing this opportunity, I fired, and lodged my ball in its breaſt, upon which it again plunged, and did not appear till the expiration of twenty-ſeven minutes. Being then dead, it floated along with the current, and ſome of my people having ſwum to it, puſhed it towards us cloſe to the bank.

I can ſcarcely deſcribe the joy which we all felt when we at length ſaw this monſtrous animal in our poſſeſſion; but I and my people were actuated by very different motives. Gluttony preſented it to their eyes as a delicious morſel, on which they were about to feed; whilſt curioſity exhibited it to my mind as an intereſting object of natural hiſtory, which I did not know but from books and engravings.

The

The legs of this animal being very ſhort in proportion to its bulk, favoured us ſo much, that we were able to roll it to land, as we would have rolled a German bully. The animal was alſo round; and I could not be ſatisfied with admiring and examining this enormous maſs, which was a female, with the minuteſt attention. Pit's ball had ſtruck exactly above the left eye, and was found lodged in its jaw; but I much doubted whether that had occaſioned its death. Mine, on the contrary, entering preciſely near the omoplate, had broken one of its ribs, and paſſed through its lungs from one ſide to another.

From the muzzle to the root of the tail, it was ten feet ſeven inches in length, and eight feet eleven inches in circumference. Its tuſks, which were crooked, were only five inches in length, and an inch in diameter in the thickeſt part, which induced me to believe that it was a young one. I found no fœtus in it; and its ſtomach contained nothing but ſome leaves and a few chewed reeds. I even obſerved pieces of branches of the ſize of a gooſe quill, which were only flatted. In the ſtomach or excrements, it is generally remarked that large animals, ſuch as the rhinoceros and the elephant, triturate very ſlightly the different kinds of food which they eat.

All the figures of the hipppotamus hitherto given are very imperfect; the beſt I know is undoubtedly that of Mr Allaman, profeſſor of medicine at Leyden. It was engraved from a drawing ſent to him by Mr. Gordon. In my deſcription of animals, I ſhall copy that which I executed myſelf, and I hope that it will give ſatisfaction to naturaliſts. When I had finiſhed my obſervations,

obſervations, I immediately diſpatched a Hottentot to bring two yoke of ſtrong oxen next morning, to tranſport our capture; and, as it was now dark, we choſe out a large tree, at the root of which we propoſed to paſs the night: but we did not go far from the banks of the river; for as we could not roll the animal farther, and were unwilling to expoſe it to the chance of being devoured by wild beaſts, we were under the neceſſity of having it in our view. We were not ſurrounded or covered by many trees; and this rendered our ſituation ſtill more critical. We might indeed have been eaſily ſurpriſed; but by means of extraordinary fires which we kindled, and of twenty ſhots fired at intervals, we remained all night in perfect tranquility. We were not however able to ſleep, for we were tormented by myriads of gnats, attracted by the vicinity of the water, and the coolneſs of the place we had choſen. One of my Hottentots, who fell aſleep, was ſo ſtung by them, that his face ſwelled ſo much as to render it almoſt impoſſible to know him.

I took care to order one of the feet of the hippopotamus to be cut off, which my people prepared in the ſame manner as that of the firſt elephant I killed in paſſing the mountain called Duyvals-Kop, to go from the country of Auteniqua to that of Ange-Kloof. I found great difficulty in ſetting my people to work, for they had ſpent the whole night in ſtuffing themſelves with the fleſh of the hippopotamus. I ſaw them broil pieces two or three feet in length, and a foot in breadth; and they ſeemed to be in want of nothing except ſleep.

The foot which had been dreſſed for me during the night was ſerved up for my breakfaſt; it

was

was exceedingly nouriſhing; and I thought it even ſuperior to that of the elephant: it was more delicate, and I never eat any thing in my life with more pleaſure.

Though the hippopotamus is extremely fat, its greaſe has nothing in it diſguſting; and it does not produce any of thoſe bad effects which are occaſioned by that of other animals. My people melted it, and drank it from baſins, as if it had been broth. Beſides this, by rubbing it over their bodies, they ſhone as much as if they had been varniſhed, and their ſwollen bellies ſufficiently ſhewed that they had not been very ſparing in their repaſts during the night.

I had forgot to order a horſe for myſelf; but Swanepoel ſupplied this omiſſion; for the heat was exceſſive, and we were diſtant full ſix leagues from my camp. Having fixed a large chain to the head of the hippopotamus, and yoked twelve oxen to it, while they went along the banks of the river they experienced much difficulty and fatigue, either from the inequality of the road, or from the trunks of large trees, which every moment interrupted their paſſage; but when we once arrived at the level country, which was covered with long graſs, I ordered the oxen to be relieved; and obſerving that they went on at a good pace, I mounted my horſe, to get before them. Yager, my favourite dog, which never quitted me, and always followed me in my hunting excurſions, was obliged for this time to remain behind, not being able to keep up with me. He copied the example of my Hottentots, and did not arrive with them till five in the afternoon.

The three hunters whom I had ſent out in another quarter had alſo returned completely

loaded, having killed two gnous and three antelopes; ſo that we found ourſelves ſufficiently ſtocked with proviſions: but the great heat, and the friction of the hippopotamus againſt the earth, had ſo mangled and hurt its body, that ſome of the moſt tender and delicate parts were ſpoilt, and began to ſmell. On this account we were obliged to employ the night in cutting it up: part of it was ſalted in the ſkins of the two gnous which my hunters had brought with them; and the choice morſels I ordered to be put into a brandy barrel, the head of which we knocked out after we had drawn off the liquor into earthen jugs. This operation afforded my people an opportunity of getting drunk.

The night following our two lions returned again, and I imagined that all the jackals and hyænas of the country had aſſembled to pay us a viſit. One of the latter had the boldneſs to croſs our fires, and to advance cloſe to the ſpot where we were. A Hottentot diſcharged his piece at it, but he unluckily miſſed his aim. The jackals even entered our camp; and without the aſſiſtance of our dogs, we ſhould have been forced to ſhare our booty with theſe animals, which ſeemed determined not to be diſappointed.

Next morning my people were employed in cutting to pieces the hide of the hippopotamus, to make what in the country are called *chanboc*. Theſe are whips for flogging the oxen which are under the hand of the driver on the pole of the waggon: they are ſhaped like thoſe uſed in Europe for horſes, but they are thicker and longer; and as the ſkin, where ſtrongeſt, may be about two inches in thickneſs, they are cut into thongs two inches broad, which makes theſe

pieces

pieces about two inches ſquare. They are ſometimes ſix feet in length, and when cut out a weight is ſuſpended at their lower extremity, to make them dry ſooner. A round form is then given them by beating them with a mallet, obſerving to make them taper to a point at one of the ends. Thoſe which are made ſmaller for riding have this advantage over thoſe of Europe, that they never break, eſpecially if from time to time care be taken to moiſten them with a little oil.

The ſkin of the rhinoceros is employed for the ſame purpoſe; the inhabitants of the Cape give it the preference (though a whip made of this is far from being equally ſolid as that made of the other), becauſe it is capable of receiving a finer poliſh, has the beautiful colour of horn, and becomes almoſt as tranſparent.

With regard to the planters, who have no taſte for elegance, and who prefer the uſeful to the agreeable, they employ only the former. Both indeed, are ſold at a very high rate, as the animals which furniſh the materials for making theſe whips are no longer found in the colonies, and thoſe individuals who ſometimes penetrate farther are not always certain of meeting with them.

The ſkin, however, of theſe animals cannot be better employed. It has a great reſemblance, if we except its thickneſs, to that of the hog; and the hippopotamus approaches very near to that animal. To perſons not previouſly informed, their fat would appear to be entirely the ſame; and, if that of the hippopotamus could be ſalted with all the precautions neceſſary, it might be preferred with more juſtice, as in all the colonies it is reckoned very wholeſome. The people of the Cape

are perſuaded that, taken in a potion, it is ſufficient to cure radically thoſe who are afflicted with diſorders of the breaſt. That which I preſerved in bottles made of ſkins had the uſual conſiſtency of olive oil, during the great colds of winter.

The tuſks of the hippopotamus are endowed with a quality which renders them preferable to ivory. The latter, in time, becomes yellow; but, in whatever manner the former may be prepared, they retain their whiteneſs in all its purity. It is not therefore aſtoniſhing that the Europeans, and, above all, the French, conſider them as a great object of traffic. By the aſſiſtance of art they ſupply the deficiencies of nature, and make a moſt admirable figure in the mouth of a pretty woman.

This prize was ſo ſeducing that my Hottentots depended on enjoying the pleaſure of a ſecond hunting excurſion; but I found that we had a ſufficiency of proviſions, and that it would be better to employ our time more uſefully, and to vary our occupations, or rather our pleaſures, a little more. Having a ſtrong inclination to try my net here, it was with great difficulty we could find a place in the river convenient for caſting it; we, however, ſomehow ſucceeded; but we caught only about twenty fiſh, of different kinds. The largeſt were ſcarcely ſix inches in length; and when fried in the greaſe of the hippopotamus they appeared to me excellent. As this ſport procured us no advantage worthy of attention, and as I was diſguſted with the embarraſſment we experienced in approaching the river in the manner we wiſhed, I ordered the net to be carried away. During the time my people were employed in folding it, a bird perched near us, which,

which, inſtead of being frightened by our preſence, approached more and more, ſending forth very ſhrill cries. I was told that it was the bird which diſcovers honey; and I remarked in its geſtures and cry a great affinity with thoſe of the bird known to ornithologiſts under the name of the *cuculus indicator*; but it was much larger than thoſe which I had before ſeen. My Hottentots, who reſpect it on account of the ſervices which it renders them, begged me to ſpare it. A new ſpecies, however, was to be added to my collection, and I killed it. This bird is of the genus of the common *indicator*, but larger, and different in its plumage; it is a variety of it.

I did more afterwards, I killed three different ſpecies of theſe birds, all equally indicators.

The ſavages of Africa know them well, and treat them as deities. They live only on honey or wax; and it is they that involuntarily point out to them where they will find abundant repoſitories of both.

Naturaliſts, for what reaſon I know not, place the *indicator* among the cuckoos; it has no relation, however, to this genius, but in the conformation of its feet; and being different by other phyſical characters, it is much more ſo by its manner of living. At the riſk of being expoſed to an anathema from the cabinets of the ſcientific, I muſt continually repeat that large volumes piled up in libraries are nothing to the book of nature; and that an error, though ſupported by an hundred eloquent pens, is nevertheleſs ſtill an error.

This bird is no more a cuckoo than pies, barbets, perroquets, toucans, and all thoſe ſpecies which have two toes before and two behind. If it is to be ranked in any known claſs, it would belong

belong rather to that of the barbets, becauſe it has more affinity to theſe.

In its ſtomach I found nothing but honey and wax: I did not obſerve the ſmalleſt portion of any inſect. Its ſkin is thick, and ſo tough, that when it is freſh it can ſcarcely be penetrated by a pin. This to me is an inſtance of the wonderful precaution of nature, which having deſtined it to contend for its ſubſiſtence with the moſt ingenious of all inſects, gave it a covering ſtrong enough to defend it from their ſtings.

It builds its neſt in hollow trees, climbs up to it in the ſame manner as the wood-pecker, and hatches its eggs itſelf. This circumſtance is ſufficient to ſeparate it totally from the cuckoo, and to make it a new genus.

In my ornitholgy will be given accurate figures and deſcriptions of the three ſpecies of *indicators* which I know.

My Hottentot, Klaas, on returning from hunting, brought me an eagle which he had killed. It was a ſpecies I had never before ſeen, and which no author has deſcribed. For this ſervice, I rewarded him in a proper manner, and gave him a ration of tobacco; not that I ought to be generous towards a man whom I tenderly loved, and to whom I could not refuſe the ſmalleſt favour, without being cruel, but by his example to excite all my people to make ſome diſcoveries.

This bird, which was entirely black, ſeemed to me, by its characteriſtics, to belong rather to the vulture than the eagle kind; but I knew that it differed in its manners. In every thing elſe, the analogy is very great; for, when neceſſary, the eagle becomes a vulture; that is to

ſay,

ſay, when preſſed by hunger, if nothing better occurs, for the moment, it feeds as well as any other bird of prey upon rotten carrion; and it is a great error to imagine that it lives only upon what it catches itſelf. When I cauſed the remains of the large animals we had killed to be ſcattered in the fields, in order to attract carnivorous birds, eagles and butcher-birds came alſo to partake of them, as well as vultures.

I muſt here aſk pardon of the ancient and modern poets, for thus degrading the dignity of this noble animal: it is ſhocking I confeſs, to ſee this ſublime bird of the maſter of the gods fall ſhamefully upon the ſame ſcattered remains of an infectious carcaſe, and feed with great pleaſure.

On the 18th we ſpent part of the night in firing our pieces to drive away two more lions, and a voracious flock of hyænas. I did not ſleep till very late, and when I awaked I was greatly ſurpriſed to find about a ſcore of the Gonaqua Hottentots in my camp. This viſit, and it conſequences, deſerve a more ample detail. The reader, in this plain narration, will acquire juſter ideas reſpecting the African ſavages, than from all the diſſertations of philoſophers.

The chief approached to pay his reſpects to me, and the women in full dreſs marched behind. him. They all ſhone very much, and had been newly *boughoued*; that is to ſay, after rubbing their bodies with greaſe, they had beſprinkled themſelves with a kind of red powder, made of a root named in the country *boughou*, and which has a very agreeable odor. Their faces were all painted in a different manner, and each of them made me ſome ſmall preſent. One gave me oſtrich's eggs, another a young lamb, and ſome offered

offered me an abundant proviſion of milk in baſkets which appeared to be made of oſier. Theſe utenſils aſtoniſhed me much. "Milk in "baſkets!" ſaid I: "ſuch an invention un-"doubtedly announces a great deal of ingenuity!" And calling to mind thoſe milk veſſels made of copper, which were formerly uſed at Paris, before they were proſcribed by the wiſdom of the police, I perceived, on comparing them with the former, how inferior a great people, with all their arts, their learned men, and their Louvre, often are, in reſpect of their ſimpleſt wants to thoſe whom they affect to deſpiſe.

Theſe prety baſkets are woven of delicate reeds, and ſo cloſe in their texture, that they may be employed in carrying water; on this account I found them of very great ſervice afterwards. The chief of the Gonaquas informed me that they were made by the Caffres, from whom they procured them by giving them other things in exchange.

The chief, who was named *Haabas*, made me a preſent of a bunch of oſtrich feathers, exceedingly beautiful. To ſhew him much I valued it, I immediately tore away a plume of the ſame kind, which I wore in my hat, and put his in its place. By the looks of the good old man, I could eaſily perceive how much he was pleaſed with what I had done; and he ſtill farther teſtified by his geſtures and words the ſatisfaction he received from my conduct.

It was now my turn to ſhew my gratitude to the chief, and I began by giving him a few pounds of tobacco. I was about to enjoy a moſt agreeable ſcene at a very little expence, and to render more than one happy. By a common ſignal Haabas ordered all his people to approach; and

in

in an inſtant they formed themſelves into a circle, and ſquatted down like ſo many apes. All the tobacco was diſtributed; and I remarked, with much pleaſure, that the portion which Haabas reſerved for himſelf was not larger than any of the reſt. I was ſenſibly affected by this goodneſs of heart and ſpirit of juſtice, which he diſplayed in ſo ſimple and natural a manner; and I gave him for himſelf in addition to the preſent made before, a knife, a piece of ſteel, a box of tinder, and a necklace of large glaſs beads. To the women I gave beads and copper wire for bracelets. Amidſt theſe reciprocal preſents and the ſentiments of affection with which they mutually inſpired us, I obſerved, a young girl of ſixteen, confounded with the crowd, who ſhewed more curioſity in examining my perſon, than eagerneſs to ſhare in the trinkets which I was diſtributing to her companions. She looked at me with ſo much attention, that I approached her that ſhe might have more time to ſurvey me at her leiſure. I found that her figure was altogether enchanting; ſhe had the freſheſt and the moſt beautiful teeth in the world; her perſon was ſlender and elegant, and her ſhape, formed to inſpire love, might have ſerved as model for the pencil of Albano. She was the youngeſt of the Graces, under the figure of a Hottentot.

The impreſſions made by beauty are univerſal: it is a ſovereign who reigns over all; and I was ſenſible, by the profuſion of my preſents, that I bowed a little under its ſway. My young ſavage ſoon grew familiar. I had given her a girdle, a pair of bracelets, and a necklace of large white beads, with which ſhe ſeemed to be highly delighted. I untied from my neck a red handkerchief,

chief, which ſhe wrapped round her head; and with this dreſs ſhe was what in polite language might be called charming. I took great pleaſure in ornamenting her myſelf; and, when I had finiſhed, ſhe requeſted ſome trinkets for her ſiſter, who had remained with the horde. With her finger ſhe pointed out her mother; and at the ſame time informed me that ſhe had no father. I haraſſed her with queſtions, for I found ſo many charms in her anſwers. Nothing could equal the pleaſure I enjoyed in ſeeing her, except that which I received from her converſation. I aſked her to remain with me, and made her promiſes of every kind; but when I ſpoke to her, above all, of carrying her with me to Europe; where I ſaid all women were queens, and commanded hordes of ſlaves; far from ſuffering herſelf to be tempted, ſhe rejected all my propoſals, and without any ceremony began to grow peeviſh and impatient. A monarch could not have overcome her reſiſtance, and the ſorrow which ſhe felt from the mere idea of quitting her family and her horde. I concluded by begging her at leaſt to bring her ſiſter to me, telling her that ſhe would have every reaſon to be ſatisfied in her turn. This ſhe promiſed to do; and at the ſame inſtant ſhe fixed her eyes upon a chair that ſtood not far from me. Having ſhewn me a knife which I had left there by chance, I preſented it to her, and ſhe immediately gave it to her mother.

This girl's whole thoughts were continually engaged by her dreſs, which to her was entirely new. She touched her arms, her feet, her necklace, and her girdle, and put her hands twenty times to her head to feel her handkerchief, which pleaſed her much. Having opened my dreſſing-box,

box, I drew from it a mirror, which I placed before her; and ſhe ſurveyed herſelf ſome time in it with much attention and complaiſance. By her geſtures and various attitudes, ſhe ſufficiently ſhewed how much ſhe was ſatisfied; I do not ſay with her figure, but with her ornaments, which ſtill made the ſtrongeſt impreſſions on her mind. When ſhe had dreſſed in the morning, before the horde ſet out to ſee me, ſhe had rubbed greaſe and tallow over her cheeks, which I ordered to be cleaned and waſhed; but I could never perſuade her that this aſſiſtance of art deſtroyed the charms of nature, which had formed her very pretty. Whatever ingenuity I employed in my reaſoning, and whatever might be the effect of her complacency, in reſtoring to her freſh cheeks that delicate bloom of youth ſo frail and fading, ſhe was always attached to her villanous black greaſe with as much obſtinacy as the ladies in Europe are attached to their rouge, and to all their paſtes, which are no leſs diſguſting, and perhaps much more pernicious.

My young beauty having begged me to give her my mirror, I complied with her requeſt; and ſhe took a wonderful advantage of this favour, which I had ſo readily granted, to aſk me for every thing that ſtruck her fancy. I always ſuffered myſelf to be overcome; but I was at length obliged to refuſe her ſeveral articles, both on account of their being indiſpenſably neceſſary to me, and from a fear that ſhe might make a dangerous uſe of them. My knee-buckles had alſo tempted her; for the ſtones with which they were ſet had greatly attracted her eyes; and I ſhould have been very glad to have it in my power to gratify her once more. How much did I wiſh upon this occaſion for the moſt wretched

wretched pair of ſteel, to replace this article of luxury, in other reſpects very uſeleſs! Unluckily theſe were the only pair I had in my poſſeſſion: I gave her to underſtand that they were abſolutely neceſſary to me, and from that moment ſhe never more thought of them. She had the good ſenſe not to be affronted at any of my refuſals; it was ſufficient for me to ſay no only once, to make her change her object.

I found her name difficult to be pronounced, diſagreeable to the ear, and very inſignificant according to my ideas; I therefore gave her a new one, and called her *Narina*, which, in the Hottentot language, ſignifies a flower. I begged her to retain this pretty name, which ſuited her in many reſpects; and this ſhe promiſed to do as long as ſhe lived, in remembrance of my viſit to her country, and as a teſtimony of my love, for ſhe was already no ſtranger to this paſſion; and in her natural and affecting language fully ſhewed how powerful the firſt impreſſion is, and that, in the boſom of the African deſarts, one muſt not even attempt to be happy.

Having ordered a ſheep to be killed, and a large quantity of our hippopotamus to be dreſſed to regale our gueſts, they gave themſelves up to all the extravagance of joy. Every body danced; and my Hottentots, like gallant and polite gentlemen, regaled theſe ſavages with their muſic. The moſt ſkilful performers ſounded the goura, the joumjoum, and the rabouquin; the lucky Jews harp was not forgotten; and this new inſtrument produced the moſt lively ſenſations in all the company. Narina, like all other pretty women, who think nothing impoſſible to them, wiſhed to try it alſo; but, like all other

pretty

pretty women, who ſoon become impatient with their leſſon, ſhe diſdainfully threw away the inſtrument, which ſhe found deteſtable.

The whole of this day was ſpent in frolics and merriment; and my people diſtributed their ration of brandy, independent of that which I had ordered to be given them in particular. I with pleaſure obſerved that Narina would not taſte it; and this ſobriety redoubled the eſteem I had entertained for her; for I deteſt this liquor, and am aſtoniſhed that our women ſhould be fond of this moſt diſguſting of poiſons.

I ordered a quantity of wood neceſſary for making our fires to be collected early, and this operation was ſoon performed. The Gonaquas joined the party and made ample proviſion for themſelves, as I had permitted them to remain till the next morning, and had aſſigned them a place at ſome diſtance from my camp, where they might paſs the night.

In the evening when the fires were kindled, I regaled my people with tea and coffee. Narina ſeemed to like the tea, but the colour of the coffee made her conceive an averſion to that liquor. I put my hand upon her eyes, and made her ſwallow half a cupful more of it; but ſhe ſtill gave the preference to tea. She even drank of it very often; and this on her part was a piece of fineſſe which I pretended not to perceive, and which afforded me much amuſement. I am perſuaded that ſhe did not much reliſh this liquor, but ſhe made haſte to ſwallow it, that ſhe might, in the bottom of the cup, get at a piece of ſugar-candy, which ſhe had ſeen me throw into it.

After this frugal repaſt, and the diverting ſcenes it procured me, the dancing recommenced; and

and towards midnight the need of repoſe put an end to our pleaſures.

Having for ſome time ſlept in my waggon to avoid the night damps, I entruſted the chief of the Gonaquas with the care of guarding my camp, and I lodged the old man in my largeſt tent.

The reader perhaps expects to ſee my favourite excepted from the law by which I confined all the horde to certain boundaries, and has perhaps no faith in my continence. Narina kept cloſe by me, and never thought of quitting her friend. I ſhewed her where her mother and friends were at ſome diſtance from us, and—— Narina then bid me good night.

I diſpatched two of my people completely armed, to paſs the night near theſe Gonaquas, and to defend them from voracious animals. When every one had retired to reſt, I ordered that no perſon after that ſhould be ſuffered either to enter or to go out.

I could however ſcarcely ſleep, for every thing that had happened ſince the arrival of theſe ſavages recurred to my imagination under the moſt whimſical and extraordinary colours. What I had learned reſpecting the manners and character of theſe people, compared with the ridiculous and inſipid relations of our romantic travellers, appeared to me ſo pure, ſo ſimple, and ſo engaging; my converſations particularly with Haabas and Narina had intereſted me ſo much, that I curſed even the rapid moments which deprived me of theſe animated ſcenes, and I regretted that I could not prolong their courſe.

Scarcely had the day begun to appear, when I awoke, and went to viſit my Gonaquas, who were

were all ſunk in profound ſleep, huddled together under their kroſſes *. Narina was with her mother lying upon a mat, which I had given her to ſecure her from the moiſture. The other ſeven women, heaped all together, formed a very pleaſant group; for neither their heads nor their feet were to be ſeen, as they were entirely hid under their covering. Having ſaluted them by diſcharging my fuſee at their ears, I ſaw a number of frightened countenances ſtart up from below their kroſſes, which exhibited a moſt comic ſcene. Some of the ſleepers however did not awake, which is not at all ſurpriſing; for the ſleep of the Hottentots is near akin to a lethargy.

Having left them to recover the uſe of their ſenſes at leiſure, I went to traverſe the banks of the river, in order to ſhoot a few birds before the heat ſhould commence; for the north wind, which in theſe latitudes performs the ſame office as the ſouth in France, ſeemed to announce a very ſcorching day. At ten o'clock I returned with a few birds, and among others a red long-tailed fly-catcher, which I conſidered, and very juſtly, as a happy diſcovery. This charming animal, the predominant colour of which is indeed a moſt beautiful red, has a ſtill more beautiful tuft on its head, and two very long feathers in its tail, which give it an air of dignity that the female does not ſhare with it. This advantage, however, the male does not enjoy but in the

* Cloaks made of the ſkins of different animals, which the Hottentots all generally uſe, either to clothe them during the day, or to cover them in the night-time. I ſhall have occaſion to ſpeak of them in a fuller manner hereafter.

the breeding ſeaſon, which continues three months: after that period theſe two feathers drop of themſelves, and nothing then diſtinguiſhes the male from the female but a browner tint.

We muſt not confound this ſpecies of bird with one of the ſame kind deſcribed by Briſſon and Buffon, under the name of the long-tailed creſted fly-catcher of the Cape of Good Hope; for this bird is not found at the Cape: it belongs to India, and particularly to the iſland of Ceylon, and differs much from mine. The marks by which they are diſtinguiſhed will be related in my ornithology. I ſhall only here aſſure the reader that the two fly-catchers deſcribed under that name, one of which is red, and the other almoſt white, and which are given as two diſtinct ſpecies, form abſolutely only one; and this variety in the colour ariſes from the difference of the ſeaſons. One may be eaſily convinced of the truth of this, by examining in my collection one of theſe birds, which ſtill partaking of both ſtates clearly ſhews the ſucceſſive paſſage from white to red.

That which I had killed never experienced ſuch a change; and this diſtinction alone ought to make us not confound them, as has been hitherto done, but to eſtabliſh a new ſpecies.

After depoſiting my capture in my tent, I returned to the camp of my gueſts; but I found there only men; all the women had diſappeared: and I learned that they were gone to bathe. Being curious to ſee this ceremony, I repaired to the river; and I was not long in diſcovering them, for their voice and laughter ſoon conducted me to the ſpot. Having glided ſoftly between the trees and buſhes, I got cloſe to the

bank

bank without being perceived, and found them all ſwimming, ſporting in the water, and diving with wonderful dexterity. When I had ſurveyed theſe female bathers at my leiſure, I ſoon put an end to their ſport by firing my fuſee; upon which they all plunged down in the water, leaving nothing above the ſurface but the points of their noſes. I then ſeated myſelf on their clothes which were heaped together, where I took a pleaſure in jeering them; and, ſhewing them their ſmall aprons one after the other, invited them to come for them. Narina's mother laughed heartily at the embarraſſment of her companions; for ſhe had quitted the water before the reſt, and was repoſing herſelf under a tree, till they ſhould join her. Having entreated me in vain a long time to depart, only one reſource was left them, which they employed with a ſhrewdneſs that aſtoniſhed me. Narina's mother well knowing the aſcendancy that her beautiful daughter had over me, threw her apron and kroſs to her; the latter then dreſſing herſelf in the water, ſoon after came towards me, with the moſt ſimple and tender air, to beg that I would retire for a few moments, in order that theſe women might have time to put on their veſtments. I at firſt pretended to be a little obſtinate; but Narina, taking me by the hand, dragged me along with her, till, being out of ſight, ſhe could call out to her companions that they might quit the water, and dreſs.

Narina becoming more and more familiar, continued to walk with me towards my tent, ſporting as freely with me as ſhe would have done with her brother, her parents, or her companions. She joked with me after her own manner, and teazed me, ſometimes ſtruggling to diſengage herſelf from my arms, and ſometimes, to

avoid me, jumping over buſhes, ravines, and the broadeſt ditches. Being then young and vigorous, long inured to the moſt fatiguing labours, and a life a thouſand times harder than that of theſe ſavages themſelves, I could have defied an European Hercules; but whether it was cuſtom, or ſome remains of gallantry, that made me employ only the half of my ſtrength againſt the young Narina, or that in reality ſhe ſhewed more addreſs, and was more agile in her motions, ſhe compelled me to deſiſt, and I yielded under her efforts; but, above all, when ſhe eſcaped from me, and got to a little diſtance, ſhe outſtripped me in the courſe, and was ſoon beyond my reach. With what velocity did ſhe run along the highways, and by a thouſand windings return to conceal herſelf at the edge of a wood, and to ſurpriſe me as I paſſed!

As I obſerved birds of various kinds flying around in the foreſt, I could not help entering it, as this was the only method I could find of allaying the impetuoſity of my young ſavage. Nothing could equal the pleaſure ſhe experienced on ſeeing me fire my fuſee, which I did often, and I killed about a ſcore of birds. I had not carried any of my dogs along with me; but Narina, who ſupplied their place, caught in an admirable manner thoſe which were only wounded. By this time I had loſt ſight of my camp, and had advanced rather too far. The ſporting and play of my young companion at length bewildered me entirely; and ſhe did not put an end to her romping until ſhe had given me an excellent leſſon, and made the beſt return poſſible to the trick I had played her a little before, on the banks of the river Groot-Vis. Having fallen in with this river, which I knew would direct me

to

to my camp, I fired at a heron, and killed it. Falling near the bank, and being carried away by the current, I was in danger of loſing it; and this diſappointment would have given me the greater uneaſineſs, as one of the ſame ſpecies, which I procured with much difficulty, had one day, by the negligence of ſome of my people, been entirely ſpoilt in my tent. I therefore plunged into the river, which reached up to the middle; but getting entangled in the herbs which grew on its banks, and having not yet forgot the accident at Queur-Boom, I was unwilling to advance farther. Narina, who perceived my embarraſſment, and the awkward ſituation into which I had got by running after my bird, was much aſtoniſhed that I ſhould be afraid of truſting myſelf to the current. In an inſtant therefore ſhe threw herſelf into the water, and began to ſwim, whilſt I returned to the bank; but the cruel creature who had ſeized my bird, held it up in her hand, and, calling out to me, deſired me to come and fetch it. After a thouſand prayers, and the moſt earneſt entreaties, inſtead of complying with my requeſt, ſhe made for the other bank, with the velocity of an arrow, where ſhe ridiculed me at her eaſe, and laughed at me for my timidity. I have already ſaid that I could not ſwim; and if ever there was a conjuncture in which I had occaſion to complain, this without doubt was a mortifying one, and which ought to have incited me in the ſtrongeſt manner to ſupply this inexcuſable deficiency in my education. When I found that I could have no influence over my pretty romp, I reſolved to ſit down on the banks of the river, and to wait for her with patience. She herſelf ſoon grew tired of her ſport; and, throwing herſelf into the river again, ſwam over,

after ſhewing her ſkill, by diving ſeveral times in her paſſage. While ſhe was in the water I more than once preſented my fuſee, as if about to take aim at her; but nothing that I could do ſeemed to terrify her. On this account ſhe was ſtill more playful and obſtinate in refuſing me my heron. We both however at length purſued our route very peaceably together, and returned towards my tent.

The reſt of the Gonaqua women, whom we had left lower down on the banks of the river, having rejoined us, I could plainly read ſome remains of ſhame in their countenances and looks. I myſelf ought to have bluſhed, for wounding their delicacy in ſo cruel a manner. On this occaſion I had ſeen natural modeſty, which is very different from that reſerve which women often aſſume through pride, and which is only an enticing ſtratagem, more dangerous than ſcandal reduced to the completeſt embarraſſment.

After I had made my ſavages dine, I ordered the table to be brought upon which I diſſected animals, and which I employed only for that purpoſe. This, with two chairs, formed all the furniture of my tent. I then began to flay the birds I had killed in the morning. This operation ſurpriſed them much; they looked at me with aſtoniſhment, and could not conceive why I had deprived birds of their lives in order to ſtrip them, and immediately after to reſtore them to their former figure. I did not however waſte my time in boaſting to them of the cabinets and collections of Europe, or in telling them how much they were eſteemed. They undoubtedly might have wondered that I ſhould have come ſo far with no other deſign than that of procuring animals; and the queſtion of Narina who aſked me if there

were

were no birds in my own country, appeared to me extremely ſimple and natural. I thought that no diſſertation on this ſubject with ſavages, who would not have comprehended what I ſaid, was equal to the pleaſure of preparing a king's-fiſher, which I gave to my inquiſitive beauty.

Haabas prevailed upon me to move my camp, in order that I might erect it nearer his horde, where he told me I ſhould find a great variety of birds of every kind. Having given me to underſtand that we were only about two leagues diſtant from it, I promiſed that I would go thither in the courſe of a few days.

As he was preparing to depart, I regaled him and all his people with a dinner, and gave him a ſmall proviſion of tobacco for himſelf, which afforded him much pleaſure. Narina promiſed to bring me milk, and to return in a ſhort time with her ſiſter. At length, highly ſatisfied with each other, after a thouſand farewels, theſe good people left me, accompanied by ſome of my Hottentots, whom I had commiſſioned to reconnoitre the way, and to procure me a few ſheep by barter.

During the thirty-ſix hours which I ſpent with theſe Gonaquas, I had time to make ſeveral obſervations that were of great uſe to me, and particularly reſpecting their language and pronunciation. I remarked that they make a clapping noiſe with the tongue, like the reſt of the Hottentots. This clapping I ſhall explain hereafter, and likewiſe the manner in which they vary it. Though their dialect was the ſame, they had, however, ſome terminations which neither I nor my people could always underſtand.

They

They differed from mine, in having the colour of their ſkin darker, the noſe not ſo flat, and a greater ſtature; in a word, by a nobler air and figure. The portraits of Narina and a Gonaqua, faithfully copied, and here given, may ſerve to convey an idea of this difference.

When they accoſt any one, they ſtretch forth the hand ſaying, *Tabè*, I ſalute you. This word and ceremony, which are employed by the Caffres, are not uſed by the Hottentots, properly ſo called.

This affinity of cuſtoms, manners, and even conformation; their being ſo near Great Caffraria, and the accounts I afterwards received, convinced me that theſe hordes of Gonaquas, who equally reſemble the Caffres and the Hottentots, muſt be a mixed breed produced by theſe two nations.

The dreſs of the men, arranged with more ſymmetry, has the ſame ſhape as that of the Hottentots; but, as the Gonaquas are a little taller, they make their mantles of calves inſtead of ſheeps ſkins; they are both called *kroſs*. Several of them wear hanging from their necks a bit of ivory, or very white ſheep's bone; and this contraſt of the two colours produces a good effect, and is very becoming.

When the weather is exceſſively hot, the men lay aſide every part of their dreſs that is ſuperfluous, and retain only what they name their *jackals*. This is a piece of the ſkin of the animal ſo called, with which they cover what nature bids them conceal, and which is faſtened to their girdle. This veil however, negligently arranged, may be conſidered as an uſeleſs appendage, and is of very little ſervice to their modeſty.

The

The women, much fonder of their dreſs than the men, employed more care in adorning their perſons. They wear a kroſs like the latter, but the apron which conceals their ſex is larger than thoſe of the Hottentots. During the great heats, they retain only this apron, with a ſkin which deſcends, behind, from their girdle to the calf of the leg.

Young girls, below the age of nine years, go perfectly naked; when they attain to that age, they wear nothing but a ſmall apron.

I ſhall ſoon return to other peculiarities by which this nation are diſtinguiſhed, for I have not yet done with them.

At night the Hottentot whom I had ſent along with Haabas, arrived from his horde, accompanied by two new Gonaquas, who brought me a fat ox, which their chief begged me to accept. Narina, putting me in mind of my promiſes, ſent me a baſket of goats milk, which ſhe knew I was very fond of. Her ſiſter, when ſhe ſaw the preſents which ſhe had received, regretted much that ſhe had not gone along with her to viſit my camp; and ſhe ordered the two meſſengers of Haabas, from whom I learned this intelligence, to thank me for thoſe I had ſent her by her mother. Having accepted the ox and the ſheep which were preſented to me, I ordered the meſſengers to be entertained with tobacco and brandy. One of theſe people reſembled Narina ſo much that I took him for her brother; but he was only her couſin. Features full of mildneſs, and an elegant figure, rendered this man one of the moſt beautiful ſavages I had ever ſeen. He told me ſeveral particulars reſpecting the Gonaquas, which Haabas had not mentioned. He informed me that, before the war with the

Caffres,

Caffres, his horde was compoſed of only one family, of which Narina's grandfather had been the laſt chief; that, at his death, it had remained a long time without any leader; but that, when the war broke out, Haabas' horde, which formerly inhabited the banks of the river, near its mouth, had joined his, that they might unite their forces, in caſe they ſhould be attacked by the common enemy; that the horde would not receive Haabas, pretending that it was at liberty to chooſe its own chief; and that it was not juſt that ſtrangers ſhould give laws to a horde which had readily admitted them among them. He added, that there had been much quarrelling, and ſeveral combats, between them; that a good deal of blood had been ſhed, ſome ſavages killed, and many wounded; but their common intereſt having at length obliged them to unite againſt a ſudden incurſion of the Caffres, the prudent and courageous conduct of Haabas, who repelled their attack, had made him be unanimouſly proclaimed the chief of the two hordes, which by alliances, marriages, and good friendſhip, formed at that time only one.

When my brandy began to operate on the brains of theſe two Gonaquas, they ſeemed to be ſo fond of talking, that they could ſcarcely put an end to their relations. It was near one in the morning when I quitted them, in order that I might retire to reſt; and I recommended it to my people to imitate my example, as I intended next morning to go on a grand excurſion, in purſuit of birds, and had fixed the break of day for the time of our departure.

Having ſet out as ſoon as the ſun appeared, Narina's couſin requeſted permiſſion to follow me, as he ſaid it would give him great pleaſure to ſee me

me fire my double-barrelled fuſee, which was a phenomenon he could not comprehend.

I conſented, therefore, and gave him my carabine to carry, becauſe it might happen that we ſhould meet with large animals in our way.

It was not long before I had an opportunity of gratifying *Amiroo*'s * curioſity; for having got within reach of a vulture, which I had ſeen perch on the point of a rock, I wounded it at the firſt ſhot, and killed it with a ſecond, as it was attempting to fly. Amiroo's companions, when they returned to the horde, had told him that I could fire ſeveral times ſucceſſively; but, naturally judging of my arms by his own, he could not believe that it was poſſible to wound twice with the ſame arrow. He was therefore greatly aſtoniſhed to hear my ſecond report, and to ſee the animal dead. He ſaid he ardently wiſhed to have an inſtrument like mine in his poſſeſſion, to repel the Caffres; and he formed this wiſh with ſuch an air and tone, as made me conclude, that man, if he is not the ſtrongeſt of animals, is however the nobleſt and moſt courageous. He aſked me why the planters had not fuſees of the ſame kind; a queſtion which appeared to be full of good ſenſe, but it was impoſſible for me to anſwer it. The planters not only have none in their poſſeſſion, but even before my arrival, they had never ſeen any of them; and on all the plantations that are at a diſtance from the Cape, my fuſee was conſidered as a wonder and a ſingular curioſity.

In the midſt of our converſation, I thought I perceived, by *Amiroo*'s looks, that he imagined it

* This was the name of Narina's couſin.

it poſſible for me to fire as often as I pleaſed; I was convinced of this by the embarraſſing queſtion which he afterwards propoſed. A kite having paſſed over our heads, I diſcharged both my ſhot at it; but it only made a turn round, and purſued its flight. Amiroo, upon this, aſked me why I did not fire until I had killed it: but I could give him no anſwer, except that the bird was too common; that I did not care for it; and that, beſides, ſo much noiſe might frighten others which I was more deſirous of procuring. By this ſhift, however aukward, I avoided explaining what it was prudent for me ever to conceal from him; and I increaſed that idea of ſuperiority with which a white man every where impreſſes a ſavage.

My excurſion was ſufficiently ſucceſsful; and, among other birds, I killed a cuckow entirely unknown, which will form a new ſpecies in this genus.

Its plumage, which had nothing remarkable in in it, was, throughout almoſt the whole body, of a dark brown colour. Its ſong conſiſts of ſeveral ſounds differently accented, and it may be heard at a great diſtance. As it ſings whole hours without interruption, it betrays itſelf, and directs the fowler where to find it. In my ornithology I have named it the *criard*.

I killed likewiſe ſome fly-catchers, and a great number of touracos, of which we made fricaſſees, much ſuperior to thoſe made of Guinea-hens or partridges with the ſame ſauce.

Narina's couſin ſeeing me bring down all ſorts of little birds, cloſe to him, with ſo much readineſs, begged me to lend him my fuſee, that he might try his dexterity; but it would have been bad policy in me to give him any inſtruction on this

this ſubject. Without wiſhing to be accounted a ſorcerer, I was deſirous that he might be convinced, by his own experience, that there is a wide difference between a European and a Hottentot. Having loaded my fuſee without putting lead into it, I ſuffered him to fire as long as he choſe; but, having killed nothing, he became very impatient. Had I loaded my piece in the uſual manner, he would not perhaps have been more ſucceſsful; for, fearing that the priming would burn his face, he turned aſide his head as ſoon as ever he preſented the piece. His aukwardneſs, however, might have done ſome execution; and, on this account, I thought it beſt to leave nothing to chance: for it is certain that, had he killed only a ſingle bird, my ſuperiority would have been immediately leſſened in his mind, and conſequently in all the horde. If this idea did not ſecure my perſon, it at leaſt flattered my vanity.

As we were returning to the camp, we fell in with a flock of bubales, at the diſtance of two hundred paces. Having killed one of them with my carabine, my companion appeared to be very much ſurpriſed, remembering that at the diſtance of fifteen paces he had not been able in ſeveral ſhots to kill even a ſmall bird. He began to meaſure the prodigious diſtance between us and the bubale. As I obſerved that he ſeemed to be loſt in melancholy reflections, and to be under great uneaſineſs, I looked at him with an air of affection, and gave him every conſolation in my power.—Amiable youth, thou didſt not know how eſtimable and engaging that ſimplicity was, which made thee appear ſo little before thy fellow-creature, long mayſt thou retain thy happy ignorance! May I be the laſt ſtranger who, with raſh

raſh ſteps, ſhall dare to tread thy native plains; and may thy ſolitude never be polluted!

We covered our bubale with the branches of trees, and, when I returned, I ſent a horſe to convey it to my camp.

To amuſe Amiroo and his companion, I employed the reſt of the day in ſkinning my birds. Having invited them to ſtay with me during the night, telling them that they muſt next day conduct me themſelves to their horde, they ſeemed to be exceedingly glad; the evening was therefore ſpent in great merriment, we drank tea, as uſual, around a large fire. I ordered one of the ſheep, which Haabas had ſent, to be killed, upon which we made a charming ſupper; and after our repaſt amuſed ourſelves with dancing and muſic: nor was the immortal lyre forgotten, for I had given two of them to my new gueſts. Having ſeen ſome of theſe inſtruments in the hands of thoſe of their horde who had paid me a viſit before them, their reputation was ſo much extolled, that they were impatient to have one, though they did not venture to aſk it: I however anticipated their deſire, and by this ſtill added to the eſteem and friendſhip which they entertained for me.

When it was time to retire to reſt, I informed all my people how I intended to travel next morning, and ordered Klaas to have my two horſes ready at the break of day.

When I awoke, Amiroo's companion had ſet out to inform Haabas that I intended to pay him a viſit the ſame day.

Whatever may be the extent of the deſarts of Africa, we muſt not form any calculations reſpecting its population from thoſe innumerable

ſwarms

ſwarms of blacks which are found on the weſt, and which border all the coaſts of the ocean, from the Canary Iſles to the environs of the Cape of Good Hope. There is certainly no proportion to enable us to hazard even a conjecture; ſince by a trade approved by a few, and held in deteſtation by the greater number, the barbarous navigators of Europe have induced theſe negroes, by the moſt villanous attractions, to give up their priſoners, or thoſe who are inferior to them in ſtrength. As their wants increaſed, they have become inhuman and perfidious beings; the prince has ſold his ſubjects; the mother has ſold her ſon; and nature, as an accomplice, has rendered her prolific.

This diſguſting and execrable traffic is, however, ſtill unknown in the interior parts of the Continent. The deſart is really a deſart; and it is only at certain diſtances that one meets with a few hordes, that are not numerous, and who live on the fruits of the earth, and the produce of their cattle. After finding one horde, one muſt travel a great way to find another. The heat of the climate, the dryneſs of the ſands, the barrenneſs of the earth, a ſcarcity of water, rugged and rocky mountains, ferocious animals; and, beſides theſe, the humour of the Hottentots, a little phlegmatic, and their cold temperament—are all obſtacles to propagation. When a father has ſix children, it is accounted a phenomenon.

The country of the Gonaquas, into which I penetrated, did not therefore contain three thouſand people, in an extent of thirty or forty leagues; and the horde of Haabas, which conſiſted at moſt of four hundred perſons, including every

every age and ſex, was accounted one of the moſt conſiderable in the nation.

Theſe people did not reſemble thoſe degenerated and miſerable Hottentots, who pine in the heart of the colonies, contemptible and deſpiſed inhabitants, who bear no marks of their ancient origin but an empty name; and who enjoy, only at the expence of their liberty, a little peace, purchaſed at a dear rate, by the exceſſive labour to which they are ſubjected on the plantations; and by the deſpotiſm of their chiefs, who are always ſold to government. I had here an opportunity of admiring a free and brave people, valuing nothing but independence; never obeying any impulſe foreign to nature, and calculated only to deſtroy their magnanimous, free, and truly philanthropic character.

I had no intention of going among this reſpectable nation like a harraſſed hunter, compelled by hunger and fatigue to ſtop at the firſt place where he can find a lodging. I had reſolved to preſent myſelf there *in fiochi*, with the moſt ſtriking appearance, but ſuch as might be equally honourable for me and for them.

I employed the whole morning in dreſſing and arranging my hair, which I loaded with powder, as if I had been going into the moſt elegant company. I combed my beard, and made it hang down in the moſt graceful manner poſſible. I had ſuffered it to grow a year; not from any whim or caprice, as has been ridiculouſly circulated throughout the world; nor was it in imitation of thoſe botanical travellers, who are mad after galls and ſenna, as a puniſhment becauſe I did not diſcover ſoon enough, or when I wiſhed, ſuch a diaphoretic plant, or ſuch and ſuch an imperceptible inſect; but policy had made me

preſcribe

preſcribe this rule to myſelf, as a fundamental law. The length of my beard was owing neither to ſlovenlineſs nor neglect. The ſcrupulous cleanlineſs of the Dutch I delight in; and, for an American Creole, it is not a mere want, proceeding from cuſtom; it is a pleaſure. In my journeys I changed my linen and clothes three or four times a day; but the plan of ſuffering my beard to grow, was formed before I departed from the Cape. I had heard of the wars between the Caffres and the planters, and that the latter were deteſted by the ſavages; and, as I expected to meet either the one or the other, it was highly neceſſary that I ſhould give myſelf, by my external appearance, as well as by my manners and conduct, an air abſolutely ſtrange, to prove that I had no reſemblance to the planters. This plan ſucceeded perfectly; for, among all the hordes through which I paſſed, I was received as an extraordinary being, and as a man of a new ſpecies. My invincible diſlike to tobacco and brandy, uſed both by the planters and the ſavages, added ſtill to their aſtoniſhment. The idea of this favourable prepoſſeſſion, which could not eſcape me, gave me freſh aſſurance, and even an intrepidity which procured me great enjoyments unknown to other travellers. Nothing could ſtop me; I marched forwards, and preſented myſelf without uneaſineſs; and thus might I have traverſed all the centre of Africa, even to Barbary, without the leaſt moleſtation, had not the earth, as I may ſay, rejected my ſteps. Thirſt and cruel hunger will always be inſurmountable barriers to thoſe who may wiſh to attempt ſo bold and hazardous an undertaking.

My

My beard, then, was my principal ſafeguard; but it daily rendered me a ſervice which was no leſs valuable: on a journey I took the precaution, when I waſhed it, to ſuffer it to imbibe as much water as it could contain; and, during the heat of the day, this was a refreſhment for my face which afforded me much comfort and relief.

After arranging my hair, I dreſſed myſelf in the moſt magnificent manner I could. Among my hunting frocks I had one of a dark brown colour, ornamented with ſteel buttons, cut facet-wiſe: this I made my dreſs of ceremony; as the rays of the ſun, falling upon the different facets, would by their reflection form a ſplendour very proper for exciting the admiration of theſe ſavages. Under this frock I wore a white veſt; and in place of boots I ſubſtituted a pair of nankeen drawers, which always appeared to me equally noble. In my wardrobe I had ſtill a pair of European ſhoes, which I put on my feet; and I did not forget my large ſilver buckles, as they were by chance exceedingly brilliant. I wiſhed much to have a gold-laced hat, but this I was obliged to do without; and, as my drawers rendered my ſet knee-buckles of no uſe, I made a claſp of them, with which I fixed to my hat, ſuch as it was, a magnificent plume compoſed of oſtrich's feathers that had their full length.

But how much was I pained for the furniture of my horſe, which did not correſpond with the ornaments of his maſter! Inſtead of that magnificent panther's ſkin which in France would have been accounted ſuperb, and which was nothing in the eye of a ſavage, what a flaming figure would one of thoſe howſings of ſcarlet cloth which trot regularly every week from Paris to Poiſſy, have made!

made! So true it is, that the rarity of objects forms all their value, at the ſame time that it conſtitutes their merit.

Having hinted to my faithful Klaas that he ſhould mount on horſeback with me, and ſerve me as a groom, he had arranged himſelf in the beſt manner poſſible: but being deſirous that he might appear with ſome diſtinction, I gave him an old pair of breeches, which he did not put on without aſſuming an air of vanity, which at the ſame time announced the pleaſure this treat gave him, and the importance he received from ſuch a decoration.

Every thing being ready for my departure, I diſpatched two of my hunters with their fuſees to inform the horde of my approach: and having breakfaſted ſoon after, I ſuſpended my poniard from a button-hole of my veſt; put a pair of piſtols into my girdle; and another pair, with my double-barrelled fuſee, at the bow of my ſaddle; and inſtantly mounted my horſe. Klaas, who carried my carabine, did the ſame; and followed me, leading with him my four dogs. He was followed, in his turn, by four hunters, eſcorting one of my people, who was appointed to carry a box containing two red handkerchiefs, ſome copper rings, knives, pieces of ſteel for tinder-boxes, and ſome other preſents which I intended to give to the horde. Amiroo marched at our head, to direct us in the proper way.

We firſt advanced along the banks of the river, going againſt its current for near an hour; after which Amiroo made us quit it, and conducted us between two high mountains, in a narrow defile, the length and windings of which were not leſs than two leagues. At the extremity of

this valley, having returned to within a few paces of the river, the country opened before us, and from this ſpot pointing out with his finger a ſmall eminence upon which I obſerved a kraal, our guide informed us that we ſhould there find Haabas. It was ſtill about ten gun-ſhots diſtant from us. The road indeed had been longer than I expected; for we employed full three hours in this march. When I was within two hundred paces of the horde, I diſcharged both my ſhot, and ordered my four hunters to do the ſame. The two others, whom I had ſent before, returned our ſalute, by diſcharging theirs; and this was to the whole horde the ſignal for a general ſhout of joy. I ſhall not make any reflections upon this affecting ſcene: the tender reader will ſhare in the ſoft emotions of my heart; and prefer a true relation, however ſimple it may be. I ſaw all theſe people come forth from their tents, and form themſelves into ſmall bodies; but, in proportion as I approached, the women, the young girls, and children, all diſappeared, and returned to their different huts. The men, who alone remained with their chief at their head, came to meet me; upon which I diſmounted, and repeating the words *tabè tabè* to Haabas, I took the old man by the hand, which I ſqueezed in mine. He returned my ſalute with every effuſion of a grateful heart; and ſeemed deeply affected by this mark of honour, which was principally conferred upon him. I was received with the ſame ceremonial by all the reſt of the men; except that, ſuppreſſing through reſpect the ſign of the hand, they ſubſtituted in its room that of bowing the head; and that, in pronouncing *tabè*, they accompanied this word with a more ſenſible clapping with the tongue.

Each

Each in particular examined me with the utmoſt attention, even to the minuteſt part of my dreſs: every thing attracted their looks. Haabas himſelf, who had never ſeen me in my camp but in an undreſs, or in my hunting equipage, ſeemed aſtoniſhed at my ſtrange attire: I imagined that he ſhewed me much more deference than uſual, and that he aſſumed a more reſpectful air as he paſſed me.

I had diſmounted under the ſhade of a large tree, to which they came to compliment me; but I remained there only a few minutes to refreſh myſelf. It was a real feſtival to me to contemplate this intereſting horde, to which I advanced eſcorted by my whole troop; and as I paſſed before one of the huts, which like thoſe of the Hottentots have only a very low entrance, the miſtreſs of it, who at firſt made her appearance to ſurvey me at a diſtance, immediately retired; ſo that I was obliged every moment to ſtoop, in order to examine the inſide. It was a very curious ſpectacle to ſee theſe brown viſages motionleſs, and as it were fixed to the wall, in the back part of the hut, exhibiting every where the appearance of ſo many portraits in ſhade. I ought to have left my card with each of theſe ladies, for I was not received by any of them.

By little and little they became however more familiar, and I at length ſaw myſelf ſurrounded by them. They preſented me milk on all ſides; but Narina was not yet among the number of theſe curious females. Having enquired for her, ſome of them ran to fetch her; and ſhe arrived ſoon after, bringing a baſket of goats milk, quite warm, which ſhe haſtened to preſent to me. I drank ſome of it, in preference to that offered by the reſt; both on account of the natural

graces which ſhe diſplayed in giving it, and of the care ſhe had taken to make the veſſel clean, which was far from being the caſe with the reſt.

All theſe women, dreſſed in their richeſt attire, freſh greaſed and *bougboued*, and having their faces painted in a hundred different ways, ſufficiently ſhewed what noiſe the news of my arrival had made in the horde, and the ſingular reſpect which they entertained for a ſtranger. Narina had adorned herſelf with the preſents I had given her; but I obſerved, with no little ſurpriſe, that ſhe had not followed the etiquette of her companions, and that ſhe had abſtained from her unctions. She knew how much this refinement in her dreſs diſguſted me; and, whatever ſuch a ſacrifice might have coſt her, ſhe had ſubmitted to it in order to pleaſe me. She introduced me to her ſiſter, who appeared pretty; but whether it was that prepoſſeſſion had blinded me, or that I was offended by the ſmell of her ointments, I did not find in her the ſame attractions as in Narina, nor did ſhe excite the ſmalleſt emotion in my breaſt.

When I arrived at the habitation of Haabas, he ſhewed me his wife, who had nothing to diſtinguiſh her from the reſt; and I found here, as is often the caſe elſewhere, that the commandant's lady was old and ugly enough. This however did not prevent me from preſenting her, like a polite courtier, with a red handkerchief; which ſhe accepted without ceremony, and immediately bound round her head. To this preſent I added a knife, and a piece of ſteel for ſtriking fire with a flint; but as I had a great deſire to know her taſte, and was very glad to ſee a ſavage female embarraſſed reſpecting the choice of her dreſs, I ſhewed her my whole package of glaſs-

ware,

ware, begging her to ſelect whatever might pleaſe her moſt. Upon this occaſion I did not enjoy the ſatisfaction which I expected; for ſhe laid her hands, without heſitating a moment, upon ſome red and white necklaces; the other colours, ſhe ſaid, being too like her ſkin, would produce no effect, and were beſides not at all agreeable to her taſte. I have always remarked that the ſavages in general ſet very little value upon black or blue. I gave her alſo ſome large braſs wire, for two pair of bracelets: and it appeared to me that ſhe eſteemed this article above all the reſt.

The reſt of the women did not ſee theſe preſents without envy. They lifted up their hands with ecſtaſy; and in their admiration declared, with a loud voice, that the ſpouſe of Haabas was the happieſt of women, and the moſt magnificent in jewels that ever they had ſeen in all the hordes of the Gonaqua nation.

I then diſtributed the remainder of the glaſs beads which I had brought with me; and I candidly confeſs I manœuvred in ſuch a manner as that the youngeſt and prettieſt might have the largeſt ſhare.

To the men I gave knives, tinder-boxes, and rolls of tobacco. My intention in viſiting this horde perſonally was, that all the families which compoſed it might partake in my bounty; and the package I brought along with me was pretty conſiderable.

Haabas having begged me, in the name of ſeveral infirm old men who were not able to go abroad, to follow him, and pay them a viſit, I readily conſented to this requeſt, and we entered their huts: they were all attended by children of eight or ten years of age, entruſted with the care

care of giving them their food, and of rendering them all thoſe ſervices which are neceſſary to the debility of years. I was very much ſtruck with this reſpectable inſtitution among theſe ſavage people, and I fully teſtified my approbation of it to my conductor. Though theſe old men, for the moſt part, were confined only by their great age, and not by thoſe infirmities which are the uſual attendants of people in civilized nations, I remarked with no little ſurpriſe that their hair was not white, and that it ſcarcely began to turn grey at the extremities.

I was next conducted to a hut entirely ſeparated from the reſt, which contained a horrid ſpectacle—a miſerable wretch covered with ulcers from head to foot. Having ſtooped in order to enter, the infectious ſmell that proceeded from the hut made me ſtart back with horror. This poor creature had lain here for more than a year, without any one daring to approach him; ſo much did they dread being infected by this diſorder, which was accounted contagious: his wife indeed, and two of his children, had died about two months before. His food was thrown to him at the entrance of his habitation, or rather tomb; for to me he appeared to be no longer a living being. His ſituation, which was truly deplorable, incited my pity; for he had long remained ſtretched out amidſt his own filth and ordure: and I was extremely ſorry that I could not by ſome efficacious remedy afford him relief.

In vain did I remember that at Surinam we gathered ourſelves the balm of Copahu, and that of Racaſſir, which I believe is the Tolu of the apothecaries ſhops; and that with this aſſiſtance alone we eaſily cured our negroes. But this

this was of no avail here: Africa did not produce any of theſe ſalutary plants; or at leaſt, if it did, I knew not in what place to ſearch for them. I however thought of a method which, if it ſhould not cure his evils, would at leaſt ſuſpend them for a little.

I began therefore by bidding theſe ſavages be perfectly eaſy; aſſuring them that the diſorder was not infectious, and that it could not be communicated by coming into immediate contact with the diſeaſed perſon, much leſs by the air that ſurrounded him. To perſuade them the more to believe me, I confidently told them that I was well acquainted with the diſeaſe: for without this precaution the plan I had formed to relieve him would have been in great danger of miſcarying; as an invincible prejudice made them all dread an epidemical diſtemper.

I told them, then, that it would be proper to anoint the whole body of the patient with mutton fat melted; that this harmleſs remedy would reſtore to his parched ſkin a little of its ſuppleneſs, and would at leaſt enable him to move his limbs with eaſe. I ordered alſo ſeveral mats to be given him, begging him to endeavour to draw them under him; and, weak as he was, he ſucceeded according to my wiſh. I next propoſed that a new hut ſhould be erected for him, and that he ſhould be tranſported thither. This advice was received with acclamations by all preſent; and, that their benevolent ardour might not have time to cool, both I and my people put our hands to the labour: and the hut was ſoon finiſhed, and in a condition to receive the ſick man.

I always imagined that this man had been attacked by that deſtructive ſcourge which poiſons

ſons the ſources of life, and deſtroys pleaſure itſelf. Though ſtrangers to this ſcourge, as well as to the Hottentots of the Cape, who know it well, I thought it might have been gradually conveyed to the Gonaquas, by paſſing from one to another. A journey, or ſome fatal connection, had undoubtedly cauſed the misfortune of this poor wretch.

When the hut was ready, he was carried out, extended upon mats. He was then conveyed to a place near his new habitation, and the old one was demoliſhed; whilſt I was conſidered as a beneficent god by theſe good ſavages. With what anxiety did they follow the unfortunate patient, with their eyes fixed ſometimes upon the miſerable wretch of whoſe cure they had already conceived great hopes! for that powerful balm of the heart beamed on all their countenances, and doubled their tender compaſſion. With what eagerneſs did I ſee them all flock round me, and pity the ſufferings of their brother! and the women, above all, implore ſucceſs to my ſkill, that I might if poſſible give ſome relaxation to his puniſhment, and reſtore him to life!

He was now become like a ſkeleton, covered with a ſhrivelled and dry ſkin, through which appeared ſome parts of his bones, in the legs, arms, ſides, and reins; all his joints were prodigiouſly ſwelled; and the worms, by anticipation, were devouring him all over.

After the friction I had ordered, he was carried into his tent. I then recommended him to the care and attention of the whole horde; and begged that they would give him nothing to feed upon but milk.

I doubt

I doubt much whether this aſſiſtance was ſufficient to relieve him: unfortunately my ſkill extended no farther; and, being firmly perſuaded that his death was inevitable, I thought that to haſten it would be the greateſt ſervice that could be done to him. If I have prolonged his miſerable exiſtence for a few days, the cruelleſt of his enemies could not have done more.

When I returned to the habitation of Haabas, his wife preſented me with ſome milk to refreſh me; and I found that a ſheep had been killed to entertain me and my people.

I ordered a few ſteaks to be broiled on ſome coals before the hut; but the remembrance of the horrid ſpectacle which I had ſeen ſo haunted my imagination, that it entirely deprived me of my appetite. Fearing however that theſe ſavages might think I was diſguſted with their food, which would have cruelly mortified them, I forced myſelf to eat a little. From the place where I ſat, through the circle that ſurrounded me, I ſaw my people, who were leſs delicate than their maſter, regaling themſelves on pieces which had been diſtributed among them, and amuſing themſelves as if they had been at a wedding.

When the repaſt was finiſhed, no time remained but what was neceſſary for me to return before night. Taking leave therefore of my good neighbours, after many times repeating *tabè*, I mounted my horſe. I was followed by almoſt the whole of the horde: but my time becoming every moment ſhorter, I made uſe of my ſpurs; and in leſs than an hour Klaas and I reached our camp. The reſt of my people arrived much later; for about a ſcore of the Gonaquas, both men and women, attracted by curioſity, had accompanied them. Upon any other occaſion

occaſion this viſit might have diſpleaſed me; but at this time I had abundance of proviſions, and twenty mouths more could not in any manner be burthenſome.

The reader, without doubt, expects to find among the number of thoſe who paid me this unexpected viſit, the beautiful Narina. She indeed was; and, though it may appear ſurpriſing, ſhe concealed herſelf ſo well that I did not diſcover till next morning that ſhe had arrived the evening before. The whole of the night was ſpent in dancing and ſinging; but, as I was unwilling to deprive any one of a ſhare in this party of pleaſure which chance alone had formed, I did not attempt to interrupt them.

One of the ſureſt means of preſerving over ſavages that ſuperiority which the preſumptuous European haughtily aſſumes, is not, as is commonly believed, to intimidate them, and to employ threats and terror. This ridiculous plan muſt have been invented only by a raſh fool, or a daſtardly commander at the head of a numerous army, who took advantage of his force to impoſe deſpotic and ſevere laws. An inſtance to be found in ſome late voyages, is an evident proof that it is not by impetuoſity, and the drawn ſword, that mankind are to be civilized. The tragical end of a late enterpriſing navigator ought ever to be a ſtriking leſſon to thoſe who may adopt ſuch fatal maxims *. I am convinced that one ſhould never venture to aſk from people in a ſtate of nature, what would coſt them too great a ſacrifice to give; that it is prudent to loſe a little in order to gain more; that it is only by

* The author here ſeems to allude to the death of our unfortunate and ever-to-be-lamented captain Cook. T.

by complacency that one can inſinuate oneſelf into their favour; and that the principal method of ſucceeding with them is firſt to gain their love. Entertaining ſuch principles, it may readily be judged that I do not believe in *eaters of men*; and that there is no country ſo deſart, or ſo little known, into which I would not penetrate without fear and without apprehenſion. Suſpicion is the principal cauſe of the barbarity of ſavages, if we can call ſo the great care which they employ to remove from us, and even to deſtroy every thing that ſeems likely to endanger our ſafety or interrupt our repoſe.

Not being able to ſleep during the whole night, I aroſe at break of day: but what was my aſtoniſhment when I perceived Narina! She ſeemed to have a more embarraſſed air, and a more baſhful look, than ordinary; and it was then only, as I have already ſaid, that ſhe confeſſed ſhe had arrived the evening before. I reproached her in the ſevereſt terms for having thus concealed herſelf from me, and I begged her to tell me the reaſon; but, notwithſtanding all I could ſay, ſhe gave me no poſitive anſwer. Her ſilence in this reſpect was carried even to obſtinacy. At length, as if afraid that ſhe had raiſed her hopes too high, ſhe became more timid in proportion as ſhe gueſſed the ſuſpicions that I ſeemed to entertain on her account: this reſerve made me love her more. The coffee was ready, and I gave her a ſhare of my breakfaſt.

The whole of this day was ſpent likewiſe in dancing and merriment; but next morning the whole horde, attracted by curioſity, arrived at my camp. Some were coming, and others were departing; ſo that they croſſed each other in all parts on the way. This ſpectacle appeared

to

to me like the moving picture of a village feſtival, and I received them all with equal cordiality. Having enquired concerning my poor patient, I received an anſwer which gave me great pleaſure. They told me that he never ſpoke of me but with tears of gratitude; that he ſtill ſuffered very much; but that there had been a great change in his ſituation by the cleanlineſs I had procured him. He at leaſt enjoyed the conſolation of ſeeing his companions, and of diſcourſing with them; for, confiding in my advice, they no longer feared to enter his hut, or to approach him. Their viſits, by engaging his thoughts, poured over his wounds a balm ſtill more ſalutary than plants; and made him in ſome meaſure forget his misfortunes. I doubt much whether he recovered after the deſperate condition in which I ſaw him; but if it was poſſible for him to get better, I think this moral remedy muſt have contributed not a little towards his relief. Can there be any fate more cruel than that of ſeeing oneſelf deſerted by one's friends and neareſt relations, and baniſhed from ſociety like an abandoned carcaſe, the ſight of which excites horror? Each related theſe particulars after his own manner, and accompanied them with thanks; which were the more ſincere in proportion as theſe people were more nearly connected with my patient, either by the ties of blood or friendſhip.

The proceſſion did not ceaſe till the afternoon of the ſecond day, when theſe worthy Gonaquas took leave of my camp to return to their horde. I could not help recommending my patient to them in the moſt earneſt manner; and I told them that the care they might take of him would be the moſt flattering mark of eſteem and reſpect

ſpect they could confer upon me. I charged Narina in particular to carry him, in my name, a ſmall proviſion of tobacco; I then gave a few more preſents to this young ſavage, and ſuffered her to depart.

I had been very little in the company of this girl; but the attachment I had conceived for her was ſo natural and ſimple, I was ſo much accuſtomed to her manners, and I found ſo much analogy between her diſpoſition and mine, that I could ſcarcely perſuade myſelf that our acquaintance was of ſo ſhort a date, and that it was to terminate ſo ſoon. I thought I muſt admire her for the laſt time———but other cares and other views——

It is time to obſerve that the women of this country had not behaved with my people in the ſame manner as thoſe of the river Gamtoos: they ſhewed the greateſt reſerve; and when the men departed, not one of them remained behind.

I confeſs that the viſits of theſe people, who came in great bodies too often, and remained too long, began at length to diſpleaſe me; for I feared, and with great reaſon, that ſome diſturbance might ariſe around me, or that my people would acquire a taſte for diſſipation. They had all already begun to relax in their duty; hunting ſeemed to engage their attention leſs than before; and almoſt every moment of their time was employed in dancing. The people entruſted with the care of keeping and feeding my cattle, ſeemed to perform this buſineſs with reluctance, and ſuffered them to ſtray wherever they thought proper; while others abſented themſelves during night, and returned only in the morning to ſleep. I thought, however, that it would be good

policy

policy in me to wink at these petty abuses, and to bring them all back gradually to their duty. The heat now began to grow insupportable; the sun, having passed the equator, darted his rays perpendicularly upon us, and scorched us so much that it would have been dangerous to expose ourselves in the hottest time of the day; and my tent, during these moments, was converted into a real stove, which I was obliged to abandon. These were sufficient motives to induce me to transport my penates to a place better shaded, under some thick grove; but I remembered the rendezvous where I appointed to meet the envoys I had sent to the Caffres. It might happen that, not finding me in their return at Koks-Kraal, they might imagine either that some unforeseen misfortune had befallen me; or that, tired of waiting for them, I had resolved to depart, and continue my journey. Such a step would have thrown them into the utmost embarrassment; and, for my part, I was too much interested in the fate of my two friends to desert them; nor would all the birds of Africa have induced me to be guilty of so base an action. I resolved, therefore, to remain where I was till they should arrive; but I determined to bring back all my people to their former exercises, and I myself first gave the example.

I did not fail either, according to my usual custom, to devote a part of every evening to my journal; and it was here that I at length began to be acquainted with those differences which distinguish one Hottentot from another, and particularly the Gonaquas from all the other hordes I had before seen.

The kraal of Haabas, at the distance of about four hundred paces from the river Groot-Vis,

was

was ſituated on the declivity of a little hill, which extended with an eaſy ſlope to the bottom of a chain of mountains, clothed with a foreſt of very large trees; a ſmall rivulet interſected it in the middle, and diſcharged itſelf into the river. All the huts, to the number of almoſt forty, built upon a ſpace about ſix hundred feet ſquare, formed ſeveral creſcents, and were all connected together by ſmall encloſures belonging to each. In theſe every different family ſhut up, in the day time, their calves and their lambs, which are not ſuffered to follow their mothers; and which ſuck only in the morning and evening, when the women milk the cows and the ſhe goats. Beſides theſe, there were three large encloſures well fenced round, which were deſtined for confining, during the night only, the whole flocks of the horde.

The huts, conſtructed like thoſe of the Hottentots in the colonies, were eight or nine feet in diameter, and were covered with ox or ſheep ſkins, but more commonly with mats. They had only one opening, very narrow and low; and it was in the middle of the hut that the family kindled their fire. The thick ſmoke with which theſe kennels were filled, and which had no other vent but the door, added to the ſtench which they always retain, would have ſtifled any European who might have had the courage to remain in them two minutes: cuſtom, however, renders all this ſupportable to theſe ſavages. Indeed they do not continue in them during the day; but on the approach of night each returns to his habitation, ſpreads out his mat, covers it with a ſheep's ſkin, and ſleeps as ſoundly upon it as if he lay on the ſofteſt down. When the nights are too cold, they uſe for a covering a

ſkin

ſkin like that upon which I lay; the Gonaquas always procure them by barter. In the morning theſe beds are rolled up, and placed in a corner of the hut; and, if the weather is fine, they expoſe them to the air and the ſun. They then beat them, one after another, to ſhake off, not bugs as in Europe, but inſects, and another kind of vermin no leſs troubleſome, to which the exceſſive heat of the climate renders theſe ſavages very ſubject, and which they are not able to get rid of notwithſtanding all their care and attention. When they have no preſſing buſineſs to employ them, they make ſtrict ſearch for theſe vermin, which they deſtroy with their teeth: this appears to them the eaſieſt and readieſt method.

Some author, I know not who, has thought proper to believe that theſe vermin are a ready reſource for the Hottentots, and form part of their nouriſhment, and perhaps even a delicacy. Nothing can be more falſe than this ridiculous aſſertion: on the contrary, I can ſafely declare that they perform this office or ceremony with as much diſguſt as our women or ſervant maids perform it with contrary ſenſations with reſpect to our children.

I have before advanced that the Gonaqua women aſſume in their dreſs an air of elegance unknown to the Hottentots of the colonies. Their garments, however, do not differ in their ſhape, except that the former wear them larger; and that the apron of modeſty, which they call *neuyp-kroſs*, is wider, and deſcends almoſt to the knees. But it is in ornaments, I might rather ſay the embroidery laviſhed on their dreſſes, that the riches and magnificence upon which they pique themſelves conſiſt. It is, above all, in the arrangement

arrangement of the apron that they diſplay their art and their taſte, The deſign, the diſtribution of the compartments, and the mixture of the colours, all are particularly attended to. The more their veſtments are loaded with beads, the more they are eſteemed ; and they even ornament their bonnets with them. Theſe bonnets, if poſſible, are made of the hide of the zebra ; becauſe the white ſkin of that animal, interſected by brown or black ſtripes, gives a kind of relief to their phyſiognomy ; and, as they themſelves expreſs it, adds ſomething more enticing to their charms. Beſides this, they are more or leſs ſumptuous according to the beads and glaſs ornaments which they poſſeſs, and with which they encumber their bodies. They alſo make tiſſues, with which they adorn their legs, in the manner of half-boots. Thoſe who cannot attain to this degree of magnificence, confine themſelves, eſpecially for the legs, to ornament them with the ſame reeds as thoſe of which they make their mats, or with ox-hide cut into thongs, and beat into a round form by a mallet. It is this cuſtom which has induced ſveeral travellers, copying their accounts from one another, to ſay that theſe people ſurround their arms and legs with the inteſtines of animals torn from their bodies as ſoon as they are killed ; and that they devour theſe ornaments in proportion as they become putrid—a groſs error, which deſerves to be buried in oblivion with the works by which it has been propagated. It has ſometimes happened, perhaps, that a Hottentot, preſſed by hunger, may have employed this reſource as the only means of preſerving his exiſtence, and devoured both his thongs and his ſandals ; but, becauſe the horrors of a ſiege have compelled civilized people to

contend for the vileſt food, muſt we conclude that uncivilized nations eat rags and naſtineſs ?

At firſt, theſe bandages of leather and reeds with which the Hottentots ſurrounded their legs were only an indiſpenſable preſervative againſt the pricking of briars and thorns, and the biting of ſerpents, which abound in theſe regions of Africa ; but luxury transforms into abuſes the moſt uſeful inventions. In place of thoſe pieces of ſkin which were ſo ſerviceable, the women have ſubſtituted beads, which, on account of their fragility, are not of long duration. Thus, among ſavages, as among the moſt enlightened nations, the wiſeſt and the beſt combined inſtitutions are at length perverted and corrupted.

The luxury of the Hottentots, however ill underſtood it may appear, ſufficiently announces that vanity belongs and is extended to all climates ; and that, in ſpite even of nature, a woman is always a woman. The habit I was in of continually ſeeing the Hottentots, never reconciled me to their practice of painting their bodies in a thouſand different ways. I always found it hideous and diſguſting ; nor do I know what charms they pretend to receive from this daubing, which is not only ridiculous, but even fetid.

I have already given the figure of a *Hottentot lady* in all the luxury of her attire ; and I can aſſure the reader that in this portrait there is nothing overcharged or exaggerated.

The two colours for which they ſhew the greateſt fondneſs are red and black. The firſt is compoſed of a kind of ochry earth, which is found in ſeveral places of the country, and which they mix and dilute with greaſe : this earth has a great reſemblance to brick-duſt, or tiles reduced to powder. Their black is nothing elſe than

ſoot,

ſoot, or the charcoal of tender wood. Some women indeed are contented with painting only the prominence of the cheeks; but in general they daub over their whole body, in compartments varied with a certain degree of ſymmetry: and this part of their dreſs requires no ſmall length of time.

Theſe two colours ſo much admired by the Hottentots, are always perfumed with the powder of the *boughou*, which is not very agreeable to the ſmell of an European. A Hottentot, perhaps, would find our odours and eſſences no leſs inſupportable; but the *boughou*, has over our rouge and paſtes the advantage of not being pernicious to the ſkin, of not attacking and injuring the lungs; and the female Hottentot, who is acquainted with neither amber, muſk, nor benjamin, never knows what it is to be oppreſſed by vapours, ſpaſms, and the head-ache.

The men never paint their faces; but I have often ſeen them uſe a preparation made of both colours mixed, to paint the upper lip as far as the noſtrils; by which they enjoyed the advantage of continually inhaling the odour of the ſubſtance employed for this purpoſe. Young girls ſometimes favour their lovers ſo far as to apply this paint for them under the noſe; and on this point they ſhew a kind of coquetry which has a very powerful influence over the heart of a Hottentot novice. The reader, however, muſt not infer, from what I have ſaid, that the Hottentot women pay ſo much attention to dreſs as to neglect thoſe daily and uſeful occupations to which nature and their uſages call them. I never heard them ſpeak of it but on certain feſtivals which happen very rarely. Separated from Europe by an immenſity of ſea, and from the Dutch colo-

nies by deſart mountains and impaſſable rocks, too much communication with theſe people has not yet led them to the exceſſes of our depravation: on the contrary, when they have the happineſs of being mothers, Nature addreſſes them in a different language; they aſſume, more than in any other country, a ſpirit ſuitable to their ſtate, and readily give themſelves up to thoſe cares which ſhe imperiouſly requires from them. As ſoon as a child is born, it never quits the back of its mother; ſhe there fixes her dear burthen by means of an apron, which keeps it cloſe to her body; and another tied with thongs, under the infant's thighs, ſupports it, and prevents it from gliding down. This ſecond apron, formed, like the firſt, of the ſkin of ſome wild animal, is generally ornamented with beads; and this is all that compoſes the furniture of the new-born child. Whether the mother goes to work or to a ball, and even though ſhe dance, ſhe never quits her child. The latter, of which nothing is ſeen but the head, never cries or ſqualls except when it has occaſion to ſuck. The mother then turns it and draws it on one ſide; nor is it neceſſary for her to untie it, except when ſhe is advanced in years, or has had ſeveral children. Without diſplacing the one ſhe carries, ſhe conveys her breaſt to it under her arm, or throws it over her ſhoulder; the child, ſatisfied, then ceaſes to cry; and the nurſe continues her dancing.

When the mother judges that it is in a condition to crawl and to aſſiſt itſelf, ſhe places it on the ground before her hut; and by force of creeping it learns the uſe of its limbs, and from day to day tries to ſtand upright: one attempt conducts to a ſecond; it becomes bold, and ſoon acquires

acquires ſufficient ſtrength to run and to follow its mother. This method, ſo ſimple and natural, is in my opinion much ſuperior to our leading-ſtrings, which cruſh and confine the breaſt. The diſproportion between the ſtrength of their legs and the weight of their bodies, which obliges our children to hang upon theſe too officious ſupporters, often lames them, at leaſt ruins their health and diſfigures them during the remainder of their days.

Never did I, either in America or Africa, meet with a lame or deformed perſon among the ſavages: to find theſe one muſt travel in Europe.

What ſtill contributes to give the children of ſavages that agility and ſtrength by which they are diſtinguiſhed, is the care taken by their mothers to rub their bodies with mutton greaſe. The men themſelves think it neceſſary to to uſe this precaution, which reſtores to the ſkin that pliableneſs which the impetuoſity of the winds and the heat of the ſun take from it.

Leſs favoured by the productions of the African climates than the Caribs are by thoſe of America, the Hottentot does not, like the latter, enjoy the benefit of the *roçou*, which renders them a very eſſential ſervice. It is well known that this tree produces a kind of fruit or pod which divides itſelf into two parts, and ſheds about ſixty grains, the pellicle of which is oily, and of a reddiſh colour. The Indian, who always goes naked, never fails to rub himſelf with theſe every morning from head to foot; and by means of this unction he preſerves himſelf from ſun ſtrokes, and from being ſtung by moſquitoes, and checks perſpiration, generally too copious between the tropies.

When

When a Hottentot woman is ready to lie in, ſhe is viſited by an old woman of the horde, who attends her while in labour, and her delivery is always eaſy. The ſymphyſis and Cæſarian operation are not known among theſe ſavages. No conſultations are ever held, nor do they debate whether they muſt ſave the child at the expence of the life of the mother; and ſhould it happen, but this is extremely rare, that the life of both could not be preſerved, a horrid diſtinction would certainly not order the mother to be aſſaſſinated, and the child would not be ſpared.

I enquired of the Hottentots themſelves whether it was true that a mother who brings forth twins inſtantly deſtroys one of them. This crime againſt nature is indeed very rare, and theſe people revolt at the idea of it; but it has its ſource, however incredible it may ſeem, in the tendereſt love. It is a dread of not being able to nouriſh two children, or of ſeeing them both periſh, that has induced ſome mothers to ſacrifice one of them. Beſides, the Gonaquas are exempt from this reproach; and I obſerved that they were not pleaſed with my queſtion. But by what right dare we make it criminal in theſe ſavages to uſe this precaution, for which I have given at leaſt a plauſible motive, whilſt in the heart of the moſt enlighted nations, notwithſtanding the number of hoſpitals opened by benevolence, we every day ſee mothers unnatural enough to expoſe with their own hands, and to abandon in the ſtreets, the innocent fruits of their womb?

It would therefore be an unjuſt calumny againſt theſe people, to give as a conſtant practice a few barbarous actions which they condemn, and which

which they belie ſo well by their conduct. In more than one horde I have met mothers who ſuckled twins, and who did not ſeem to be in the leaſt embarraſſed with them.

Travellers, however, have not heſitated to maintain that this barbarous practice exiſts; and what Dr. Sparmann relates in his Voyage to the Cope*, reſpecting the fate of children at the breaſt who loſe their mothers, is equally void of foundation.

"Another cuſtom, no leſs horrid," ſays he, "which has not been hitherto remarked by any "one, but which I have been *fully aſſured* exiſts "amongſt the Hottentots, is that, if a mother "happens to die, the child at the breaſt is in-"terred alive with her. This very year, in "the place where I was, the following circum-"ſtance happened:—A Hottentot woman hav-"ing died on the farm of an epidemical diſtem-"per, the reſt of the Hottentots, who thought "that they were not in a condition to educate "the female child which ſhe left, or who were "unwilling to take the burden of it, had wrap-"ped it up, ſtill alive, in a ſheep's ſkin, in or-"der to inter it with the deceaſed mother; but "ſome farmers in the neighbourhood prevent-"ed them from accompliſhing their deſign. "My landlady, who was already advanced in "years, told me that ſhe herſelf, about ſixteen "or ſeventeen years before, found in the quar-"ter of Swellendam a Hottentot child wrap-"ped up in ſkins, tied faſt to a tree, near the "place where its mother had been recently in-"terred. Enough of life was ſtill remaining in "this

* Vol. ii. p. 73.

" this child to be ſaved, and it was carried away " by Mrs. Kock's relations; but it died at the " age of eight or nine. It reſults from this in- " ſtance, and from ſeveral others which I learned " from the planters," &c.

We muſt conclude, from the words of this botaniſt, that he ſaw nothing of what he relates, ſince he declares, as he does throughout his whole work, that he received his information from the planters. He muſt have been too much in their company to be ignorant how far one ought to depend on their memories or their judgment; and on this account he might have ſpared us the trouble of reading a great number of fables which ought to have been exploded. It is not by hearſay that we are to judge of people, or to compare them with others. In the moſt faithful and juſt relation how many circumſtances eſcape us which would throw light upon facts, always ill underſtood when one has not been an eyewitneſs! Was not the epidemical diſtemper, of which he ſays the firſt mother died, a ſufficient reaſon to alarm the Hottentots, and to make them remove both from the dead body and the child, through a dread of being infected; which, conſidering their prejudice, is a ſufficient motive to induce them to abandon every thing in an inſtant, even their flocks, which are their only riches? With regard to the ſecond child, found in the canton of Swellendam, the caſe perhaps might have been the ſame; and until a reaſonable cauſe is aſſigned for this barbarity, I ſhall vindicate the character of the mildeſt and moſt affectionate people that I know. In ſhort, ſuch ridiculous tales reſpecting theſe ſavages would have been long ſince forgotten with the hiſtory of witches

and

and apparitions, were there not old women to repeat them, and children to read them.

It would appear that ſome people take a delight in decrying uncivilized nations all over the globe, who are known to be the moſt peaceable and the moſt patient; whilſt, filled with eſteem and reſpect for the eaſtern nations, the Chineſe for example, they paſs ſlightly over a cuſtom prevalent among mothers at Pekin of expoſing in the ſtreets during night all the children which they wiſh to get rid of, that at break of day the carriages and cattle as they paſs may cruſh them to death, or that they may be devoured by the hogs. Certain travellers who have viſited Aſia inform us that the great lords in Thibet go on a pilgrimage to Putola, the reſidence of the Grand Lama, to procure ſome of the excrement of this ſovereign high prieſt; and that they carry it about their necks in amulets, or ſprinkle it like pepper over their food.

Has this filthy ceremony any thing more diſguſting in it than that falſely aſcribed to the Hottentots in the celebration of their marriages? Maſters of ceremony, which they have not—or rather prieſts, with whom they are ſtill leſs acquainted, are ſuppoſed to have the ſupernatural power of drenching from the urinary paſſage the bride and bridegroom, who proſtrated at the feet of the perſon who beſprinkles them, devoutly receive the liquor, and carefully rub it over their whole bodes, without loſing a ſingle drop. The author whom I have already quoted is ſtrongly inclined to believe all theſe rhapſodies on the ſimple relation of the planters, when he ſays that theſe marriage rites are not deſtitute of foundation; but that this cuſtom is no longer practiſed

tiſed except in the interior part of the kraals, and never in preſence of the planters.

Kolben has ſpoken of this ceremony in the minuteſt manner; and he has even expoſed it to the eyes of his readers in an engraving, in order to give it a kind of authenticity. Other ignorant writers have copied Kolben, and even the author of the French tranſlation of Dr. Sparmann; to which he has been pleaſed to add, in order to complete the laſt volume, I know not what extract from *A New Syſtem of Geography*. I indeed never read any voyage to Africa in which the abſurd reveries of Kolben have not been adopted. This plagiariſm, which diſgraces the work of a reſpectable writer, deſerves no credit. The dreams of the ſedentary traveller who wrote above eighty years ago, are there related word for word, not only reſpecting the marriage ceremony of the Hottentots, but alſo concerning their reception into an order of chivalry, which terminates likewiſe by a general immerſion. I have dwelt too long on theſe details; but it is my duty to relate faithfully what I ſaw, and what concluſions I have thence formed.

The Hottentot women, as well as thoſe of Europe, are ſubject to periodical indiſpoſitions; and all the circumſtances attending them are abſolutely the ſame. The wife or daughter of a Gonaqua, when ſhe perceives her ſituation, immediately leaves the hut of her huſband or parents, retires to ſome diſtance from the horde, has no more communication with them, conſtructs a kind of habitation for herſelf, if it be cold, and remains ſhut up there, until, being purified by bathing, ſhe is in a condition to appear again in public. As in ſuch circumſtances the dreſs of theſe ſavages is very ill calculated to conceal

conceal a woman's condition, ſhe would be expoſed to ſevere raillery if any one ſhould obſerve it; nothing more would be neceſſary to inſpire her intended ſpouſe with diſguſt, which would terminate by a ſpeedy ſeparation. It is therefore a natural ſhame, founded upon a ſenſe of her own imperfection, and a dread of diſpleaſing, that induces a woman to abſent herſelf in this manner for ſeveral days: and this is one of thoſe cuſtoms which might have been eaſily taken for a religious ceremony, by people who, having obſerved it only ſuperficially, did not ſee that ſuch a conduct, myſterious in appearance, is at bottom only an act of decency and cleanlineſs.

Young women never have any intercourſe with the men until they are capable of producing children. They are marriageable at the age of twelve or thirteen; and after that period, as ſoon as they meet with a young man agreeable to their taſte, they are permitted by their parents to live with him.

In this country, where all are equal by their birth, provided they are males, all ranks are conſequently equal, or rather there is no rank at all. Luxury and vanity, which eat up wealth, and make it experience ſo many changes, in other countries, are not known among theſe ſavages: confined to the ſimple wants of nature, the means by which they ſupply them not being excluſive, they may be, and indeed they are, employed by every one. All the combinations of pride for the proſperity of families, and the accumulation of perhaps ten fortunes in the ſame money cheſt, produce no intrigues, diſorder, or crimes. Parents having no reaſons for oppoſing thoſe ſentiments of prepoſſeſſion which lead a child towards one object rather than to another, all marriages being

being founded on a reciprocal affection, are always attended with happineſs; and as, to preſerve them, they know no other law but love, they have no other motive for diſſolving them but indifference. Theſe unions, formed by ſimple nature, are more laſting than might be expected amongſt theſe ſhepherds; and their love for their children renders both the parties every day more and more neceſſary to one another.

The formality of theſe marriages conſiſt then in a ſimple and ſincere promiſe of living together as long as may be agreeable. When two young people enter into this engagement, they inſtantly become man and wife; and this alliance is certainly not ſolemnized by thoſe ridiculous and filthy aſperſions of which I have ſpoken. A few ſheep, and ſometimes an ox, are killed to celebrate this little feſtival: the parents give a few cattle to the young couple; and the latter conſtruct a hut, and take poſſeſſion of it the ſame day, to live there together as long as love may preſerve harmony between them: for, as I have ſaid, if any difference ariſes in the family which cannot be reconciled but by a ſeparation, it ſoon takes place. They quit one another; and each ſeeking a happier ſituation elſewhere, is at liberty to marry again. Eſtabliſhed order requires that the common effects ſhould be divided in an amicable manner: but ſhould it happen that the huſband, in quality of maſter, pretends to retain the whole, the wife on that account is never deſtitute of protectors and ſupport; the family ſtand up in her defence, and ſometimes the whole horde. Much diſputing then enſues; the conſequence is that they come to blows, and the ſtronger party give laws to the other.

The

The mother takes with her the young children, eſpecially if they be daughters; the boys, if they be grown up, follow the father, and are always on his ſide.

Theſe misfortunes, it muſt be confeſſed, are very rare; but what is no leſs worthy of remark, is, that in ſuch caſe, as well as in their other quarrels, there is no law, and no eſtabliſhed cuſtom, by which good order can be reſtored. We muſt conſider as abſurdities what Kolben has ſaid reſpecting their courts of juſtice, their manner of proceeding in civil affairs, the ſuperior council of the nation, their priſons, their public aſſemblies, and in a word all thoſe inſtitutions which ill agree with the name of ſavage, ſince a people ſo governed would in nothing differ from us but in colour and climate. I never ſaw or heard that a quarrel ended by a murder; but if this misfortune ſhould happen, and if the death be regretted, the family, exceedingly moderate in their vengeance, would be contented with the law of retribution. For ſo atrocious a crime the whole horde would purſue the aſſaſſin, and compel him to quit the country, if he eſcaped being put to death.

Polygamy is not at all repugnant to the ſentiments of the Hottentots; but it is far from being generally eſtabliſhed among them. They take as many wives as they chooſe; that is to ſay, in proportion to their conſtitution; and this generally reduces the number to one.

It is never, however, obſerved that one woman lives with two men; and the wiſdom of nature, which was deſirous that a father might be able to acknowledge his children, impreſſed on the heart of the Gonaquas an invincible abhorrence of this infamous proſtitution. It ſhocks theſe people

people ſo much, that a huſband, acquainted with the ſlighteſt act of infidelity in his ſpouſe, may immediately put her to death, without running the riſk of being puniſhed for it.

It may be readily judged that this remark is liable to ſome exceptions; and the reader will recollect with what familiarity the firſt free Hottentots I met mixed among mine: but, being nearer the colony, example is a very powerful ſeducer; and I even confeſs that it would be difficult, among theſe ſavages, for the conjugal knot to reſiſt the ſolicitations and coaxing of an European. A Hottentot woman, honoured by being overcome, looks upon her huſband afterwards with a kind of haughtineſs, and quits him with contempt. The latter, on his ſide, ſoon becomes comforted, and ſuffers himſelf to be eaſily appeaſed by trifling preſents: but even this reſource is uſeleſs; and, as I have already ſaid, in conſequence of their primitive manners being corrupted, they are leſs ſuſceptible of jealouſy, and are far from experiencing its madneſs.

A Gonaqua man beſtows much leſs attention on dreſs than the women. It has been ſaid that in winter they wear their kroſs with the woolly ſide innermoſt, and that in hot weather they turn it. This indeed is poſſible, and very indifferent in itſelf; but it however does not prevent them from having one in ſummer abſolutely free from wool, the preparation of which coſts a great deal of trouble. I have remarked that the Gonaquas are taller than the Hottentots of the colonies, and that their kroſſes are made of calves ſkins. One of theſe ſkins is ſeldom ſufficient; and they generally make it larger by adding to each ſide a piece which they ſtitch to it with thread made of inteſtines. This ſewing is executed

cuted in the ſame manner as that of ſhoemakers; and, to form the holes, theſe ſavages employ an awl of iron, when they can find it; but, when they cannot, they uſe one made of bone: thoſe made of the leg bone of an oſtrich, which is the hardeſt they know, are thoſe upon which they ſet the higheſt value. There are two methods of freeing a kroſs from hair: when the animal has been newly flayed, and while the ſkin is ſtill freſh, they only roll it up with the hair inward, and leave it in this ſtate for two days, which are ſufficient to produce a fermentation. When this begins, they tear off the hair, which almoſt drops of itſelf; and then, by rubbing, give the ſkin a kind of preparation. It is afterward left for a whole day entirely covered with leaves of the Hottentot fig-tree, well ſoaked and pounded; and when this operation is finiſhed, the fibres, and all the fleſhy parts that can be perceived, are ſcraped away; till at length, by force of rubbing it with mutton greaſe, the kroſs acquires all the ſoftneſs and flexibility of woven cloth. It may be readily perceived that this proceſs differs very little from thoſe employed by furriers and tanners in Europe; but, with whatever ingenuity the Hottentots may prepare their fur and ſkins, they will never approach ours until they have paſſed through the hands of the perfumer.

If the ſkin be dry, and, whether it has been uſed or not, retains the hair; and if a Hottentot, for want of another, wiſhes to convert it into a kroſs for ſummer, this labour requires other care, and it becomes much more tedious and minute. With the rib bone of a ſheep he forms a kind of chiſel, which muſt be made as ſharp as poſſible; and this inſtrument, which ſerves to detach the hair, muſt be managed with great precaution.

caution. It is not ſufficient to ſhave the hair, it is neceſſary that it ſhould be pulled out by the roots; and that it bring the epidermis along with it, without damaging the texture of the ſkin. This work of patience requires extraordinary ſkill and a great deal of time. A Gonaqua, I again repeat it, has no other clothes but his kroſs and his jackal; and he always goes bareheaded, unleſs the weather be rainy or cold: in ſuch caſes, he wears a cap made of leather. He ornaments his hair with a few glaſs beads, or affixes a plume of feathers to it. I have ſeen ſome who ſubſtituted, in the place of this decoration, ſmall bits of leather cut into different forms; and others, when they kill ſmall birds, blow up the bladder, and faſten it like a tuft over their foreheads.

All in general uſe ſandals, which they tie with leather thongs: they ornament alſo, but with leſs profuſion than the women, their legs and arms with ivory bracelets, the whiteneſs of which affords them much pleaſure; but they do not however value them ſo highly as thoſe of large braſs wire. They take ſo much care of the latter, and ſcour them ſo often, that they become exceedingly brilliant, and retain a moſt beautiful poliſh.

They are remarkably fond of hunting; and in this exerciſe they diſplay great dexterity. Beſides gins and ſnares, which they place in convenient ſpots to catch large animals, they lie in wait for them alſo, attack them as ſoon as they appear, and kill them with their poiſoned arrows, or their aſſagays. When an animal is wounded by the former, it inſtantly feels the effects of the poiſon, which coagulates its blood; and it often happens that an elephant, wounded in this manner, falls at the diſtance of twenty or thirty

thirty leagues from the place where it received the deadly blow. As ſoon as an animal expires, they are contented with cutting away all the fleſh near the wound, which they conſider as dangerous; but the reſt ſuſtains no injury from the force of the poiſon. I have often eat the fleſh of animals killed in this manner, without experiencing the ſlighteſt inconvenience; but I muſt own that I would not run the ſame riſque with reſpect to animals which have retained the poiſon in their bodies for ſome time.

On the firſt view of their arrows, one would not ſuſpect how deſtructive weapons they are. They will neither fly ſo far, nor are they ſo long, as thoſe uſed by the Caribs in America; but even their ſmallneſs renders them ſo much the more dangerous, as it is impoſſible to perceive and follow them with the eye, and conſequently to avoid them. The ſlighteſt wound which they make always proves mortal, if the poiſon reaches the blood, and if the fleſh be torn. The ſureſt remedy is to amputate the wounded part, if it be a limb; but if the wound be in the body, death is unavoidable.

Theſe arrows are made of reeds, and very curiouſly formed. They are only eighteen inches, or at moſt two feet, in length; whereas thoſe of the Caribs are ſix feet. Having rounded a ſmall bone three or four inches in length, and leſs in diameter than the reed, theſe Hottentots thruſt it into one of the ends of the arrow, but without fixing it; on this account, when the arrow penetrates any body, the rod may be drawn out, but the bone remains in the wound; becauſe it is armed with a ſmall iron hook, placed on one of its ſides in ſuch a manner, that by its reſiſtance, and the new lacerations it occaſions in

the fleſh, it renders uſeleſs all thoſe means which art might deviſe to extract it. This bone alſo is dipped in a poiſon which has the conſiſtence of maſtich; and they often add to its point a ſmall triangular bit of iron well ſharpened, which renders the weapon ſtill more terrible.

Each horde has a peculiar method of compoſing their poiſons, according to the different milky plants which grow in their neighbourhood, the dangerous juice of which they extract. They procure ſome alſo from certain kinds of ſerpents; and theſe, for their activity, are thoſe which are moſt ſought after by theſe ſavages, and which they prefer to all others, eſpecially in their expeditions and combats. It is not poſſible to draw any certain information from them reſpecting their manner of preparing that poiſon which they extract from ſerpents: it is a ſecret which they ſo carefully conceal, that all I can affirm concerning it is, that it operates very ſpeedily; and I often had occaſion to make experiments with it. I am however inclined to think that, as it grows old, this poiſon loſes much of its ſtrength, notwithſtanding the trial made of it in the king's garden at Paris, the ſucceſs of which may be warranted. But theſe poiſons, as I have already ſaid, do not reſemble one another: that which Mr. Condamine brought with him, on his return from Peru, does not eſtabliſh a law for Africa. Beſides, it is an experiment which might eaſily be repeated in the preſence of ſcientific men; ſince I have in my collection, beſides other arms, a quiver filled with theſe arrows, which I took from one of the Boſhmen Hottentots, during an action in which I ſaved my own life at the expence of his.

Their

Their bows are proportioned to their arrows, and are not above two feet and a half, or at moſt three feet, in length: the ſtring is formed of inteſtines.

The aſſagay is generally a very feeble weapon in the hands of a Hottentot; but, beſides this, as its length renders it not dangerous, for it may be ſeen cleaving the air, it is not difficult to avoid it. Beyond the diſtance of forty paces, the perſon who darts it is not ſure of his aim, although the Hottentots are able to throw it much farther: it is only in a cloſe engagement that it can be of any utility. It has the ſame ſhape as a lance in every other country; but as it is intended to be thrown at the enemy, or at animals, the wood of thoſe uſed in Africa is much lighter and weaker, and continues diminiſhing in thickneſs to the extremity oppoſite to the iron point.

The uſe of theſe weapons is very ill underſtood; for the warrior who wields them with the greateſt ſkill is alſo the ſooneſt diſarmed. The Gonaquas, and all the other Hottentots, never carry but one; and the embarraſſment which they generally cauſe, as well as the little advantage they derive from them, ſufficiently prove that they are not their favourite means of defence; which may lead us to conclude that bows and arrows are the natural and proper arms of a Hottentot. I have ſeen ſome of them that diſplayed much addreſs in throwing the aſſagay; but the greater part of them are entirely unacquainted with it. The caſe however is not the ſame with the Caffres, who have no other weapons; but of theſe I ſhall ſpeak hereafter.

Such are the means for attacking or defending uſed by ſome of the ſavage nations of Africa.

They may perhaps incite the indignation of an European, and induce him to tax theſe people with barbarity; but it muſt be remembered that the Europeans, before they employed that terrible thunder which in a moment cauſes ſo much devaſtation and ruin, had no other arms but thoſe made of ſteel, and knew alſo the method of ſending a double death to the enemy.

The Hottentots have not the leaſt notion of the elements of agriculture; they neither ſow or plant, nor do they ever reap any crop. All that Kolben has ſaid reſpecting their manner of cultivating the earth, of gathering in their grain, and of churning their butter, concerns the planters only, and the Hottentots in their ſervice. The ſavages drink their milk as nature gives it; and if they conceived a taſte for agriculture, tobacco and the vine would undoubtedly be the principal objects of their attention: for ſmoking and drinking are their ruling pleaſures; and all, whether old or young, married or unmarried, are much addicted to both.

When they chooſe to give themſelves the trouble, they make an intoxicating liquor, compoſed of honey and a certain root, which they ſuffer to ferment in a proper quantity of water. This liquor, which is a kind of hydromel, is not their uſual beverage, nor do they ever keep a ſtock of it by them. Whatever they have, they drink all at once, and frequently regale themſelves in this manner at certain periods.

They ſmoke the leaves of a plant which they name *dagha*, and not *daka*, as ſome authors have written. This plant is not indigenous; it is the hemp of Europe. It is cultivated by ſome of the planters; and when they have dried the leaves, they ſell them to the Hottentots, or exchange

change them for oxen. There are ſome of the ſavages who prefer theſe leaves to tobacco; but the greater part of them are fond of mixing both together.

They ſet leſs value on the pipes brought from Europe than on thoſe which they fabricate themſelves; the former appear to them to be too ſmall. For making theſe pipes they employ the bamboo reed, baked earth, or a ſoft kind of ſtone, which they cut and ſcoop out to a conſiderable depth, without breaking it. They generally make them very large; for the more they are capable of containing, the more valuable they are. I have ſeen ſome, the ſhanks of which had an orifice of more than an inch in diameter.

None of the men among the Gonaquas give themſelves up peculiarly to any kind of labour, in order to gratify the whims of others. The woman who wiſhes to repoſe ſoftly, makes her own mats; the want of a dreſs forms a tailor; and the hunter who is deſirous of having ſure weapons, depends only upon thoſe which he forges himſelf: in ſhort, a lover is the ſole architect of the hut in which he intends to conceal the charms of his female companion.

I muſt confeſs that more intelligence and more art may be found among other nations. The only utenſils known in this country are formed of a kind of earthen ware exceedingly brittle, and are almoſt all ſhaped alike. The Gonoquas ſeldom boil their meat, as they prefer it roaſted or broiled. Their pottery is deſtined for the purpoſe of melting greaſe, which they afterwards preſerve in calibaſhes, bags made of ſheep's ſkins, or in bladders.

Though they rear abundance of ſheep and oxen, they ſeldom kill the latter, unleſs ſome accident

accident happens to them, or old age has rendered them unfit for ſervice. Their principal nouriſhment, therefore, is the milk of their ewes and cows; beſides which, they have the produce of their hunting excurſions; and from time to time they kill a ſheep. To fatten their animals they employ a proceſs, which, though not practiſed in Europe, is no leſs efficacious; and has this peculiar advantage, that it requires no care. They bruiſe, between two flat ſtones, thoſe parts which we deprive them of by the knife; and when thus compreſſed they acquire in time a prodigious bulk, and become a moſt delicate morſel, when they have reſolved to ſacrifice the animal.

The cuſtom of breeding oxen for war is not practiſed in this part of Africa. I obſerved no veſtige of it in any of thoſe places through which I paſſed. It is peculiar to the Grand Nimiquas; and I ſhall ſpeak of it when I come to give an account of theſe people. The oxen which the Hottentots rear are uſed only in tranſporting their baggage, when they quit one place in order to eſtabliſh themſelves in another; the remainder are deſtined for procuring them neceſſaries by barter.

Thoſe oxen which they intend for carrying burdens muſt be broke and trained very early to this ſervice; otherwiſe they would become abſolutely untractable. On this account, when the animal is ſtill young, they pierce the cartilage which ſeparates the noſtrils, and thruſt through the hole a piece of ſtick about eight or ten inches in length, and almoſt an inch in diameter. To fix this ſtick, and to prevent it from dropping, they ſecure it with a leathern thong, which is faſtened to both its ends. This curb, which

ſerves

ſerves to ſtop and reſtrain the animal, is left in this poſition as long as it continues in life. When the ox has attained to its full ſtrength, or nearly ſo, they begin by accuſtoming it to endure a leathern girth, which they bind cloſer from time to time, without incommoding it; and they carry this to ſuch a degree, that any other animal with which the ſame precautions might not be taken, would be ſtifled by it, and inſtantly periſh. Some light burthens are then placed upon it, ſuch as hides, mats, &c; and thus, by gradually and inſenſibly increaſing the load, they render it fit to carry and retain on its back the weight of three hundred pounds and more; which is in nowiſe troubleſome to it when on a journey.

Their manner of loading an ox is very ſimple. A man placing himſelf before the animal, lays hold of the thong affixed to the ſmall ſtick that paſſes through its noſtrils; and this method renders the moſt furious calm and peaceable. Some ſkins are thrown over its back, to prevent it from being hurt; and in proportion as they lay on the effects which are to compoſe the load, two robuſt Hottentots, ſtanding one on each ſide, arrange and ſecure them by a leather girth, which goes ſeveral times round by paſſing under the animal's belly. Theſe girths are often above twenty yards in length: and, to faſten them more cloſely each time they paſs round the load, theſe men preſs their knees againſt the animal's ſides; while one ſees, with no leſs aſtoniſhment than pain, the poor brute, with its belly reduced to leſs than its ordinary ſize, endure this torture, and march along with the utmoſt compoſure. The Hottentots, who are not acquainted with the uſe of horſes, often mount theſe oxen; and

even

even in the colonies they are ſometimes employed by the inhabitants for the ſame purpoſe. The motion of an ox is very gentle, eſpecially when it trots; and I have ſeen ſome, which, trained entirely for riding, were not inferior in ſpeed to the fleeteſt horſe.

The taſk of milking the cows and the ewes belongs to the women: and, as they never beat or torment them, they are ſurpriſingly tractable; it is never neceſſary to tie them. It muſt be obſerved that a cow in Africa never gives milk when her calf dies, or is ſeparated from her; the Hottentots, therefore, carefully avoid theſe misfortunes, which would render the mother uſeleſs, and leſſen their moſt valuable reſource. The inſtinct which prompts the cow to retain her milk until her calf has ſucked her, is no leſs remarkable; but on theſe occaſions the Hottentots employ an eaſy method, generally practiſed, however diſguſting it may be. Whilſt a woman, ſquatted down, holds the animal's teat, another blows with great violence into her vagina; her belly then ſwells prodigiouſly, ſo that ſhe can no longer keep back her milk, but ſuffers it to flow in abundance.

If a calf happens to die, they preſerve its ſkin very carefully, and with much addreſs deceive the ſimple inſtinct of nature. They wrap it round the body of another calf; and, ſeduced by this artifice, the mother continues to yield her milk: but this ſtratagem ſeldom ſucceeds beyond the ſpace of a month. It is a real loſs to a proprietor when a calf dies; for, if it lives, the cow never ceaſes to give milk till within ſix weeks of her bringing forth again.

The African cows are abſolutely the ſame ſpecies as thoſe of Europe, and differ in no circumſtance

ſtance whatever; but, according as the different cantons are good or bad, they appear fatter or leaner. In general they give very little milk; thoſe which furniſh three or four pints a day are extraordinary phenomena. It appears that milk, one of the moſt agreeable gifts of nature, becomes ſcarcer, and dries up almoſt entirely, the more one approaches the warmeſt countries. I remember that at Surinam, not far from the Line, a cow which gave three or four pints was accounted a wonder: what ſtill ſerves to confirm the truth of my aſſertion is, that even at the Cape, in the rainy ſeaſon, when the atmoſphere is cooleſt, more milk is obtained; and the contrary is the caſe when the warm weather returns. It is then alſo that the ſeaſon moſt dangerous for theſe animals commences; and when they are ſubject to four deſtructive maladies, which occaſion dreadful devaſtation among the herds.

The firſt, called at the Cape *lam-ſikte*, is a real palſy, which comes on all of a ſudden; and though fat, and to appearance in perfect health, theſe animals are obliged to remain in a lying poſture, and they generally die in fifteen days. As ſoon as the diſtemper appears, thoſe which are ſtill free from the infection are ſent out of the country; and, as there is no remedy for this plague, the planters deſtroy thoſe attacked by it; and this they do with the more readineſs, as they have no averſion to eat the diſeaſed fleſh: above all, they make no difficulty in giving it to their ſlaves and Hottentots, who in their taſte are ſtill leſs delicate.

Another diſeaſe, the *tong-ſikte*, is a prodigious ſwelling of the tongue, which then fills the whole mouth and throat; and the animal is every moment in danger of being choaked.

This

This diſorder is more terrible in its conſequences than the other, though it is not incurable; but the remedy for it is ſo little known, and ſo badly adminiſtered, that it ſeldom operates with ſucceſs. Thoſe, therefore, which appear to be in a deſperate ſituation, are killed, in order that their fleſh and ſkins may not be loſt.

The *klaw-ſikte* attacks the feet of oxen, cauſes them to ſwell prodigiouſly, and often produces a ſuppuration: the hoof drops off; and when the animal walks, if one ſees it behind, it ſeems as if it wore ſlippers. It may readily be ſuppoſed that, while in ſuch a ſituation, great care is taken not to remove it from its place. It is, indeed, ſuffered to remain at reſt as long as the malady continues: it is an inconvenience not attended with any danger, and which terminates generally in a fortnight.

This, however, is not the caſe with reſpect to the *ſpong-ſikte*, a terrible ſcourge among horned cattle, and very alarming even for thoſe of the hordes. This plague, which ſpares nothing, cauſes ſpeedy deſtruction; and happy is he who does not loſe by it the half of his herd. It is a kind of leproſy, that may be communicated in an inſtant; and the fleſh of ſuch animals as are attacked by it, ſwells in an extraordinary manner, and grows ſpongy and livid. One would ſay that it was bruiſed, and in a ſtate of decompoſition: it becomes filled with a reddiſh viſcous humour; and is ſo diſguſting, that even dogs will not approach it. As ſoon as it is ſuſpected that the firſt ſymptoms of this peſtilence have appeared, if care has not been taken to remove thoſe animals which are not yet infected, whatever health or ſtrength they may enjoy, they cannot eſcape it.

Such

Such are the principal diſorders which, by their periodical ravages, eſtabliſh between the increaſe and the mortality of the cattle of Africa, a balance that obſtructs their proſperity, and without which theſe paſtoral people, very temperate in their manner of living, would ſoon become rich and powerful.

The ſheep which the ſavages breed in the eaſtern parts are of a ſpecies known under the name of the *Cape ſheep*. They have acquired conſiderable reputation from the ſize of their tails; but this has been greatly exaggerated: their ordinary weight is not above four or five pounds. During my reſidence at the Cape Town, one of theſe animals was carried from houſe to houſe as a wonder; and yet its tail, though much admired, did not weigh more than nine pounds and a half. It is abſolutely nothing elſe but a lump of fat, which has this peculiarity, that when melted it never acquires the conſiſtency of that found in other parts of the animal; it is a kind of congealed oil, which the Hottentots prefer to any other for their unctions, and for applying that powder which they call *boughou*. The planters employ it alſo in frying certain kinds of meat. When mixed with other greaſy ſubſtances, it becomes hard like butter, and is ſubſtituted for it, eſpecially in ſuch cantons of the colony as are too dry for breeding cows. On this account it is called, in the fertile parts of the country, in pleaſantry and by way of deriſion, the butter of ſuch or ſuch a place: at the Cape, for example, it is called the butter of *Swart-land*, a dry canton in which milk is exceedingly ſcarce.

The dry and burnt parts are fit only for goats, which are always of a fine breed. Their ſize varies

varies according to the different cantons; but, in general, they are every where excellent, and produce as much milk as the cows. They bring forth young twice a year, like ſheep; the latter for the moſt part bring two at a time; but the goats three, and very often four.

The Hottentots are not acquainted with hogs, and even the European planters diſdain to breed them. I have however ſeen ſome of them in particular cantons, where they are ſuffered to multiply and to live unconfined. To catch them one muſt purſue them, and kill them with a fuſee.

Poultry are not eſteemed among the Hottentots; beſides, they could not rear them, were they deſirous to do it; for, as they never ſow, they have no kind of grain.

The roots which they principally make uſe of, are confined to a very ſmall number. They never boil them, as they think them better when eat raw; and indeed experience convinced me that they are not in the wrong.

That which I preferred, known under the Hottentot name of *kamero*, is ſhaped like a radiſh, and is as large as a melon. It has a moſt ſweet and agreeable taſte, and is excellent for allaying thirſt; a wonderful precaution of nature, in a ſcorching climate, where one is in danger of periſhing at every ſtep; and where, at certain ſeaſons, there is not a ſingle ſpring at which one could drink. Though very common, this root is not eaſily found, becauſe at the period of its perfect maturity, its leaves becoming withered and dry, drop off; and to procure it one muſt have remarked the ſpot before. But by being a little accuſtomed to the country,

people

people may ſoon learn to diſtinguiſh the places where it chiefly grows.

When oppreſſed by the heat and fatigues of the day, having my mouth and throat parched, and my body covered with ſweat and duſt, panting for breath, deprived of the friendly ſhade, and ſcarcely able to ſupport my own weight, I wiſhed to find ſome infectious marſh; and in that all my vows were centered—when my vain reſearches, and the unceaſing intenſity of the ſun, had at length deprived me of all my hopes—how often then did I congratulate myſelf upon a precaution which more than one elegant Midas, from relations publiſhed without my conſent, have turned into ridicule, as well as my cock; becauſe, among other ſilly things, for example, finding always water in the Seine, they cannot conceive why that river does not extend to the deſarts of Africa, but confines its courſe to a very ſmall portion of the earth; and how one can die of thirſt or hunger, when the markets in the capital are every where ſupplied and abound with proviſions of all kinds—I ſay how much did I congratulate myſelf on poſſeſſing in my domeſtic animals, in appearance the moſt uſeleſs, ſo excellent guards, and friends ſo neceſſary to my preſervation?

In theſe critical moments my faithful Kees never quitted my ſteps; and when we left our carriages, even for a moment, the force of his inſtinct ſoon conducted him to ſome of theſe plants: but as the tuft which no longer exiſted rendered all his tumbling uſeleſs, he dug up the earth with his fore paws. This reſource however would have been far from ſatisfying his impatient avidity, had I not gone to his aſſiſtance with my poniard; and on theſe occaſions we honeſtly

neſtly ſhared the valuable fruit which he diſcovered.

I found an equal relief in two other roots of the ſize of one's finger, but exceedingly long. Theſe roots were ſweet and tender; and, as they had ſomething of the ſmell of fennel and aniſe, I gave them the preference whenever I was ſo fortunate as to find them: they are to be met with in the colonies, where they are known, one under the name of *anys-wortel*, and the other under that of *vinkel-wortel*.

In the rocky cantons there grows a kind of potato, which the ſavages call *kaa-nap*: it is of an irregular figure, and contains a milky juice exceedingly ſweet. To extract the milk nothing more is neceſſary but to ſuck this kind of pulp. I often tried to boil it, but I always found it of leſs value, as well as all the reſt, becauſe too quick a decompoſition of the delicate ſubſtance which evaporates, changes its nature, and leaves what remains very inſipid. Some other roots, when roaſted under the aſhes like cheſnuts, approached very near to them in taſte. The wild fruits of this country are very few in number. I never found any thing of the kind but a few ſhrubs, the berries of which were ſo bad that they could have tempted none but children: thus ours, in the heart of the country, regale themſelves nobly on the produce of the hedges that ſurround our highways. Some of theſe wild fruits have a purgative quality, and are good for nothing elſe.

Though unacquainted with more than one intereſting part of natural hiſtory, I ſhould have thought myſelf highly culpable in climates ſo remote, and countries never before traverſed, to neglect any occaſion of ſtudying thoſe new objects

objects with which I ſaw myſelf continually ſurrounded. I confeſs that I was entirely ignorant of botany; but I did not however fail to make ſome reſearches relating to that ſcience, which, though it neither ſpeaks to the heart, nor conveys any ſentiment to the mind, has for its object beneficence, and a deſire of being uſeful to man. When I found any bulbous plants or ſhrubs, the flowers and fruits of which attracted my attention, I was very careful to get poſſeſſion of them, and I preſerved alſo the ſeeds. In my various encampments I had even improved ſo much, that I was capable of comparing different vegetable productions, and of obſerving the relation which they bore one to another. This ſtudy, which I found very agreeable, gave me an opportunity of changing my amuſements; and on returning from one of my excurſions to the Cape Town I had formed a collection ſo valuable, that Mr. Percheron, the French agent at the Cape, ſent it, in my name, for the king's garden, addreſſed to that reſpectable family whoſe name I dare not mention; but whom Nature, by revealing to them her ſweeteſt ſecrets, and entruſting them with the particular care of her hidden treaſures, hath ranked among her deareſt favourites. Theſe plants however did not reach the place of their deſtination: I was informed by the French agent that the veſſel on board which they were, periſhed at ſea. I was more fortunate with regard to the drawings I had made, and which I brought along with me. An eminent botaniſt aſſured me that he was acquainted with the greater part of the plants which they repreſented. I ſhall lay them before the public hereafter.

I now

I now return to details which are eaſier and within my reach, I mean thoſe reſpecting my dear Gonaquas.

By only looking at theſe ſavages, it would be difficult to gueſs their age. Old people indeed appear wrinkled, and the extremities of their hair are a little greyiſh, but it never turns white entirely; and I preſume that they are very old at ſeventy.

Theſe ſavages meaſure the year by the epochs of drought and rainy weather. This diviſion is common to all the inhabitants of the tropical regions, and it is ſubdivided into moons; but they never count the days if they exceed ten, that is to ſay the number of their fingers. Beyond that, they mark the day or the time by ſome remarkable epoch; for example, an extraordinary ſtorm, an elephant killed, an infectious diſtemper among the cattle, an emigration, &c. The different parts of the day they diſtinguiſh by the courſe of the ſun; and they will tell you, pointing with their finger, he was *there* when I departed, and *here* when I arrived. This method is far from being exact; but, notwithſtanding its want of preciſion, it is almoſt ſufficient for theſe people, who having no appointments of gallantry, no law-ſuits to attend, no perfidies to commit, no ſcandal to propagate, no occaſion meanly to cringe before ignorant patrons, and no new play to damn, calmly behold the ſun finiſh his courſe, and are under very little uneaſineſs whether twenty thouſand clocks bring miſery to one and happineſs to another.

When the Hottentots are ſick, beſides the ligatures already mentioned, they have recourſe to ſome medicinal plants with which their uſual practice

practice makes them acquainted. There are ſome men among them of more knowledge than others in this reſpect, and whom they conſult; but as there is no ſcience more occult than medicine, and as internal diſorders do not ſpeak to the eyes in a ſtriking manner, they are very much embarraſſed how to treat them; they however impoſe as much as we upon ſome victims by their grimace, and clearly demonſtrate, after the patient is dead, that his diſeaſe was incurable. They are more ſucceſsful in dreſſing and treating wounds, and even in reducing luxations or fractures: it is extremely rare to ſee a lame Hottentot.

A ſenſe of delicacy in theſe ſavages makes them keep themſelves ſeparate from others when they are ſick. They are then ſeldom ſeen, and it would appear that they are aſhamed of having loſt their health. It indeed never enters the thoughts of a Hottentot to expoſe himſelf in public for the purpoſe of exciting pity and procuring relief; this is a forced method, but uſeleſs in a country where every body is compaſſionate.

They have no idea of bleeding, nor of the advantage which we derive from it. I do not even believe that there is one perſon amongſt them who would voluntarily ſubmit to this operation; but, with regard to the Hottentots of the colonies, as they are accuſtomed to the European manners, they have alſo received their diſeaſes and adopted their remedies.

The operation performed by their phyſicians, of which the famous Kolben ſpeaks, and the cuſtom which he aſcribes to the Hottentots of the deſart, of conſulting the entrails of ſheep, ſuſpending the caul of the animal from the patient's neck, leaving it there to rot, and other tales of the like kind, were undoubtedly written for the

vulgar, and are at beſt calculated only to amuſe the ignorant. Where there is neither religion nor worſhip, there can be no ſuperſtition. It is ſtill leſs agreeable to truth, that in the horde theſe pretended phyſicians hold a rank ſuperior to that of their prieſts. To be more exact, the Hottentots are acquainted neither with phyſicians, diſtinction of rank, nor prieſts; and their language has no word to expreſs any of theſe things.

To be ſenſible how far this viſionary ſuffered himſelf to be led away by his imagination, we need only read in his work, that a Hottentot phyſician employed Roman vitriol to cure a perſon attacked by the leprocy. How is it poſſible that theſe ſavages ſhould be acquainted with this ſalt, which is not found in their country, ſince it is produced by a chemical operation? To give an air of probability to ſuch abſurdities, it would be neceſſary at leaſt to ſuppoſe ſome knowledge amongſt theſe people, and to lend them our arts, our alembics, our furnaces, and all our apparatus of pharmacy.

When a Hottentot dies, he is buried in his worſt kroſs, and the limbs are diſpoſed in ſuch a manner that the body is entirely covered. The relations then tranſport it to a certain diſtance from the horde, and depoſiting it in a pit dug for this purpoſe, and which is never deep, cover it with earth, and then with ſtones, if any are to be found in the neighbourhood. Such a mauſoleum proves but a very weak defence againſt the attacks of the jackal and the hyæna: the body indeed is ſoon dug up, and devoured.

However badly this laſt duty may be diſcharged, the Hottentots are not much to be blamed, when we call to mind the funeral ceremonies of the

the ancient and celebrated Parſis, ſtill attached to the cuſtom of expoſing their dead on the tops of high towers, or in open cemeteries, in order that the crows and the vultures may feed upon them, and carry them away in morſels.

A Hottentot, when he reſpectfully depoſits in the earth the lifeleſs remains of his father or his friend, leaves to the ſalts, and diſſolving juices which they contain, the care of decompoſing the body quietly and at leiſure : if he does not always ſucceed according to his expectation, and if he does not find the aſhes of what was moſt dear to him, he is plunged in grief, and by his lamentations ſufficiently ſhews his affectionate diſpoſition, and the great humanity of his character.

When it is the chief of a horde that they have loſt, their religious ceremonies are increaſed ; that is to ſay, the heap of ſtones and earth, under which he is buried, is of greater ſize, and more apparent.

If the deceaſed was a perſon highly eſteemed, the family are in great grief and conſternation ; the night is ſpent in cries, and howlings, mixed with imprecations againſt death ; while the friends who arrive augment this noiſe, which, at a diſtance, one would take for the intoxication of joy, or the ſhrieks of deſpair. The ſigns of their grief are not however equivocal to thoſe who live in the midſt of them : I have ſeen ſome of them ſhed bitter tears, and in great abundance.

Dr. Sparmann ſays he was witneſs to a ſcene in the colonies, which he relates in the following manner : " Two old women ſhook and beat with " their fiſts one of their countrymen, who was " either dying or already dead, while they loudly

" poured forth reproaches, or conſoling expreſ-
" ſions, cloſe to his ear." We muſt not allow ourſelves to be deceived by a tale of this kind. Had theſe women been convinced that the young man was dead, they would have certainly expreſſed their affection without that ſhaking and thoſe blows: but theſe movements, which the Doctor conſiders as the convulſive agitations of deſpair, were only a method of ſupplying the want of ſpirituous liquors, which people have recourſe to in Europe, to clear up a very difficult doubt, and which the Hottentots are deprived of. The violent agitation, employed by the two old women, is an efficacious remedy that produces good effects, ſince Dr. Sparmann adds, that it revived the patient.

The ſmall pox, which has ſo often ravaged the kraals of the Hottentots in the colonies, never made its appearance but once among the Gonaquas. As this diſeaſe then ſwept away more than the half of their people, they dread it ſo much, and it inſpires them with ſo great horror, that, on the firſt news of its breaking out in the colonies, they abandon every thing, and fly to the boſom of the deſarts. Wretched then is the condition of thoſe whom they ſuſpect to be infected. Convinced that there is no remedy for this dreadful plague, whether it be a parent, a wife, or a child, that is ſick, the voice of nature appears to become ſilent. They abandon them to their unhappy fate, ſo that they die of hunger, if not by the virulence of the diſtemper.

This terror, ſo natural among a ſavage people, is in no manner repugnant to that ſincere affection and purity of manners by which they are diſtinguiſhed. The picture of the devaſtation of their hordes, always preſent to their imaginations,

is

is a ſufficient motive to induce them for a moment to forget the moſt ſacred duties; but one is ſhocked to read in old authors, and to hear a modern traveller repeat after them, that the Hottentots, when they take it into their heads to change their reſidence, abandon, without pity and without regret, their old men, and every thing that is uſeleſs to them, or that might tend to retard their march. This aſſertion ought not to be adduced as a rule, or a general cuſtom: unleſs they find themſelves in ſuch fatal and urgent circumſtances as that of which I have juſt now ſpoken, or in war, what motives could make them haſten rather than retard their journey? Beſides, I can never allow myſelf to think that a Hottentot can act in this manner without long experiencing the deepeſt regret.

When they are attacked by an enemy ſuperior in number, and when they are incapable of repelling force by force, they diſperſe and conceal themſelves in the beſt manner poſſible; and this is the only rational method that they can purſue. When ſurpriſed by the enemy, they are compelled, much againſt their inclination, to leave behind them their old people, their ſick, and ſuch ſtragglers and others as cannot follow them. What man then is there ſo little acquainted with the diſaſtrous conſequences of war, as to make it criminal in a Hottentot to yield to a neceſſity, under which even an European would be forced to bend?

I will go ſtill farther, and I am not afraid of ſaying all that I know. The ſavages do not heſitate to have recourſe to the ſame expedient in the time of famine—a misfortune no leſs formidable than the ſmall pox and war, when they are attacked by it. In ſuch a caſe, deſerting a few individuals,

dividuals, whom indeed they could not ſave, becomes a ſacrifice neceſſary for the preſervation of the whole: even thoſe who fly are not certain of eſcaping the general ſcourge. More than three fourths periſh by the way, in the midſt of the ſands and the rocks, tormented by thirſt, and exhauſted by hunger; while the few that ſurvive are obliged to make long marches before they can find the ſmalleſt aſſiſtance.

Such are the three motives that make the Hottentots commit a barbarity to which they find themſelves impelled by a force ſuperior to affection or a ſenſe of duty. In timid and ſimple hearts nature can do nothing: but though its influence be ſuſpended for a moment, it is no leſs powerful or great; and public calamities, among people unacquainted with the combinations of our arts, and who have no means of alleviating them but by a ſudded flight, ought not to be the touchſtone by which we try them, nor the rule by which they are to be judged.

Thoſe indiſpenſable emigrations, to which they are compelled by the difference of the ſeaſons, will not, I hope, be brought as a fourth example of their barbarity. When an extraordinary drought has dried up all the ſprings as well as the ſurrounding lakes, when a ſcorching ſun has withered the paſtures, or when an infectious diſtemper has broken out among the cattle in the neighbourhood, either of theſe cauſes obliges them to change their habitation; but this neceſſary removal is always made with the greateſt tranquility, and without confuſion, though with expedition. They firſt ſend off their flocks, and then place the old and infirm on the backs of oxen; no perſon is left behind; the valuable effects are before; and all peaceably purſuing their journey, erect huts,

huts, and eſtabliſh themſelves in the firſt place that is ſuitable to their manner of living, and to their wants. I have often met hordes who had been under the neceſſity of quitting their reſidence for ſome of the above reaſons, and I always found that they were attended by the old and the ſick. How often, by means of a few rolls of tobacco, and more ſo by a few glaſſes of brandy, which revived theſe poor ſavages, and brightened up their countenances with a ſmile, have I enjoyed the ſatisfaction of ſeeing them ſhed tears of gratitude ! and when ſeparating from them, and purſuing my way, I arrived the ſame or next day at the ſpot they had left, though I examined the whole neighbourhood with the greateſt care, I found no traces of that inſenſibility with which they have been accuſed. All the huts had been carried away, and their effects and domeſtic animals had followed them.

The children, and, failing them, the neareſt relations of the deceaſed, take poſſeſſion of whatever is left ; but the quality of a chief is not hereditary. He is always appointed by the horde, and his power is limited. Though poſſeſſed of power ſufficient to enable him to do good to whomſoever he pleaſes, he has no power to do hurt ; he bears no external mark of diſtinction, and enjoys no privilege above others, except that of being exempted from going in his turn, according to cuſtom, to keep the flocks in the fields. In their councils, his advice prevails, if it be judged good ; if not, no regard is paid to it. When they are about to go to war, they know neither rank nor diviſions, neither generals nor captains ; all are either ſoldiers or colonels. Each attacks or defends after his own manner ; the moſt intrepid march in the van ; and, when victory declares itſelf,

itſelf, they do not beſtow upon one man the honour of an action which has proved ſucceſsful by the courage of all : it is the whole nation that triumph.

Of all the people whom I ever ſaw, the Gonaquas are the only nation that can be conſidered as free; but they will perhaps be ſoon obliged to remove to a greater diſtance, or receive laws from the Dutch government. All the land to the eaſt being in general good, the planters endeavour to extend their poſſeſſions in that quarter as much as they can ; and their avarice doubtleſs will ſome day ſucceed. Miſery muſt then be the portion of theſe happy and peaceable people; and every trace of their liberty will be deſtroyed by maſſacres and invaſions. Thus have all thoſe hordes mentioned by old authors been treated; and, by being often diſmembered and weakened, they are now reduced to a ſtate of abſolute dependance on the Dutch. The exiſtence of the Hottentots, their names, and their hiſtory, will therefore in time be accounted fabulous; unleſs ſome traveller, who may poſſeſs curioſity enough to induce him to diſcover their remains, ſhould have the courage to penetrate into the remote deſarts inhabited by the great Nimiquas, where rocks more and more hardened by time, and old and barren mountains, do not produce a ſingle plant worthy to engage the attention of the ſpeculative botaniſt.

The tribes mentioned by Kolben, under the names of the *Gunjemans* and the *Koopmans* never exiſted but in the imagination.

The name of *Gunjemans*, which ſignifies nothing in the language of the Hottentots, muſt have been corrupted by ſome ignorant traveller who wrote it improperly. The name ought to be *Goed-mans*, compoſed of two Dutch words that ſignify good men,

men, or good people ; a qualification given by the firſt planters to all the Hottentots in general, becauſe they found them peaceable and obliging.

The name of *Koopmans* was alſo given to thoſe who firſt carried on trade by barter. Theſe two words ſignify, in very good Dutch, a merchant or dealer ; but they are no more applicable to one nation than to another. Thus the traveller, not comprehending the languages of thoſe countries which he traverſes, retains their expreſſions imperfectly, writes them ſtill worſe, and forms the name of a ſavage horde from a barbariſm. The manners of foreign nations, and every thing that concerns them, can never be accurately deſcribed, unleſs one be capable of ſpeaking different languages.

Had the authors, for example, who have advanced that the Hottentots worſhip the moon, comprehended the meaning of the words which they chant whilſt ſhe diſplays her light, they would have obſerved that they addreſs neither prayers, invocations, nor homage to that peaceful luminary. They would have known that the ſubject of theſe ſongs is always ſome adventure that has happened between them and the neighbouring horde ; and that, equally ready as the negroes, they can ſing a whole night on one ſubject, by repeating the words a thouſand times over. They prefer the night to the day for this purpoſe, becauſe it is cooler, and invites them to dancing and to pleaſure.

When they are deſirous of indulging in this amuſement, they join hands, and form a circle of greater or leſs extent, in proportion to the number of male and female dancers, who are always mixed with a kind of ſymmetry. When this chain is made, they turn round from one ſide to another,

another, ſeparating at certain intervals to mark the meaſure ; and from time to time clap their hands without interrupting the cadence, while with their voices they accompany the ſound of the inſtruments, and continually chant *hoo, hoo !* This is the general burden of their ſong. Sometimes one of the dancers quitting the circle, goes to the centre, and there forms alone a few ſteps after the Engliſh manner ; all the merit and beauty of which conſiſt in performing them with equal quickneſs and preciſion, without ſtirring from the ſpot where he ſtands. After this they all quit each other's hands ; follow one another careleſsly, with an air of terror and melancholy, their heads leaning to one ſhoulder, and their eyes caſt down towards the ground, which they look at with attention ; and a moment after they break forth in the livelieſt demonſtrations of joy, and the moſt extravagant merriment. They are highly delighted with this contraſt, when it is well performed. All this is at bottom but an alternate aſſemblage of very droll and amuſing pantomines. It muſt be obſerved that the dancers make a hollow and monotonous kind of humming, which never ceaſes but when they join the ſpectators, to ſing the wonderful chorus *hoo, hoo!* which appears to be the life and ſoul of this magnificent muſic. They uſually conclude with a general ball ; that is to ſay, the ring is broken, and they all dance in confuſion, as each chooſes ; and upon this occaſion they diſplay all their ſtrength and agility. The moſt expert dancers repeat, by way of defiance to one another, thoſe dangerous leaps and muſical quavers of our grand academies, which excite laughter as deſervedly as the *hoo, hoo !* of Africa.

The

The inſtruments which are moſt eſteemed on account of their excellence are the *goura*, the *joum-joum*, the *rabouquin*, and the *romelpot*.

The *goura* is ſhaped like the bow of a ſavage Hottentot ; it is of the ſame ſize ; and a ſtring made of inteſtines, fixed to one of its extremities, is retained at the other by a knot in the barrel of a quill, which is flattened and cleft. This quill being diſplayed, forms a very long iſoſceles triangle, about two inches in length ; and at the baſe of this triangle the hole is made that keeps the ſtring faſt, the end of which, drawn back, is tied at the other end of the bow with a very thin thong of leather : this cord may be ſtretched ſo as to have a greater or leſs degree of tenſion, according to the pleaſure of the muſician ; but when ſeveral *gouras* play together, they are never in uniſon. Such is the firſt inſtrument of the Hottentots, which one would not ſuppoſe to be a wind inſtrument, though it is undoubtedly of that kind. The figure of it may be ſeen in the eighth plate, by the ſide of a Hottentot. It is held almoſt in the ſame manner as a huntſman's horn, with that end where the quill is fixed towards the performer's mouth, which he applies to it, and either by aſpiration or expiration draws from it very melodious tones. The ſavages, however, who ſucceed beſt on this inſtrument, cannot play any regular tune ; they only emit certain twangs, like thoſe drawn in a particular manner from a violin or a violincello. I took great pleaſure in ſeeing one of my attendants, called *John*, who was accounted an adept, regale for whole hours his companions, who, tranſported and raviſhed, interrupted him every now and then by exclaiming, " Ah ! how " charming that is ! begin that again." John began again ; but his ſecond performance had no reſemblance

reſemblance to the firſt: for, as I have ſaid, theſe people cannot play any regular tune upon this inſtrument, the tones of which are only the effect of chance, and of the quality of the quill. The beſt quills are thoſe taken from the wings of a certain ſpecies of buſtard; and whenever I happened to kill one of theſe birds, I was always ſolicited to make a ſmall ſacrifice for the ſupport of our orcheſtra.

When a woman plays the *goura*, it changes its name merely becauſe ſhe changes the manner of uſing it, and it is then transformed into a *joum-joum*. Seated on the ground, ſhe places it perpendicularly before her, in the ſame manner as a harp is held in Europe: by putting her foot between the bow and the ſtring, taking care not to touch the latter, ſhe keeps it firm in that poſition. With the right hand ſhe graſps the bow in the middle; and, while ſhe blows with her mouth on the quill, ſhe ſtrikes the ſtring in different places with a ſmall ſtick five or ſix inches in length, which ſhe holds in the other. This produces ſome variety in the modulation; but the inſtrument muſt be brought cloſe to the ear, before one can catch diſtinctly all the gradations of the ſound. This manner of holding the *goura* ſtruck me much, eſpecially as it greatly added to the graces of the female who performed on it.

The *rabouquin* is a triangular piece of board, with three ſtrings made of inteſtines, ſupported by a bridge, which may be ſtretched at pleaſure by means of pegs, like thoſe of our inſtruments in Europe; it is indeed nothing elſe than a guitar with three ſtrings. Any other perſon but a Hottentot would perhaps produce ſome muſic from it, and render it agreeable: but the latter

is

is contented with ſtamping it with his fingers; and this he does without method and without art, and even unintentionally.

The *romelpot* is the moſt noiſy of all the inſtruments of theſe ſavages. It is formed of a piece of the trunk of a tree made hollow, over one of the ends of which is ſtretched a ſheep's ſkin well tanned; on this the performer beats with his hands, or, to ſpeak more accurately, with his fiſts, and ſometimes even with a ſtick. This inſtrument, the ſound of which may be heard at a great diſtance, is undoubtedly not a maſterpiece of invention; but in every country it is uſual to ſupply by noiſe what cannot be obtained from taſte.

I have perhaps enlarged too much on the dances and different inſtruments of the Hottentots. The latter, as may readily be perceived, are not very curious; but this detail, which in ſome meaſure tends to throw light on the manners of theſe ſavages, deſerves not to be neglected.

Approaching near to Nature, and under her immediate protection, the ſavages have no need of our noiſy and moſt harmonious orcheſtras to excite them in their feſtivals to the livelieſt demonſtrations of pleaſure and joy. The confined and monotonous modulation of their muſic is ſufficient; and I believe that even without it they would caper equally well.

In his *Courſe of Geographical Lectures* one of our modern authors, who has made it a rule to ſtudy men at the ſame time that he deſcribes places, obſerves, with great ſagacity, "That in a poliſh-"ed ſtate dancing and ſinging are two arts; "but that in the boſom of the foreſts they are "almoſt natural ſigns of concord, friendſhip, "tenderneſs, and pleaſure. We learn under "maſters,"

" maſters," adds this writer, " to command our " voice, and to move our limbs in cadence; the " ſavage has no other inſtructor but his own paſ- " ſions, his own heart, and nature. What he feels " we pretend to feel; the ſavage therefore who " dances or ſings is always happy."

I have already obſerved that the Hottentots never aſſemble to amuſe themſelves but in the night, as their daily occupations leave them no other time. A particular duty belongs to each, which muſt be diſcharged: ſome muſt continually watch over the flocks ſcattered throughout the fields, not only to prevent them from ſtraying, but to protect them from the attack of ravenous animals, which are continually lying in wait for them; others muſt keep them clean, and milk them twice a day; ſome muſt weave mats, and collect dry wood for their evening fires; and others muſt provide ſubſiſtence, and ſearch for roots. Theſe laſt occupations belong principally to the women; whilſt the men, on their part, go a hunting, inſpect the ſnares which have been laid in different places, and form arrows, and all the other inſtruments which they have occaſion for. Though theſe inſtruments, and all thoſe works that come from their hands, are in general coarſe and clumſy, they require a good deal of time and pains, becauſe they are deſtitute of a number of tools neceſſary for abridging their labour: their ingenuity is much leſs admirable than their patience.

It would have appeared aſtoniſhing had theſe people whom I ſo often frequented, and amongſt whom I lived ſo long, been cunning or deceitful enough to conceal their character from me ſo much, that I ſhould never have obſerved, either

in

in their conduct or manner of living, any ſign or act of ſuperſtition. It would be highly improper to conſider as religious practices certain privations which they impoſe on themſelves, and which appear altogether natural and ſimple, when one takes the trouble of examining them thoroughly. For example, they ſcarcely ever eat the fleſh of the hare, or of the antelope called *duykefs*. In their opinion, the former is an ugly and diſguſting animal, and the fleſh of the latter they conſider as too black; beſides, theſe two animals are always exceedingly lean, which to them is a ſufficient reaſon for rejecting it. But a ſtriking proof that they deprive themſelves of this reſource from no chimerical idea, is that, in times of ſcarcity and want, I have ſeen them think themſelves very happy in being able to recur to it. Becauſe a Dutchman would be diſguſted with the ſight of a plateful of thoſe ſnails found on vines, or of frogs, however well cooked—whilſt a Frenchman can make a hearty meal on theſe viands, which are far from being delicate—does it follow that the diſguſt of a Batavian ought to be conſidered as a religious abſtinence enjoined by the conſiſtory?

Before I announce as an eſſential rite of the Hottentots the ceremony of cutting off a joint either of a finger or a toe, and before I aſcribe to the ſame motive their ſemi-caſtration, it is reaſonable to eſtabliſh the truth of theſe two cuſtoms. Kolben heard them mentioned in the ſame manner as many other things, but he never procured certain information reſpecting them. This he ſufficiently proves, when he aſcribes them to all the Hottentots indiſcriminately; which is equally falſe as the other aſſertions of that author. Dr. Sparmann falls alſo into a very ſtrange error, when

when he maintains, in oppoſition to the Kolben, that ſemicaſtration is no where practiſed. Theſe two ceremonies are actually practiſed among two hordes ſituated to the north of the Cape, under the twenty-eighth degree of ſouth latitude, viz. the *Geiſſiquas* and the *Koraquas*, in whoſe country I found the giraffes, of which I ſhall ſpeak in my ſecond voyage. The philoſopher Kolben aſſuredly never travelled ſo far, except in imagination.

Dr. Sparmann has doubtleſs ſuffered himſelf to be deceived reſpecting the Gonaquas, when he is inclined to believe that theſe hordes uſe circumciſion. The planters affirmed this to me as well as to him; and on this account I found a powerful temptation to doubt the truth of it: but having ſince had better opportunities than any one of ſatisfying myſelf concerning ſo important a fact, I declare, on the contrary, that this nation, and all the Hottentots without exception, have the prepuce of a prodigious ſize; a mark that ſufficiently diſtinguiſhes them from all other ſavages, and which certainly has not been obſerved before.

The caſe is the ſame reſpecting that diſguſting apron of the Hottentot women, which has long made a conſpicuous though ridiculous figure in hiſtory, or rather in the fables of the vulgar. Another whim, always proceeding from the ſame ſource, has as raſhly ſuppreſſed it; though it is ſtill faſhionable among a certain horde, of whom I ſhall ſoon have occaſion to ſpeak. I ſay it is faſhionable; for, inſtead of being the gift of nature, it ought to be conſidered as one of the moſt monſtrous refinements ever invented by I know not what coquetry, altogether peculiar to a certain ſmall corner of the world.

Some

Some old authors have ſaid that the families of the ſavages ſleep all promiſcuouſly together, in the ſame hut; and are neither acquainted with difference of age, nor that invincible horror which ſeparates beings connected by blood. The ſavages indeed, confined to what is ſtrictly neceſſary, have never thought of preſerving, under an apparent decency, all the turpitude of unnatural inclinations; and ſeparate apartments for brother and ſiſter, mother and ſon, are not to be found among them. But to conclude, becauſe they have only one habitation, one bed, and one mat to repoſe on, after the labours of the day, that they live like the brutes, would be to calumniate innocence, and offer an inſult to nature. There is only one ill-informed or malevolent author who has ſuffered himſelf to give credit to theſe infamous ſuſpicions—Yes, the whole family inhabit the ſame hut; the father lies by the ſide of his daughter, and the mother by the ſon; but on the return of Aurora each riſes with a pure heart, and without having occaſion to bluſh before the Author of all Beings, or any of the creatures whom he has marked with the ſeal of his own reſemblance. A ſavage is neither a brute nor a barbarian: the real monſter is he who ſees crimes every where, becauſe he ſuppoſes them; and who aſſerts their exiſtence on the odious teſtimony of his own conſcience.

I have viſited more than one horde of ſavages; and I never found any where but modeſty and reſerve amongſt the women, I can add among the men alſo. The author whom I have ſo often contradicted pays reſpect to truth, when he confeſſes that people would judge very erroneouſly, were they to believe that, becauſe the ſavages go

naked, they have as little modeſty as veil; and that it was with great difficulty he could find men who, even by the temptation of preſents, would conſent to put aſide their jakals, that he might be convinced by his own eyes whether they were circumciſed or not.

I have already ſaid that too much intercourſe with the whites has ruined and corrupted their manners; and of the truth of this aſſertion the Hottentots of the colonies are a ſtriking example: thoſe of the deſart, being nothing different in nature, will perhaps yield one day to ſeduction, ſhould it happen to reach them, and will ſuffer themſelves to be led away by the force of example. When Dr. Forſter, in his *Voyage round the World* with Captain Cook, informs us that the women of Eaſter Iſles were *laſcivious courtezans*, he does not conceal from us that the ſailors gave themſelves up openly and without ſhame to the moſt infamous debauchery with them; but we ought to add, without any heſitation, that the women of ſavage nations, once viſited by corrupted Europeans, and too well acquainted with their perverſe inclinations, proſtitute themſelves to all thoſe who chooſe to enjoy them, and gratify their taſte, doubtleſs from a dread of the barbarous cruelties which the whites are capable of commiting.

In all places wherever a deſire of information induced me to enter upon this ſubject with ſuch women as I met in the courſe of my travels, I always received one ſimple and uniform anſwer, which they give to thoſe who, ſuſpecting them of inceſtuous cohabitation, wiſh to be convinced by their own acknowledgment: "You compare "us then to brutes," ſaid they to me; "for "brutes

" brutes alone are capable of doing what you " ſay."

I wiſh I may not be deceived—I believe in virtue, for the ſake of thoſe even who are unacquainted with that word, and who have never written voluminous commentaries on the idea it contains. This ſentiment, innate in the heart of man when it has not been corrupted by education and example, was given him as a ſign of his dignity and diſtinction. Horror at the idea of uniting with his own blood, is one of the grandeſt characteriſtics by which the Creator wiſhed to ſeparate the human ſpecies from the claſs of animals; and this inſurmountable barrier can be broken only by the moſt infamous depravation.

I dare affirm, then, that if there be a corner of the earth where a decency of conduct and manners is ſtill honoured, we muſt ſeek for its temple in the boſoms of the deſarts. Theſe principles the ſavage has received neither from prejudice nor education; he is indebted for them to nature: in him love is a very confined want, and he does not convert it, as in civilized countries, into a tumultuous paſſion, which carries diſorder and deſtruction along with it. In vain ſhould I attempt, after the example of Buffon, to eradicate this fever of the mind, this diſeaſe of exalted imaginations. I ſhall not break to pieces an altar loaded with the rich gifts of poets and romance writers; I ſhould have too powerful antagoniſts to combat: and the divinity who owes his birth to ſuch beautiful chimeras, would let looſe his votaries againſt me, nor ever forgive me for this impious ſacrilege.

A phyſiognomiſt, or, if the reader chooſes, a modern wit, would entertain his company by

aſſigning to the Hottentot, in the ſcale of beings, a place between man and the ourang-outang. I cannot however conſent to this ſyſtematic arrangement; the qualities which I eſteem in him will never ſuffer him to be degraded ſo far; and I have found his figure ſufficiently beautiful, becauſe I experienced the goodneſs of his heart. It muſt indeed be allowed that there is ſomething peculiar in his features, which in a certain degree ſeparates him from the generality of mankind. His cheek bones are exceedingly prominent; ſo that his face being very broad in that part, and the jaw bones on the contrary extremely narrow, his viſage continues ſtill decreaſing even to the point of the chin. This configuration gives him an air of lankneſs, which makes his head appear very much diſproportioned, and too ſmall for his full and plump body. His flat noſe riſes ſcarcely half an inch at its greateſt elevation; and his noſtrils, which are exceſſively wide, often exceed in height the ridge of his noſe. His mouth is large, and furniſhed with ſmall teeth, well enamelled and perfectly white: his eyes, very beautiful and open, incline a little towards the noſe, like thoſe of the Chineſe: and to the ſight and touch his hair has the reſemblance of wool; it is very ſhort, curls naturally, and in colour is as black as ebony. He has very little hair, yet he employs no ſmall care to pull out by the roots part of what he has; but the natural thinneſs of his eyebrows ſaves him from this trouble in that part. Though he has no beard but upon his upper lip, below the noſe, and at the extremity of the chin, he never fails to pluck it out as ſoon as it appears. This gives him an effeminate look; which, joined to the natural mildneſs of his character, deſtroys that commanding

fierceneſs common to all men in a ſtate of nature, and which has acquired them the proud title of kings.

With regard to proportion of body, a Hottentot is as perfect as if caſt in a mould. His gait is graceful and agile; and all his motions, which are eaſy, ſeem very different from thoſe of the American ſavages, who appear only to have been ſketched out by the hand of nature.

The women, with more delicacy of features, exhibit the ſame characteriſtic marks of their figure: they are equally well made. Their breaſts, admirably placed, have a moſt beautiful form, while in the bloom of youth; and their hands are ſmall, and their feet exceedingly well ſhaped, though they never wear ſandals. The ſound of their voice is ſoft; and their idiom, paſſing through the throat, is not deſtitute of harmony. When they ſpeak, they employ a great many geſtures, which give power and gracefulneſs to their arms.

The Hottentots, being naturally timid, are conſequently not at all an enterpriſing people. Their phlegmatic coolneſs, and their ſerious looks, give them an air of reſerve, which they never lay aſide, even at the moſt joyful moments; while, on the contrary, all other black or tawny nations give themſelves up to pleaſure with the livelieſt joy, and without any reſtraint.

A profound indifference to the affairs of life inclines them very much to inactivity and indolence: the keeping of their flocks, and the care of procuring a ſubſiſtence, are the only objects that occupy their thoughts. They never follow hunting as ſportſmen, but like people oppreſſed and tormented by hunger. In ſhort, forgetting the

the paſt, and being under no uneaſineſs for the future, they are ſtruck only with the preſent; and it is that which alone engages their attention.

They are however the beſt, the kindeſt, and the moſt hoſpitable of people. Whoever travels among them may be aſſured of finding food and lodging; and though they will receive preſents, yet they never aſk for any thing. If the traveller has a long journey to accompliſh, and if they learn from the information he requires that there are no hopes of his ſoon meeting with other hordes, that which he is going to quit ſupplies him with proviſions as far as their circumſtances will allow, and with every thing elſe neceſſary for his continuing his journey, and reaching the place of his deſtination.

Before the arrival of the Europeans at the Cape, the Hottentots were not acquainted with commerce, and perhaps they had no idea even of barter; but, on the appearance of tobacco and toys, they were ſoon initiated into a part of the mercantile myſteries. Theſe objects, which at firſt were only agreeable novelties, by length of time have become wants. When theſe articles grow ſcarce among them, they are ſupplied by the Hottentots of the colonies; for it is proper to obſerve, that however eager they may be to get ſuch trifles into their poſſeſſion, they do not take the trouble to go one ſtep in ſearch of them themſelves, and they chooſe rather to do without them: an uſeful leſſon to thoſe who drag out a miſerable exiſtence in continual agitation by purſuing ſhadows.

Such are theſe people, or at leaſt ſuch did they appear to me, in all the innocence of manners, and of a paſtoral life. They excite alſo the idea

of

of mankind in a ſtate of infancy. A noble action, which I ſhall relate here, though it belongs to my ſecond voyage, more to the north of the Cape, and towards the weſtern coaſt, will finiſh the picture which I have here traced out with the utmoſt candour and truth—without eloquence, I allow; but without enthuſiaſm, without vain declamation, and with that natural ſincerity which is ſo dear to me, and which I embrace every opportunity of profeſſing.

A pretty conſiderable horde of the Kaminouquas came to viſit my camp, with that confidence which is always inſpired by honeſt and upright intentions, and which all thoſe men poſſeſs who have never been corrupted by their intercourſe with other nations. Being forced to huſband my proviſions, it was impoſſible for me to regale all theſe people with brandy; they were too numerous; and I could not, without imprudence, ſhew my generoſity. I however ordered a glaſs to be given to the chief, and to each of thoſe who by their figure, or rather by their age, appeared to be moſt reſpectable. But to what reſources and to what means will not beneficence have recourſe! and how great is its ingenuity, when it wiſhes to diffuſe its bleſſings! I was very much aſtoniſhed when, perceiving that they preſerved the liquor without ſwallowing it, I ſaw them all approach their companions, who had received no ſhare, and diſtribute it to them with their mouths, in the ſame manner as the tender birds of heaven feed their young with their bills. This unexpected action, I confeſs, threw me into great agitation, and I remained aſtoniſhed: for, on the ſight of this affecting ſcene, what heart is there ſo unnaturally hardened as would not have melted into tears? Filled with

with admiration and reſpect, and moved to the bottom of my ſoul, I threw myſelf into the arms of the chief, who like the reſt had juſt ſhared his liquor with thoſe who ſurrounded him, and I bedewed his venerable perſon with my tears. Ye fine prattlers, ye elegant coquettes, perfumed with amber and muſk, exclaim as ye pleaſe, and exhibit your charming grimaces! Diſorders of the ſtomach, vapours, and all the evils of debilitated health, the uſual conſequences of a debauched life ſpent at the age of thirty, occaſioned no diſguſt to my divine Kaminouquas, in this ſweet and fraternal communication.

I can never call to remembrance without emotion theſe reſpectable people, and ſeveral others, among whom I obſerved the ſame ceremony repeated. When I ſaw them, on their ſeparating from me, return peaceably and contented, "Happy mortals!" ſaid I; "long may you retain "your valuable innocence, but live in ignorance! Poor ſavages, regret not that you "were born under a ſcorching ſun, on a dry "and parched ſoil, which ſcarcely produces "briars and thorns. Conſider your preſent "ſituation rather as a bleſſing from Heaven: "your deſarts will never tempt the avarice of "the whites. Unite yourſelves to thoſe fortunate hordes, who like you have not had an "opportunity of knowing them; deſtroy and "efface the leaſt traces of that yellow duſt "which is converted into metal in your caverns "and rocks—ye are ruined if they diſcover it. "Know that it is the ſcourge of the world, the "ſource of all crimes: and dread, above all "things, the approach of an Almagro, a Pizarro, "a Cortez, and of the bloody ſtole of the Vanverdes."

In

In an uncivilized ſtate man is naturally good; why then ſhould the Hottentot be an exception to this general rule? It is not juſt to accuſe him of cruelty; he is only revengeful. Too ſenſible of the evil done him, what can be more natural than to repel force by force? It becomes us well to enjoin the children of nature to practiſe our fictitious virtues, when their names are ſcarcely known to us, and no one undertakes to follow what they preſcribe. Even the law of retaliation, the only one in uſe before we thought of being philoſophers, what elſe is it but the right of rendering injury for injury, and of taking away the lives of thoſe who do not ſcruple to attempt ours?

Should the ſavages of Africa or America take it into their heads, ſome day, that they live miſerable, deprived of our arts, riches, and all the reſources of our genius; and, uniting together in arms, ſhould haſten to inundate Europe, and to drive us from our poſſeſſions, with what countenances could we receive theſe barbarians, and by what ſufferings on our part would they ſee their boldneſs rewarded? Such however is their hiſtory, or ours: ſuch have been our enterpriſes attempted in three quarters of the world with too much ſucceſs. In every place where we have thought proper to eſtabliſh ourſelves, we have compelled theſe unhappy wretches, perſecuted to a ſtate of ſlavery, to betake themſelves to flight; we have appropriated to ourſelves, without the leaſt ſcruple, whatever we found uſeful to us; and when the hour of vengeance has been proclaimed for them, and when they meaſured their blows by the magnitude of their injuries, without reviewing our own

own! conduct, and too much blinded by intereſt or fanaticiſm, we have dared to call them barbarians, eaters of men, ferocious animals, who live by murder, and allay their thirſt with blood.

To what imprudence muſt we attribute the death of that celebrated navigator Captain Cook? —I am inclined to believe that a conſciouſneſs of his own ſtrength, and his bold and enterpriſing character, never led him to commit any of thoſe criminal exceſſes of which he in his turn periſhed a victim; but the ardent deſire of the undiſciplined crew that followed him, made the iſlanders take up arms againſt him. Thoſe ſailors made free with the women, and even dared to lay their hands upon them whenever they had an opportunity. This was too much for them to be ſilent any longer; nothing could ſtop theſe incenſed ſavages. The commander is obſerved through the ſmoke of cannon, and amidſt the noiſe of threatening artillery; they ſeize upon him; and he is maſſacred, even in the ſight of his ſoldiers, becauſe he did not repreſs their diſorders in time.

The firſt ſentiment with which people who travel among ſavages ought to inſpire them, is confidence: to gain theirs, one muſt be kind and humane; muſt never take advantage of their weakneſs, or employ threats; and muſt never ſeem terrified by their appearance: when nothing is required from them, they will grant every thing. People ought to have ſo much command over their paſſions as to obſerve the ſtricteſt continence, and not to ſeek after their women. If they are jealous, they will become implacable enemies; if they are not, their condeſcenſion

too

with regard to you, in this reſpect, places them too much on a level, and you loſe in their eyes that uſeful ſuperiority by which they were at firſt dazzled. Though this paſſion ſhould not be general, there are always ſome individuals tormented by it; and it is juſtly obſerved that the nations leaſt ſubject to it are the moſt diſſolute in their manners, and the fartheſt removed from nature.

To make one's ſelf known to the ſavages with advantage, ſuperiority of ſtrength muſt be the laſt thing which you avail yourſelf of; for it is not natural for mankind to be ſuſpicious of thoſe whom they do not fear. However, in following theſe precautions, people ought to preſerve a calm and ſerene air; and, when they travel among them, never to employ their arms, or ſhew the uſe of them, but in order to render them a ſervice, either by procuring them game, or deſtroying ſuch ferocious animals as are enemies to their flocks. After this you may quit a horde in perfect ſecurity, certain of leaving regret behind you; and gratitude will continually recal you to their remembrance. Many among them will ſeparate from you with reluctance; they will quit their companions to accompany you; and will conduct you to another horde, among whom, from the favourable teſtimony given of you by your guides, you may be aſſured of finding the ſame love, the ſame deſire to ſerve you, the ſame entertainments, and all that hoſpitable care which always proceeds from confidence. With theſe peaceful principles ſo agreeable to my diſpoſition, I traverſed a ſmall part of an immenſe quarter of the globe; and I might have traverſed the whole of Africa in the ſame manner, had I not been ſtopped

ped by inſurmountable obſtacles, which all my zeal could not overcome, and which it would be uſeleſs to give an account of here.

It was alſo from theſe maxims that I was every day more and more convinced that a traveller cannot aſſociate any one with him in ſuch an enterpriſe, without running the riſque of rendering it abortive. I was certain of my own manner of viewing dangers, and of the means I had to guard againſt them. Surrounded by people and friends equal in power, in perilous ſituations, I could not have flattered myſelf with the hopes of inducing them all to follow my opinion; the fooliſh obſtinacy of one might have occaſioned the deſtruction of all: but, if I deceived myſelf, I had only to reproach my own judgment.

The Hottentots are repreſented as a miſerable and poor nation, ſuperſtitious, ferocious, and indolent, and exceſſively dirty; in a word, they are vilified in every poſſible manner. Were there in theſe aſſertions even one that approached truth, it would be better, in order to ſuppreſs extravagant exaggeration, to adhere ſimply to the tales, already ſo abſurd, of thoſe tireſome planters, who always delight in deceiving a ſtranger by things which the latter hopes to receive inſtruction from, whilſt liſtening to them. People ought to ſpeak from their own experience, and advance nothing more than what they have ſeen. Had theſe maxims been adhered to in ſuch a work as that of Doctor Sparmann, for example —a work valuable in more reſpects than one— intereſting obſervations, well written, would not have been inundated with a deluge of very apocryphal relations of hunting lions, elephants, &c.; each more improbable and ridiculous than another. He would not then have ſpoken of a

licorn,

licorn, delineated perhaps by a planter upon ſome uninhabited rock; and he would not have aſſigned a ſquare inſtead of a round form to the huts of Caffres whom he never viſited. I muſt allow, in favour of this learned man, that his candour and probity made him conſider every thing as inconteſtable, the moment it was certified to him by any of the planters. John Kock, particularly, whom he calls the moſt accurate and judicious obſerver he ever knew, undoubtedly never expected that exceſſive praiſe which he has laviſhed upon him, while the inhabitants of the whole town and colony refute them, and do not heſitate, on account of theſe errors only, to rank next to Kolben's a book which would have been highly uſeful, had the author confined himſelf to ſuch objects, as were familiar to him.

I pay reſpect to truth when I find it in Doctor Sparmann; and I lay to the charge of his obſerver thoſe falſehoods which diſguſt me: but when either the one or the other aſſures us "that he "never ſaw the ſavages wipe or clean their ſkin; "that, to ſcour their hands, they rub them "with cow dung; that they rub alſo their arms "with it, as far as the ſhoulders; that this "unction, which is not neceſſary, is intended "merely for ornament; and that the duſt and "the dirt mixing with their greaſy ointment, "and the ſweat of their bodies, adhere to the "ſkin, and continually corrode it, &c."—and when Doctor Sparmann afterwards confeſſes that he never ſaw theſe ſavages wipe themſelves, or clean their ſkin—I find his manner of reaſoning very weak, and his logic equally falſe: for if I ſhould, in my turn, atteſt that I never ſaw cow dung uſed by the Hottentots as an ornament;

that

that I never obſerved their ſkin corroded by ſweat, ointments, and filth—this negative aſſertion would neither perſuade any one, nor elucidate the queſtion.

It cannot be denied that all theſe ſavages, without exception, men, women, and children, are excellent ſwimmers, and perhaps the beſt divers in the world. What concluſion ought we to draw from what I have related reſpecting the women, whom I ſurpriſed while bathing and diving like fiſhes; but that practice, which they uſe ſeveral times a day, neceſſarily leads them to a ſpecies of cleanlineſs, which leaves little power to ointments, or even to duſt, to ſpoil and corrode the ſkin?

The continual care and attention beſtowed by the Gonaquas on their dreſs, ſufficiently prove that they are fond of cleanlineſs: all, therefore, that can be ſaid, is, that it is ill underſtood; and even before we proceed ſo far, it might be neceſſary to enquire whether they are not obliged to *boughou* themſelves in this manner, either on account of temperature of the climate, or from a want of thoſe reſources which nature has not pointed out to them. Their clothes, indeed, are only the ſpoils taken from ſavage animals; but, as I have already ſhewn, they do not neglect, as ſome have pretended, to clean and prepare them before they employ them for making dreſſes.

A Hottentot is neither poor nor miſerable. He is not poor, becauſe his deſires never exceeding his knowledge, which is very limited, he never feels the ſpur of neceſſity. Miſery is a point of compariſon of which he has no conception: a complete uniformity, and the ſame reſources, rendering the lot of all perfectly equal,

when

when abundance prevails, they are all happy, and in times of ſcarcity they are all in the like manner expoſed to want. The diſguſting contraſt of riches mounted on a golden car, and miſery, dragging its rags along in the dirt, can never pain their hearts: this is an idea which they do not comprehend. The ſight of indigence trod under foot, that puniſhment of compaſſionate ſouls, never appears to their eyes under a thouſand melancholy ſhapes. This mortification man in a ſtate of nature never experiences; and if man in a ſtate of civilization becomes accuſtomed to it in time, and if he attains to ſuch a degree of apathy as to conſider that inequality of rank, ſo ſhocking and ſo fatal, as the beſt ſtate, he is no longer an avowed child of Nature; ſhe diſowns and rejects him, aſhamed of her own works, which diſgrace her hands.

After having ſo long interrupted the thread of my narration, to eſtabliſh ſome certain notions reſpecting theſe Hottentots, hitherto too little known, ſomething would be ſtill wanting to the information I have given, did I not ſpeak of a particular ſpecies or caſt, which may be called the *compoſite*, and which is not older than a century. I do not know that any traveller has mentioned them. This new ſpecies will one day efface the ancient; and the epoch of their power will doubtleſs occaſion great changes in the colony, and accelerate its ruin. The multiplication of theſe individuals, who may become infinite, ought to alarm the Dutch government; but at preſent it ſeems to be aſleep, and to be under very little uneaſineſs concerning the fatal conſequences of its indolence.

I here mean thoſe natural children produced by the intercourſe of the white men with the

Hottentot women, and of theſe women with the negroes. At the Cape they are generally named *baſters*. This denomination, however, more peculiarly belongs to the former, becauſe the ſecond are much leſs numerous; as the Hottentot women do not eaſily yield to the embraces of the negroes, for whom they entertain a kind of contempt; on account, as they ſay, of ſuffering themſelves to be ſold like beaſts; while, on the other hand, they think themſelves honoured by having commerce with the whites, and by being ſtyled their miſtreſſes. It is the race ariſing from theſe latter unions that is continually gaining ground, and multiplying conſiderably every day: they are free, like the Hottentots, but they imagine themſelves ſuperior to them; though they are deſpiſed at the Cape, where it is not even uſual to baptiſe them. The character of theſe people partakes more of that of an European than of a Hottentot: they have more courage and more activity than the latter, and labour never diſcourages them; but, being more impetuous and more enterpriſing, they are alſo more miſchievous and wicked. It is not uncommon to ſee them aſſaſſinate their maſters, to whom they have ſold their ſervices; and it is they, rather than the negroes, who appear foremoſt in deviſing acts of treachery, which they commit every day in the plantations. The Hottentot, too mild, and too void of paſſions, to enter into atrocious enterpriſes, would not have ſufficient ſtrength to carry them into execution: the moſt cruel treatment is not even capable of inſpiring him with an idea of this kind. In a word, the planter who has Hottentots only in his ſervice may ſleep ſoundly, aſſured that he will

will ſoon be informed of danger, ſhould any threaten him.

Theſe *baſtard* whites are robuſt and well made; their ſkin is of a clearer yellow than that of the Hottentots, and has the colour of dried lemon peel: it is very diſagreeable to the ſight. Their hair is black, much longer, and leſs frizzled. Intercourſe with women of this new breed, as may naturally be ſuppoſed, produces a ſpecies ſtill whiter, whoſe hair is alſo much leſs frizzled; and though, by thus proceeding gradually, there is at length no ſenſible difference between them and the Europeans in their hair and the whiteneſs of their ſkin, the prominence of the cheek bones is ſtill remarkable. This is one indelible characteriſtic, which may be obſerved even after the fourth generation.

The union of the Hottentot women with the negroes, gives birth to a race ſtill ſuperior to thoſe of whom I have ſpoken. They are much taller and better made, and their figure is more agreeable and engaging. Their colour, which holds a mean between the black of the father and the olive tint of the mother, is much leſs offenſive to the ſight: their moral and phyſical qualities are alſo very different. They are much ſought after, on account of their being capable of great labour; but what above all renders them of the higheſt value is, that to much activity, without turbulence, they join a fidelity that never betrays, and which does not fall to the lot of any baſtard white. Unluckily this race are not very numerous, on account of the difficulty of uniting the Hottentot women with the negroes, whom they deſpiſe.

It would have been highly advantageous to the public, as well as the private intereſt of the plan-

ters, to have long ago excited government to encourage the propagation of this ſpecies; the ſacrifice made would not have been burthenſome, and the expences and money advanced would have been returned an hundred fold.

We no longer live in thoſe ages of ſacred ignorance, when all people who were black were accounted anthropophagi. The Spaniards themſelves do not now believe, as in the time of their barbarous incurſions into Peru, that a pure ſoul cannot exiſt but in a white body. Travellers, and above all ſound philoſophy, teach us that an ugly covering may conceal a valuable diamond. Among the various negro nations that inhabit the weſtern coaſts of Africa, ſome are diſtinguiſhed by a more ſocial diſpoſition than others, by nobler inclinations, by greater activity, and more aptitude for knowledge; and it is this race who ought to have been preferred, in order to ſpread them among the colonies, by granting them every freedom. The planters would have favoured, as much as they could, the union of theſe ſtrangers with the Hottentot women; the latter, ſeeing them free, would not have deſpiſed them, and would have ſoon been familiariſed with them; and thus would have ariſen a generation of men, who, uniting to the mild and peaceable temper of their mothers the eſſential qualities of the beſt negroes of Guinea, would have deſtroyed as uſeleſs, and even dangerous, the cruel chains of ſlavery in all this part of Africa.

But theſe means, ſo eaſy and ſo natural, the execution of which ſome time ago would not have met with any obſtacle, will never be employed. At preſent it is too late to make any attempt of this kind; the turbulent race of the baſtard whites

whites are too numerous, and it may be eaſily foreſeen that they will one day be predominant at the Cape.

Beſides, though this project were ſtill practicable, the deſire and good intentions of the Dutch Eaſt-India Company would be rendered of no avail by various obſtacles. Scrupulouſly exact in all their engagements, we know that they ſhow a generoſity which, for their own honour and proſperty, all commercial aſſociations ought to aſſume as a model. There is no doubt but they would, without heſitation, make every ſacrifice neceſſary for the execution of this excellent plan, ſo well calculated to immortalize them; but a radical fault, the fault of government, muſt ever oppoſe it. It would be requiſite, in the firſt place, to expel all the inhabitants of the Cape and of the colonies, or at leaſt to reform their minds, in order to deſtroy thoſe ridiculous and antipatriotic prejudices which they affect to entertain.

Government ſuffers, becauſe it is not poſſible to check the progreſs of the evil, theſe planters, ſo proud of their colour, and who are diſtinguiſhed by no perſonal merit from their ſlaves—it ſuffers, I ſay, theſe ignorant peaſants, proud of a moderate fortune which they have not given themſelves the trouble to acquire by their induſtry, to deſpiſe and treat with contempt thoſe men, who, having deſerved well of the Company by the ſervices they have performed, either as ſoldiers or ſailors, eſtabliſh themſelves at the Cape in virtue of a permiſſion granted them by government; ſo that the meaneſt and moſt worthleſs of the planters always conſider a ſkilful ſailor, or brave ſoldier, as a being in ſome manner degraded, and unworthy of being con-

nected with them by marriage: and even the daughter of ſuch a planter, educated in the ſame principles, would rather periſh in miſery, than become the companion for life of one of theſe defenders of their country.

In ſuch circumſtances, a brave ſailor or ſoldier, ſubjected like all other men to the wants and imperious laws of nature, more powerful ſtill in warm than in temperate climates, being unable to aſſociate himſelf with a white woman who would render him happy, has no other reſource but to unite with a female Hottentot. Hence proceeds that immenſe number of baſtard whites, who at preſent ſwarm all over the colonies. The turbulent blood of the Europeans circulates and ferments in their veins; and diſturbances may every moment reſult from it, which the planters, too widely diſperſed to unite ſoon enough, will neither have leiſure nor power to prevent.

This baſtard race is eſtimated at a ſixth of the number of all the Hottentots in the colonies; and the origin of this mixture is only as old as the eſtabliſhment of the Dutch at the Cape, that is to ſay, an hundred and thirty-ſix years. It may be readily preſumed that, when the communication between the white men and the Hottentot women was firſt eſtabliſhed, it was neither ſo eaſy nor ſo general as at preſent: and, on the other hand, the population of the colony did not amount, as it does now, to eighty thouſand white people. This obſervation alone may be ſufficient to give an idea of the actual progreſſion of both. The Hottentot race ſubject to the colonies deviates more and more every day from its character and origin: they become corrupted

rupted and confounded by a mixture of the blacks and the whites; and, as this degeneration accelerates, their diſtinguiſhing marks will in time diſappear altogether. The phlegmatic and cold conſtitution of the Hottentots ſufficiently checks the progreſs of population already; whilſt the ſame cauſe in the women has a contrary effect, and renders them very prolific. The Hottentot women have at moſt three or four children by their huſbands; by negroes they triple that number; and bring forth ſtill more to the whites.

If the baſtard whites are naturally wicked; if they are daring, revengeful, enterpriſing, and perfidious—is it becauſe they are the offspring of a white man and a Hottentot woman, and becauſe the children bear a greater reſemblance to the father than to the mother? This preſumption, however mortifying it may be for our ſpecies, cannot be controverted. If it happen, which is very rare, that a white woman has connection with a Hottentot, the fruit of their intercourſe always retains the good diſpoſition, and the mild and beneficent temper, of the father. Theſe inſtances, I muſt repeat, are very uncommon. In love affairs at the Cape, as in Europe, the women ſhew more modeſty, delicacy, and reſerve than the men: the latter, on the contrary, never heſitate to gratify their appetite, whoever the object of it may be; and the dangers that thence reſult are not the ſame to both ſexes: but the baſtards of the white men and Hottentot women have in them the ſeeds of every vice, and of every irregularity.

Such, in general, is the information which I acquired myſelf, by living among the Hottentots.

tots. But I ſhall ſtop here, leſt I fatigue the reader's patience by theſe dry details; and return to them only when I may have an opportunity of mentioning them without being tedious in my relation of the different events of my journey.

As I propoſed to paſs a conſiderable time in Africa, my firſt care was to ſtudy the language of the inhabitants; and I indeed ſucceeded beyond expectation. The language of theſe people being very poor, has no occaſion for words to expreſs abſtract and metaphyſical ideas; it is ſuſceptible of no ornament. Though it has neither elegant phraſes nor a correct ſyntax, its difficulties are no leſs inſurmountable to thoſe who are deſtitute of genius and patience. I have however been too well rewarded for the pains I beſtowed on this part of my labours, by the pleaſure I enjoyed of being able to converſe freely with theſe people, ever to regret that I added a knowledge of this ſingular dialect to that of ſeveral other languages which have been the principal object of the very ſevere education I received.

The Hottentot language has no reſemblance, as ſeveral ancient authors pretend, "to the "gabbling of turkeys when they fight, to the "cry of the magpye, or the ſcreaming of an "owl;" much leſs do its ſounds imitate the cry of the bat, according to Pliny and Herodotus: to judge that it cannot reſemble all theſe things at the ſame time, we need only compare with one another all its different aſſimilations. It is equally falſe, that, to hear Hottentots converſing together, one would take them for a company of ſtammerers. From all theſe aſſertions, which are abſolutely contradictory and

deſtroy

deſtroy each other, we are naturally led to think that no traveller, who has ſpoken of the Hottentot language, has ſo carefully ſtudied it as to give a clear and preciſe idea of it; and conſequently, without enquiring into the cauſes of their profound ignorance, I may aſſert that they have been as really deceived themſelves as they have deceived others.

This language, notwithſtanding its ſingularity, and the difficulty of pronouncing it, is not ſo diſcouraging as it at firſt appears. It may be learnt by perſeverance; I have known planters who ſpoke it fluently, and I myſelf was able to make myſelf underſtood in a ſhort time. It is, however, in general, very difficult for every European; but more ſo for a Frenchman than for a Dutchman, a German, &c. eſpecially as the *u*, the *h*, and the *g* are pronounced in the ſame manner as in the languages of the two latter; that is to ſay, the *u*, *ou*; and the other two letters by expirations, for which the throat of a Frenchman is not formed, and which he catches with great difficulty.

Of all the vocabularies hitherto publiſhed in different works, there is none by which a ſingle word can be comprehended. It would be in vain to attempt to uſe them, for one never could be underſtood; and a Hottentot would never ſuſpect that he heard his own language. It would appear as if the authors of theſe vocabularies had purpoſely ſuppreſſed the only mark which often forms the whole ſignification of the words; for they have made no mention of different clappings with the tongue, which are indiſpenſable ſigns that precede or ſeparate the words, and without which they would have no clear or preciſe meaning.

Theſe clappings are of three kinds, all very different from each other. The firſt, which I ſhall diſtinguiſh by this mark (ᴀ), the ſimpleſt, ſofteſt, eaſieſt to be executed, and that which is moſt uſed, is performed by preſſing the tongue to the palate, againſt the inciſive teeth, while the mouth is ſhut; then, by quickly detaching the tongue, and opening the mouth at the ſame time, this clapping is heard; which is nothing elſe than that ſmall noiſe, very familiar to us, when, haraſſed by a tireſome perſon, we wiſh to ſhew, without ſpeaking, that we have loſt all patience.

The ſecond clapping (v) is more ſonorous than the firſt. It is ſufficient, in order to form it, to detach the tongue from the middle of the palate, and to imitate the noiſe which grooms employ to make a horſe go faſter. In this caſe no force is neceſſary, but ſimply to detach the tongue, and the ſound is produced of itſelf. Were the ſound too diſtinct, it would be impoſſible, or at leaſt very difficult, to join it as it ought to the firſt ſyllable of the word that muſt follow it.

Greater force muſt be given to the third kind of clapping (ᐞ), which is pronounced with more energy, and is heard more diſtinctly. It is the leaſt uſed, and appears to be the moſt difficult; for it requires great care and attention to adapt it properly to the word that follows it, as it is performed by a ſingular contraction of the tongue, which is drawn back to the extremity of the palate near the throat. It may be readily conceived, that, after this contraction of the tongue, conſiderable force is employed to puſh it towards the lips, and to articulate the words that muſt follow it, without any appearance of reſt or interruption.

Theſe

Theſe different clappings have alſo a different modulation, and may be more or leſs difficult to be executed, according to the letter or ſyllable which they ſtrike, and with which, as I have already ſaid, they muſt be united, not to pervert the ſenſe. In this the ſtrength of the pronunciation of the language may be ſaid to conſiſt.

All theſe differences appear very harſh to the ear of an European, and very difficult to be acquired. Such indeed they appeared to me at firſt, but one ſoon becomes accuſtomed to them; and I can aſſert that this language, upon the whole, is not deſtitute of harmony, and that in the mouth of a Hottentot woman it has its charms, as the German has its beauties in that of an amiable Saxon lady.

I am of opinion that, if people ſhould attempt to ſtudy this language from the vocabularies hitherto publiſhed, and to ſpeak it without being otherwiſe inſtructed in its principles, they would loſe themſelves in words void of ſenſe, and the reſult would be nothing elſe but confuſion—a diſguſting chaos, in which the haraſſed imagination would find only ridiculous abſurdity.

There are a few words indeed which may be employed without this clapping of the tongue, but ſuch exceptions are very rare.

To prove how neceſſary theſe different ſounds produced by the tongue are to ſhew the ſignification of the words, and how they determine the ſynonimes and different meanings, I ſhall give an example, as it will render this ſubject much eaſier to be comprehended. In the Hottentot language *aâp* ſignifies a horſe and an arrow; it is alſo the name of a river: the difference alone in the clapping of the tongue determines the preciſe

ciſe idea which it is meant to convey. Pronounced ſimply, without any colliſion, it ſignifies a *horſe*; with the ſecond clapping, of which I have ſpoken, it ſignifies a *river*; and, with the third, it ſignifies an *arrow*. In the like manner ʌ-*ou ip* is a rock; Δ-*ou ip*, the name of the buſtard; Δ-*ka ip*, that of a venomous ſerpent; and ʌ-*ka ip*, a kind of African antelope.

Beſides theſe three kinds of clapping, which, as may be eaſily ſeen, are indiſpenſably neceſſary, certain parts of ſome words are nothing elſe but ſounds formed in the throat; but it is impoſſible to deſcribe them, and they can be imprinted in the memory only by long practice. I ſhall diſtinguiſh them by a ſmall croſs placed over the letter where they are to be uſed.

To be more ſcrupulouſly exact, I muſt add, that one word often has two different ſignifications, by the brevity or weak ſound of one of its vowels.

From what I have ſaid, it may be eaſily ſeen how difficult it would be to write this language in ſuch a manner as to be read and pronounced with that preciſion which is neceſſary. It would firſt of all be requiſite to form a particular alphabet for it; and to accuſtom oneſelf to theſe clappings, would be the principal ſtep towards ſucceſs. But as the ſtudy of this language will never form a part of the education of our young men of fortune, who have no deſire for being ſent ſo far to learn how to behave in polite company; and as, on the other hand, it would be of no utility to fatigue the reader by a tireſome dictionary, which he would not read; I ſhall ſuppreſs it, and for the ſatisfaction of the curious give a few words only which concern natural hiſtory.

Should

Should any naturaliſt be deſirous of travelling through the ſame country, it would be of great advantage to him to be able to name to the Hottentots any animal, or other object, which he might wiſh to procure. An exact vocabulary of thoſe things which might principally engage his attention, would undoubtedly be found uſeful to him, and cannot even here diſpleaſe any one. I ſhould have thought myſelf very happy had any traveller before me ſmoothed the firſt difficulties of this language; for a dictionary of it would have rendered the commencement of my reſearches leſs diſguſting and leſs laborious. I therefore conſider it as a part of my duty to preſent here what I ſo much wiſhed for myſelf, and to ſubjoin the primitive names of the greater part of the animals of Africa, ſuch as they have always been known and diſtinguiſhed by the Hottentots of the deſarts. I have added alſo thoſe given them by the planters at the Cape of Good Hope.

It muſt be obſerved that the Hottentots of the colonies, having in part forgotten their language, diſfigure what remains by a mixture of corrupted Dutch; ſo that, without mentioning other inconveniences which thence ariſe, animals change their names, or have ſeveral different ones, according to the different cantons or colonies where they are found. This produces a confuſion very difficult to be cleared up, and is one reaſon for preferring the nomenclature of the natives, whoſe language, always the ſame, is ſecured from experiencing any change or variation.

Engliſh Names.	*Dutch Names.*	*Hottentot Names.*
The Elephant	Oliphant	∧—Goap
The Rhinoceros	Renoſter	∨—Nabap
The Hippopotamus	Zee-Koe	∨—Kaous
The Giraffe	Kameel-Paerd	△—Na-ip
The Buffalo	Beuffle	∧—Ka-oop
The Paſan	Gems-Bock	∧—Kaip
The Koedoe	Coudoe	∨—Koudou, or Gaip
The Bubale	Harte-Beeſt	△—Kamap
The Zebra	Welde-Paerd	∨—Kouarep
The Quaga	Quaga, or Welde Ezel	∨-Nou ∨-Kouarep
The Hare	Haaze	+ △—Ou-amp
A Marmot	Das	+ ∨—Ka oump
The Wild Boar	Welde-Varke	∨—Kou-Goop
The Ant Bear	Erd-Varke	∧—Goup
The Porcupine	Yzer-Varke	∨—Nou ap
A Dog	Hond	∧—Harip
Dogs	Honden	∧—Harina
A Rat	Rott	Douroup
A Bat	Vleer-Muyſe	∧--Nouga-Bouroup
A Lion	Leuw	Gamma
A Tiger	Tyger	Garou-Gamma
A Tiger Cat	Tyger-Kat	+ ∧—Ou amp
The Hyæna	Wolf	∧—Hirop
The Wild Dog	Welde-Hond	△—Goup
The Jackal	Jakals	∧—Dirip
The Horſe	Paerd	Aap
A Bull	Beull	Karamap
A Cow	Koe	Goumas
An Ox	Oſs	Goumap
A Sheep	Schaap	Goou
A Goat	Bock	Bri-i
A She-Goat	Gytt	Tararé bris
A Bird	Voogel	△—Kanip
The Buſtard	Trap-Gans	△—Ou ip
The French Field Duck	Kor-Haan	∧—Haragap
A Pheaſant	Feſant	Koa Koa, or ∨—Kabos
A Martin	Welde Swaluw	∧ -O-atſi ∧-nambro
A Partridge	Patrys	∧—Ouri-Kinas

A Quail

English Names.	*Dutch Names.*	*Hottentot Names.*
A Quail	Kwartel	△—Kabip
A Sparrow	Moſs	∨—Kabari
A Vulture	Aas-Voogel	∨—Gha ip
		+
A Wild Gooſe	Welde-Gans	Gaamp
		+
Mountain Duck	Berg-Eend	△-Karo hei gaamp
The Phenicopteros	Flamingo	△—Gaorip
A Turtle Dove	Tortel-Duyf	∧—Neis
A Mountain	Berg	∧—Oumma
A Rock	Klep	∧—Ouip ∧—Karip
A River	Rivier	∨—Aap
A Fountain	Fontyn	∧—Aaup
The Sea	Zée	Hourip
A Tree	Boom	Haip
A Waggon	Waage	Kouri-ip
A Flower	Blom	△—Narina
Milk	Melck	Diep
Water	Waater	∨—Kama
Fleſh	Vleeſch	∨—Gaaus
Fiſh	Vis	△—Ko oup
A Spider	Spen	∧—Hous
A Cameleon		∨—Karou-Koup
A Butterfly	Kapelle	Tabou Tabou
		+
Three different kinds of Antelope	Ree Bock	Gnioop
		+
	Duyker	∧—A oump
	Steen-Bock	∧—Harip
A Fly	Vlig	∧—Dinap
A Serpent	Slang	∧—Kanou-Goup
A Tortoiſe	Schil-Pad	∧—Ouna
A Toad	Pade	∨—Oorokoop
The Guana	Egouane	∧—Naſeep
A Fuſee	Snaphan	△—Kabooup
An Arrow	Peyl	△—Aap
A Bow	Boog	Kgaap
An Aſſagay	Sagaye	∧—Aure-Koop
An European	Europées	∨—Orée-Goep
A Negro	Swarte-Jong	Kabop
		+ +
A Hottentot man	Hottentot	Khoé-Khoep
		+
A Hottentot woman	Hottentoten	Tararé-Khoes

From

From what I have ſaid of the manners and ſimplicity of this nation, one may be eaſily convinced that their language is poor, and that before the arrival of the Europeans it muſt have been ſtill poorer. The latter introduced new objects, to which it was neceſſary to give names; and on this account the Hottentots of the colonies have expreſſions neither uſed nor underſtood by the ſavage Hottentots, to whom the greater part of theſe objects are unknown.

However this may be, there is always in this language a great affinity between the thing and the word by which it is diſtinguiſhed. For example, they call a fuſee *Δ-ka-booup*; and, by the manner in which it ought to be pronounced, the clapping of the tongue, and the firſt ſyllable *Δ-ka*, imitate the noiſe of the cock when it falls, and that of the opening of the pan; in ſhort, the word *booup* conveys, in a ſtriking manner, an idea of the exploſion or report. In general the Hottentot language is very expreſſive; and as theſe people, when they ſpeak, always geſticulate, and repreſent in pantomime whatever they ſay, a ſuperficial knowledge of their idiom is ſufficient to enable one eaſily to comprehend the moſt important things.

Three weeks had now elapſed ſince the departure of my envoys; but I was not the firſt to form any reflections on the cauſe of their delay: I always kept my uneaſineſs to myſelf, not wiſhing to occaſion any to thoſe around me; for, by not concealing my ſuſpicions, I ſhould only have ſupplied them with arms to deſtroy my projects. They could not, without ſadneſs, think on my determined reſolution of penetrating into Caffraria. I ſometimes ſurpriſed my people diſcourſing on this ſubject, and more or leſs murmuring againſt

againſt their maſter; but at bottom they were ſtill attached to me, and in their converſation I was the principal object of their agitation and fear. They did not heſitate to call me a raſh man, who, apparently caring very little for his life, obſtinately wiſhed to make them ſharers with him in a moſt melancholy fate, by conducting them to deſtruction. I had too much reaſon to apprehend that they had all agreed to quit me, in caſe I ſhould perſiſt in my reſolutions; and I judged that nothing embarraſſed them but the manner of executing their plot. I however diſcovered, that of twenty-five conſpirators there were not two who concurred in opinion: thoſe whom I had engaged in my ſervice in the courſe of my journey, ſaw no great difficulties in this ſecret departure; but thoſe whom I had engaged at the houſe of Mr. Mulder, in the country of Auteniqua, and at the Cape under the auſpices of the fiſcal, doubted much whether they ſhould return or not to the town. In a word, they could neither agree among themſelves, nor form any reſolution.

They accuſed me of having ſacrificed the envoys; and indeed it muſt be owned that their long abſence appeared extraordinary. From what Hans told me, three or four days at moſt were ſufficient for them to go to the reſidence of king Pharoo; and allowing as many for them to ſtay there, and the ſame number to return, I found, by this plain calculation, that more than double the time neceſſary for the journey had already elapſed. I therefore began to imagine that ſome accident had befallen them, or that the ſuſpicions of the Caffres had proved fatal to theſe unhappy people. I did not however loſe all hopes of ſeeing them again; but I remained

wavering

wavering in uncertainty, neither knowing what to think nor what orders to give to the reſt of my troop, to put an end to their diſputes and uneaſineſs. My brave Klaas was of opinion that we ought ſtill to wait, and to ſuffer ſuch of my mutinous attendants as ſhewed moſt impatience and ill humour to depart when they thought proper.

In the mean time I aſſumed an air of tranquillity, and continued my hunting excurſions as uſual; but a ſecret impulſe conducted me, as it were mechanically, to that quarter in which I hoped to ſee my deputies arrive. In the evening, being quite dejected becauſe they had not appeared, I returned to my camp, in order to recommence the ſame uſeleſs and melancholy walk next morning. Thus do we ſport with the imagination, when we are in hopes of finding the object that we ardently wiſh for.

One evening at length Klaas came, and ſhut himſelf up with me in my tent, in order to give the finiſhing ſtroke to my uneaſineſs, by informing me that he had loſt every hope, and that Hans and his companions were without doubt aſſaſſinated; that the fuſees, ammunition, and arms which they carried along with them had tempted the Caffres; and that this was ſufficient to induce that nation, then at war, in want of every thing uſeful for their defence, and particularly iron, to commit murder: and he adviſed me not to fatigue the reſt of my troop any longer; for, without their aſſiſtance, we ſhould be able neither to advance nor to return.

I was perfectly ſenſible of the force of this reaſoning, dictated by the ſincereſt concern for my perſon, and the ſafety of my effects, which I ſhould have been obliged to leave behind me for want

want of people to aſſiſt me in tranſporting them. I was almoſt on the point of giving way to the advice of Klaas, and of renouncing my ſolemn engagement of not quitting Rocks-Kraal, the only rendezvous where theſe generous envoys could meet their maſter, when we obſerved at a diſtance one of the four people who watched my cattle running towards my camp, ſeemingly alarmed and out of breath. Having told me that he had juſt ſeen, on the other ſide of the river, a conſiderable body of Caffres who were preparing to croſs it, this information at firſt ſtruck a great terror into all my attendants; while I alone, ſtill flattered with the chimerical hopes of again ſeeing my people, turned the whole of my thoughts towards them. As the numerous band which had been announced to me did not correſpond with my expectations, and deſtroyed the whole illuſion, I diſpatched four fuſileers, under the command of Klaas, to ſearch for my oxen, and to bring them all to my camp; deſiring him, after he had performed this ſervice, to examine theſe ſtrangers, without diſcovering himſelf, to learn whether they were ſo numerous as I had been taught to believe, and whether any thing ſuſpicious appeared in their behaviour. I told him alſo to watch their motions, in order that he might be enabled to judge what was their intention; and I beſides ſtrictly enjoined him that, in caſe he met my envoys, he ſhould immediately inform me, by commanding his people to diſcharge their fuſees; but, if the body ſeen were Caffres, to place himſelf in ambuſh, and to diſpatch one of his companions to my camp. Juſt as he was departing, the whole of my cattle arrived, with

the three other keepers; who, like their comrades, had been ſtruck with great terror.

As for me, I examined all my arms, and ordered them to be loaded, though I had no intention of being the firſt to commence hoſtilities: but, as I propoſed to wait reſolutely for the enemy, I was determined alſo to make every reſiſtance in my power; and it was proper that I ſhould be prepared for ſuch an event.

I confeſs that I was not free from uneaſineſs: not that I dreaded the event of a battle, for my arms gave me too much confidence in my ſuperiority; but I ſhould have been extremely ſorry to have been under the neceſſity of engaging before we had come to an explanation. By ſuch a ſtep I ſhould have ruined all my hopes: the pacific intentions which I had always profeſſed, and which alone could have entitled me to the privilege of traverſing all Caffraria in liberty, being belied by ſuch acts of hoſtility, I ſhould have been ranked with the planters, thoſe barbarous aſſaſſins of the ſavages, and muſt have been conſidered as an enemy whoſe whole caravan deſerved to be exterminated.

Whilſt I was making all my preparations, my mind was agitated by a variety of reflections; from which I was however ſuddenly freed, by a diſcharge that was a ſignal of joy to my whole camp: after the orders I had given to Klaas, no doubt was entertained that he had fallen in with my meſſengers. Notwithſtanding this favourable appearance, my people were not yet entirely freed from their apprehenſions, and I found it very difficult to calm them entirely. The three keepers of my flocks, above all, perſiſted to affirm, that in the whole troop of Caffres they had not obſerved a ſingle Hottentot;

and

and thus ſuddenly paſſing from hope to fear, they wiſhed to inſinuate, that the reports which had been heard were too evident ſigns that an action had taken place, and that Klaas was engaged with the enemy.

At the turning of a little hill however, which was diſtant about three hundred paces from us, I ſaw Klaas himſelf make his appearance, but alone. By the help of my ſpyglaſs I could perfectly diſtinguiſh his eaſy carriage, and even the features of his face, which ſeemed to announce nothing alarming; but I was more fully convinced when I perceived, ſome minutes after, the whole troop advancing the ſame way, in good order, towards the camp. My Hottentots, mixed with the Caffres, gave me reaſon to conclude that they were in perfect harmony with one another; and, as they approached nearer, I diſtinguiſhed Hans. I then ordered all the arms to be laid aſide, and bid my people appear as calm and ſerene as poſſible.

I was very impatient to receive my deputies, and to learn from their own mouths what riſques I could run for them and myſelf without danger. I did not however think proper to go to meet them, or to quit my ſmall arſenal, until I had heard what theſe travellers had to relate. When the Caffres found themſelves within throw of an aſſagay, they all ſtopped; and Hans, quitting the troop, came ſtraight towards me. In a few words he told me, that I was at liberty to purſue my journey into Caffraria; that I ſhould be expoſed to no riſque; that I would be reſpected as a friend; that the nation he had quitted invited me in the moſt preſſing manner not to put off the time any longer, and that they would receive me with pleaſure; that I might judge of their

general intentions by the confidence which they ſhewed, and by the liberty which ſeveral of them had taken to come and pay me a viſit; that they offered me their friendſhip, and requeſted mine; and, in a word, that they had quitted their own country on the aſſurances made to them that I would give them a favourable reception.

With regard to the delay which had alarmed us ſo much, Hans informed me that, when he arrived among the Caffres, he could not find king Pharoo, who had retired to the diſtance of thirty leagues from the uſual place of his reſidence: that after waiting ſome time in hopes of ſeeing him return, fearing that he ſhould not be able to accompliſh the buſineſs for which he was ſent, he had reſolved to go in ſearch of him; but learning from a new horde that the chief had again ſet out, and that no one knew what route he would purſue, or how long he would be abſent, he had deſiſted from this attempt. Some believed that the prince was gone towards the colonies; and others that he intended to viſit the *Tambouchis*, a nation bordering on Caffraria, with whom they carried on a trade for iron and arms. He added, that finding it impoſſible to execute my orders, and not knowing what courſe to purſue, he thought it would be beſt to return, and bring back my two Hottentots; but that, from the favourable accounts which he had given of my character, and pacific diſpoſition, ſeveral of the Caffres offered of their own accord to accompany him, and in their turn to come as a deputation, to aſſure me of the general good-will which the whole inhabitants bore towards me; and that, being fully convinced

vinced I was not a Dutch planter, they would receive me as a friend, and even as a protector,

These Caffres truſted that I would enable them to be revenged on a certain planter of Bruyntjes-Hoogte, againſt whom they had diſmal complaints to make, and whoſe name alone inſpired them with horror. I indeed afterwards received ſome details reſpecting the life of this wretch, and particular conſiderations prevent me from here expoſing his name; but the crimes which have rendered him a monſter are not unknown to any inhabitant of the Cape. In vain has the government repeatedly ſummoned him to appear at its tribunal, to anſwer for his conduct; entrenched in territories where the laws are inactive, and without force, the orders of the governor, the threats of his ſubalterns, and all their decrees, are to him only ſignals for committing freſh crimes.

Without entering further into converſation, or aſking more queſtions, which would have been unſeaſonable, I gave permiſſion to the Caffres to advance. Hans therefore made a ſign to them with his hand, and in a moment I found myſelf ſurrounded. Without comprehending my envoys, there were in all nineteen men, five women, and two young children. They ſaluted me, one after the other, by the word *tabè*, which I knew as well as they, and which was all the anſwer I made to their compliments; but I underſtood very little of their language. In their pronunciation they did not employ that clapping uſed by the Hottentots; but what ſhewed their difference from the Gonaquas moſt ſenſibly, was their manner of ſaluting. They all ſpoke together, and with a precipitation and volubility which appeared to me ſo much the ſtranger,

ſtranger, as I had been for almoſt a year accuſtomed to the ſlow manner of my indolent Hottentots. I could not conceive to what cauſe this confuſed noiſe which buzzed in my ears was to be imputed; and I loſt all patience, becauſe I could not catch any diſtinct ſound.

Though I could not comprehend what theſe Caffres ſaid to one another, I obſerved that their attention was very much engaged, either with my camp, my perſon, or my people, and their different motions. Their eyes roved with rapidity from one object to another; and every thing in turns ſtruck them with ſurpriſe. I have ſomewhere read that aſtoniſhment indicates ignorance; but ignorance does not prove want of abilities. This reflection may be applied to the Caffres, for undoubtedly they cannot be accuſed of ſtupidity; and between them and the Hottentots there is a vaſt diſtance, in reſpect to ingenuity and induſtry. Hans had boaſted much to them of my double-barrelled fuzees and piſtols; and from his account they were inclined to conſider my arms as wonderful things. One of them, in the name of all the reſt, having aſked permiſſion to ſee them, I ordered them to be brought forth; and I ſhewed them to them without manifeſting the leaſt ſuſpicion. Being handed about from one to another, they were examined and turned over with the moſt minute attention; but their eager curioſity required ſomething more. This I expected, and I luckily had an opportunity of gratifying them. Obſerving two ſwallows cleaving the air before me, I fired at them, and they fell at the diſtance of a few paces from us. This ſudden action, performed

formed with the utmoſt compoſure, redoubled their aſtoniſhment; and they knew not which moſt to admire, the arms, or the perſon who uſed them. It is certain that this lucky ſtroke, which might not have ſucceeded, inſpired them with the higheſt idea of my ſkill; and I took advantage of it to impreſs them with a deeper ſenſe of my ſuperiority. I aſked them, by ſigns, whether they could do the ſame with their aſſagays; but they ſhook their heads with a ſmile, and gave me to underſtand, that with theſe weapons it was impoſſible to kill a bird flying. One of them, however, riſing up, pointed to my ſheep, which were feeding at ſome diſtance, and ſignified that he and his companions could ſtrike them running, as well as other quadrupedes, whether of greater or leſs ſize. Hans then preſented to me a young Caffre, who was perfectly well formed, and whoſe perſon immediately prepoſſeſſed me in his favour. Before this period I had never ſeen any of theſe people but, as one may ſay, in a rude ſtate. I however could not be ſatisfied with contemplating this youth; and his companions aſſured me that he was conſidered in the country as one of thoſe who were moſt expert in throwing the aſſagay and the ſhort club *; and that his dexterity in this reſpect had acquired him great reputation. I had heard ſo much of the Caffres, and of their formidable arms, that I eagerly embraced this opportunity of being convinced, by my own eyes, what a young Caffre could do who was only eighteen years of age, and who boaſted of his ſkill with ſo

* A kind of weapon uſed in the ſame manner as the aſſagay. I have a ſmall and a large one in my collection.

ſo much ſimplicity. As it was near dinner time, and as I propoſed to regale all theſe people, as well as my own, I ſent for a ſheep; and pointing to it with my finger, I gave the youth permiſſion to take aim at it. In his left hand he held five aſſagays, one of which, at my deſire, he graſped in his right; and the ſheep, being let looſe, began to run towards the flock. In the mean time he brandiſhed his aſſagay with force; darted forward by four or five rapid leaps, and having diſcharged the weapon, it flew through the air with a whizzing noiſe and pierced the ſides of the animal; which ſtaggered, and dropped down dead on the ſpot.

On this occaſion I could not conceal my joy and my ſurpriſe. So much ſkill and ſtrength, added to gracefulneſs, excited the admiration of all my people. Vanity is an univerſal paſſion; but it is modified according to manners and climates. In Europe it ſparkles in the eyes and in every feature of a beautiful woman, and inſpires her with haughtineſs: it is the ſoul of talents, and gives birth to maſterpieces of every kind; it conceals itſelf even under the coarſeſt attire and rags. In Africa, a ſavage cannot hide it: the teſtimonies of approbation which we all beſtowed upon my young Caffre, elevated his looks, and made the muſcles of his face expand. Proud of ſuch a triumph, and of my applauſes, his feet no longer touched the earth; he meaſured my height, ſtood cloſe by my ſide, and ſeemed to ſay, In what manner am I inferior to you?

His own countrymen were no leſs charmed with his ſucceſs: they fixed their eyes upon me, and endeavoured to diſcover by my looks what effect

effect this ſpecimen of ſkill had produced in my mind.

I had afterwards ſeveral opportunities of obſerving, that theſe people want nothing but an able chief at their head, and good order eſtabliſhed among them, to deſtroy the Hottentot nation, and all the colonies; but the ſuperiority of our arms will render their courage and dexterity of no avail, whilſt they have no other weapons for their defence but aſſagays.

After drawing his lance from the body of the animal, the young Caffre ſtruck the iron point of it ſeveral times into the ſand, and carefully wiped it with a handful of graſs.

I was extremely ſorry that I could not explain myſelf properly to theſe ſtrangers; the length of time required for interpretation, and perhaps the narrow conception of the interpreter, excited my impatience to ſuch a degree thet I could ſcarcely contain it. On the other hand, being more open and lively than the Hottentots, and having in their character nothing approaching to their taciturnity, theſe people gained upon me in volubility; and from the time of their arrival I had done nothing but return anſwers to thoſe queſtions with which their curioſity continually teazed me. As I wiſhed rather to be informed than to inform, I flattered myſelf with the hopes of ſeeing their volubility of words and confuſed geſtures ſoon at an end; and that at length I alſo ſhould have my turn, when their firſt effervescence had ſubſided.

More provident than the Hottentots, and truſting leſs to chance for their ſubſiſtence, they had not ſet out, as we commonly ſay, without full pockets.

pockets. They had brought along with them ſeveral oxen intended for proviſion, and four more to carry their baggage. Nor had they forgot thoſe beautiful baſkets which I had admired ſo much among the Gonaquas; and which they propoſed to exchange by the way, or with us, on very advantageous terms. They had alſo ſome cows with their calves; ſo that this caravan had an air of wealth and opulence which one could not expect to find in the diſmal valleys of Savoy.

I marked out, at ſome diſtance from my camp, the preciſe ſpot where I wiſhed them to lodge; and being more fortunate or better obeyed than Idomeneus, when he built the city of Salentum, in the ſpace of a few minutes I ſaw a ſmall colony riſing before me.

When our fires were kindled, the ſheep was cut into pieces and roaſted; and in a little time nothing remained of it but the ſkin. I was not ignorant how powerful an agent intereſt is to move all men, and how much it tends to diſpoſe them to benevolence. In my preſent ſituation I put in practice this principle, which had ſo often ſucceeded with me before. Being deſirous of gaining over theſe Caffres as I had gained the firſt ſavages I met with, and particularly the Gonaquas, I diſtributed among my gueſts different kinds of toys, and a certain quantity of tobacco. They received my preſents with great ſatisfaction, and each immediately began to uſe them.

But what chiefly engaged their attention, and what they would have gladly pilfered from me, was iron. They devoured it with their eyes, extolling it highly, and ſeeming to value it above every thing elſe. Happening to ſee ſome hatchets, pick-axes, large augers, and utenſils of every kind, which were behind my waggons, they coveted

veted them with a ſort of impatience, and only wanted an opportunity to lay their hands upon them. I however well knew in what manner ſavages ought to be treated; and I was ſo little afraid of them, that, even if I had not been ſo well armed I ſhould have willingly given up theſe objects to them; but, as I carried along with me ſo many implements, they were become ſo indiſpenſably neceſſary, that it was impoſſible for me to be generous, and ſacrifice them. Nevertheleſs, in order that I might deſtroy their deſire, or at leaſt weaken its ardour, ſince I could not deprive them of a knowledge of theſe valuable utenſils, I ordered them to be carefully concealed. From what I had learned of the embarraſſment under which theſe ſavages were with reſpect to their arms, I found that it was indeed dangerous to expoſe them to temptation any longer, as it might induce them to form reſolutions prejudicial to my repoſe, and to get poſſeſſion of thoſe articles by ſtratagem, if they could not by open force. Such in general is the character of the real ſavage, and ſuch is nature. No one has a right to retain that which belongs to all, and the leaſt inequality would be a ſource of the greateſt misfortunes. Whoever has read *Captain Cook's Voyages to the South Seas*, muſt have remarked that this navigator and his crew never landed without ſuſtaining ſome loſs; the iſlanders robbed them even in their veſſel, carried away the arms of thoſe who were ſent out on hunting parties, and ſtole the ſailors clothes, &c. Dr. Forſter informs us that Dr. Sparmann, after being robbed of his ſword, loſt alſo in the ſame excurſion two thirds of his clothes. The Caffres and the Hottentots have not yet attained to that degree of dexterity; but they are not entirely free from blame in this reſpect.

reſpect. To live on friendly terms with them, people muſt wink at many petty loſſes, or lock up their property carefully.

I had a convincing proof of the preſſing neceſſity under which the Caffres were of procuring iron. I blamed myſelf for having made them advance perhaps too ſoon, and for not having taken proper precautions. I however followed them, and gave orders that they ſhould be narrowly watched; and both I and Klaas perceived, though not without uneaſineſs, by the manner in which they converſed together, and meaſured the length and thickneſs of the bands that ſurrounded the wheels of my carriages, how much delighted they were with this treaſure. Had theſe people been able to read, and had they found in certain books, replete with excellent morality, which are common in the hands of our ladies of faſhion, that the ſimpleſt means of reſiſting temptation is to yield to it—this maxim, which is rather too philoſophical, would not have been conſidered by the Caffres as a pleaſantry, much leſs as an abſurdity, and my ruin would have been unavoidable.

The jealous and ſuſpicious eyes of my Hottentots were however ſtill attentive to every thing that paſſed; and, as if my own remarks had not been ſufficient, they came every moment to add theirs, and to entertain me with ſome new ſcene. I eaſily gueſſed their motives, for I every moment ſaw a ſpirit of diſcord fomenting amongſt them; and it was then that, taking the whole blame, I juſtly reproached myſelf for occaſioning the ſenſible coolneſs I remarked among my people, which my too great precipitation had given riſe to; and I regretted that I had very unſeaſonably ſtopped at Bruyntjes-Hoogte, to ſolicit the aſſiſtance of all the

the planters, who by their ſpeeches frightened my people, and diſturbed the harmony of my caravan: ſo true it is that the ſucceſs of every enterpriſe depends upon ſecrecy.

At this time I indeed ſaw nothing to alarm me: for we had too great a ſuperiority over our gueſts, both in ſtrength and in arms, had it been neceſſary to have recourſe to violence, the laſt means which ought to be employed with ſavages. I had no occaſion to be apprehenſive of any ſurpriſe on their part, as the ſpot I had aſſigned them was ſo ſituated that the ſmalleſt attempt would have occaſioned their deſtruction; but this did not prevent me from redoubling my precautions and ſeverity, both to keep my people to their duty, and to convince my gueſts that they could neither attack me openly, nor by ſtratagem, with any hopes of ſucceſs. If I except two of my chaſſeurs whom I every day ſent to procure proviſions, and four other people who guarded my cattle at paſture, there was not one of them that ever went out of my ſight. As for me, I remained continually in my camp, where I ſpent whole days in converſing with the Caffres, and in making an interpreter explain their anſwers to thoſe queſtions which I every moment put to them, from a deſire of being inſtructed, and receiving certain information reſpecting this nation, ſtill leſs known than that of the Hottentots. Our mutual embarraſſment, and the difficulty of tranſlating our different expreſſions, waſted, I muſt own, a great deal of time. The knowledge I acquired every day came ſo ſlowly, and amounted to ſo little, that I ſpent a whole week in theſe laborious converſations: but finding at length nothing but affability and probity amongſt them, and being convinced that they acted ſincerely and without

without deceit, I was under much leſs reſtraint: I laid aſide ſome of my reſerve, and obliged all my people to be perfectly eaſy amongſt them.

In a little time, a better acquaintance with their language rendered our converſations much more intereſting; I began to make myſelf underſtood, and I comprehended much better what they ſaid to me.

They were continually importuning me to follow them to their country, and they twenty times repeated all thoſe inducements which my interpreter had mentioned on his arrival. I was indeed too much inclined to liſten to theſe ſeducing invitations; but it never was my intention to ſet out with them: the reaſon of this will be ſeen hereafter. I therefore begged to be excuſed, telling them that it was impoſſible for me to get ready ſo ſoon as they wiſhed; and then examining them all in the ſtricteſt manner, I added, that, not being acquainted with their country myſelf, I had been told that it was filled with mountains and woods, difficult to be paſſed, and that on this account I could not carry my oxen and carriages along with me. They appeared to be very little affected with this declaration; and from the pleaſure which they ſeemed to teſtify on my promiſing ſoon to pay them a viſit, I judged that they had no great hopes of getting poſſeſſion of my large pick-axes, and the iron that ſurrounded the wheels of my waggons.

In proportion, however, as I expreſſed my friendſhip towards them, and made them promiſes, I obſerved their vengeance kindle up in their countenances, and that they ſeemed to place their only hopes of ſafety in me. They held many conferences, preſſed cloſe one to another, and ſufficiently ſhewed by their geſtures the high opinion

nion which they had formed of my ſtrength, and of my ſincere deſire to ſerve them. The name of the ferocious inhabitant of Bruyntjes-Hoogte was continually in their mouths; and one of them, ſhaking his head through ſpite and rage, told me that, among other victims, his wife ready to lie-in, and two children, had been butchered by the hand of this planter; and that a thirſt of blood had hurried him to this crime, merely from a pleaſure of committing it. However ſhocking this anecdote may appear, I muſt give it a place here, in the ſame manner in which it was told me, and as it has been ſince certified to me more than twenty times.

At a time when the planters and the Caffres lived on good terms together, and had no reaſon to fear or to perſecute each other, the tiger of Bruyntjes-Hoogte, who was diſconcerted by this harmony, and who could not be happy except when ſurrounded by carnage and ſlaughter, in hopes of ſtirring up the flames of war, and reviving ancient quarrels, thought proper to procure from the town a few gun-barrels, which were of no more value than old iron. Having eaſily found means to exchange them with the Caffres, who are always in want of ſuch things, before he delivered them he ſpiked up the touch-holes, put a double charge of powder into each of them and filled them with nails and pieces of iron, which he rammed into them up to the mouth. The unhappy ſavages, who were not acquainted with fire-arms but from their effects, and who knew nothing of their mechaniſm, carried home their barrels, and prepared to form them into aſſagays. The fires being kindled, and the fatal barrels put into them, as ſoon as they grew hot the powder took fire, and produced a dreadful exploſion, which

which in a moment ſcattered the immenſe furnace, the workmen, and their inſtruments; and even wounded a great many who ſtood at a conſiderable diſtance. One of them who told me this circumſtance, of which the whole horde were witneſſes, made me count the wounds he received by this tragical experiment, and the indelible ſcars with which his whole body was covered.

One anecdote of this nature is ſufficient to juſtify the implacable hatred which rages in the rankled breaſts of the Caffres; and which we may even ſay that they bring into the world with them. Why, therefore, ſhould we conſider as the effects of a diſpoſition naturally ferocious, thoſe ſudden and unexpected attacks, which are only at bottom juſt repriſals? Nature has not been more a ſtep-mother to the Caffres than to any other ſavage nation; all e[illegible]ually revolt at injuſtice and tyranny; and the ca[illegible]neſt and moſt peaceable beings that we know, the Caribs of the ſouthern coaſts of America, are transformed into furious lions, if any inconſiderate invader only dares to attack them in their humble retreats.

If the Caffres, when oppreſſed by perſecution, and continually plundered and harraſſed, have been induced to commit acts of cruelty; if their plans for being revenged have ſometimes ſucceeded; and if they have trod down and deſtroyed crops, burnt plantations, and maſſacred the proprietors, the white people lent them their fury, by giving them examples of the moſt horrid outrages.

The hatred of the Caffres is ſtill unfortunately extended to a part of the Hottentots, whom the inſidious and treacherous policy of the planters has perverted, and engaged in their conſpiracies, in order to leſſen thoſe riſques to which the me-

thod

thod neceſſary to be purſued with the Caffres expoſes them, and to be able to meet them upon an equal footing. Theſe precautions, however, are often of no avail againſt the addreſs and active vigilance of the enemy. The Hottentot, too timid, and too badly armed, to ſhew himſelf openly, depends much upon ſtratagem: taking upon himſelf the office of ſpy, he ſilently reconnoitres the poſts occupied by the adverſe party; and above all, thoſe where their treaſures are depoſited. But the piercing eye of the Caffre ſoon diſcovers his ſecret motions; and darting upon the ſpy like an arrow, he inſtantly ſacrifices him to his vengeance.

By ſtudying this nation, ſo much aſperſed, every day more and more, I began to entertain a no leſs favourable opinion of them than I did of that of the Hottentots; and from my own principles, and manner of behaving to the ſavages, I could not allow myſelf to think that I was in any danger from either of them. My hours, the pleaſures and occupations of which I continually varied, rolled on like the paſt, without trouble and without uneaſineſs. I had begun my hunting excurſions, and my gueſts followed me in turns; but I choſe to be accompanied, in preference to any other, by my young Caffre, who afforded me the ſatisfaction of ſeeing ſometimes a gnou fall by his hand, and ſometimes other animals, which he killed with his formidable aſſagay with as much dexterity as he had ſhewn in piercing the ſheep. In one of our hunting parties he aſſiſted me to kill a male hippopotamus of an extraordinary ſize; it was the only one we had met with, and perhaps the only one to be found in the compaſs of ten miles: the firing of our fuſees, which thundered on all ſides from morning till night,

had undoubtedly frightened all the reſt. I did not find in this one that flavour which had given me ſo much pleaſure in the firſt female I killed. My people pretended that it was too old, and that, beſides, a female was always ſuperior in delicacy. Its fat had a more ſolid conſiſtence, but it was not ſo thick as that of the females, which differs in nothing from what we call in France *petit ſalè*; but, above all, it was diſguſtingly rancid, except for the palate of a Hottentot. The Caffres, who are not ſo fond of greaſe as the Hottentots, ſet no great value upon it, and preferred the fleſh of their oxen. Even the ſheep did not tempt them; and this may ſufficiently account for their never breeding any of theſe animals.

I had not yet taken a near view of the horned cattle which they brought along with them, becauſe at break of day they ſtrayed to the thickets and paſtures, and were not brought back by their keepers till the evening. One day, however, having repaired to their kraal very early, I was much ſurpriſed when I firſt beheld one of theſe animals. I ſcarcely knew them to be oxen and cows: not on account of their being much ſmaller than ours, ſince I obſerved in them the ſame form, and the ſame fundamental characteriſtics, in which I could not be deceived; but on account of the multiplicity of their horns, and the variety of their different twiſtings. They had a great reſemblance to thoſe marine productions, known by naturaliſts under the name of *ſtags horns*. Being at this time perſuaded that theſe concretions, of which I had no idea, were a peculiar preſent of nature, I conſidered the Caffre oxen as a variety of the ſpecies: but I was undeceived by my gueſts, who informed me that this ſingularity was only the effect of their invention and taſte; and that,

by

by means of a proceſs with which they were well acquainted, they could not only multiply theſe horns, but alſo give them any forms that their imagination might ſuggeſt. Having offered to exhibit their ſkill in my preſence, if I had any deſire of learning their method, it appeared to me ſo new and uncommon, that I was willing to ſerve an apprenticeſhip ; and for ſeveral days I attended a regular courſe of leſſons on this ſubject.

They take the animal at as tender an age as poſſible ; and when the horns begin to appear, they make a ſmall vertical inciſion in them with a ſaw, or with any other inſtrument that may be ſubſtituted for it, and divide them into two parts. This diviſion makes the horns, yet tender, ſeparate of themſelves ; ſo that in time the animal has four very diſtinct ones. If they wiſh to have ſix, or even more, ſeveral notches made with the ſaw produce as many as may be required : but if they are deſirous of forcing one of theſe diviſions, or the whole horn, to form, for example, a complete circle, they cut away from the point, which muſt not be hurt, a ſmall part of its thickneſs ; and this amputation, often renewed, and with much patience, makes the horn bend in a contrary direction ; and the point meeting the root, it exhibits the appearance of a perfect circle. As it is certain that inciſion always cauſes a greater or leſs degree of bending, it may be readily conceived that every variation that caprice can imagine may be produced by this ſimple method.

In ſhort, one muſt be born a Caffre, and have his taſte and patience, to ſubmit to that minute care and unwearied attention required for this operation, which in this country can only be uſeleſs, but which in other climates would be hurtful : for the horn, thus disfigured, would become

weak; whereas, when preſerved ſtrong and entire, it keeps at a diſtance the famiſhed bears and wolves of Europe.

Whilſt I was among the Caffres, ſurveying their oxen and utenſils, and haraſſing them with queſtions reſpecting their country, their manners, and their cuſtoms, my attention was attracted by a hollow noiſe which ſeemed to proceed from a great diſtance, and which ſtruck my ear at certain intervals. Having aſked them what it was, and whether they heard it as well as I, they informed me that three or four of their companions were employed at the bottom of a ſmall rock, which they had diſcovered in the neighbourhood, in forging ſome arms from bits of old iron they had brought with them, or procured in exchange by the way. Being equally anxious to know whether they had not ſtole ſome of my utenſils, as curious to learn their manner of proceeding in an operation ſo difficult for ſavages, deſtitute of even the ſimpleſt tools, I prevailed on two of them to leave the reſt, and to conduct me to the forge. As this unexpected viſit, which furniſhed me with an opportunity of giving theſe people ſome information reſpecting the firſt mechaniſm of a forge, of which they had little idea, may have been attended with very important conſequences, I muſt not omit the leaſt circumſtance of a ſcene, which was equally new to me as well as to theſe ſavages.

The Caffres forge and fabricate their own aſſagays; but, as they are not acquainted with any of the properties of iron except its malleability, their art does not extend ſo far as to caſt it; and on this account they muſt have that which has been already wrought. They are wonderfully expert in applying to their own purpoſes old gun-barrels,

barrels, hoops, and other pieces of iron. Their aſſagays are of two kinds: in one the handle is entirely of iron, and perfectly round; the other, which is more ſkilfully, I ought rather to ſay, cruelly, formed, has a ſquare handle, and two of the angles are full of notches inclining downwards, whilſt thoſe of the two alternate ones incline in a contrary direction; which occaſions a dreadful laceration in the fleſh, whether they enter the body or are extracted from it. Their patience cannot fail to excite admiration, when one thinks that with a block of granite, or even common rock, which ſerves them for an anvil, and a piece of the ſame ſubſtance for a hammer, they fabricate arms as well finiſhed as if they had come from the hands of the moſt ſkilful artiſt. I defy any blackſmith, notwithſtanding all his ſkill, and every effort of his ingenuity, to form any thing, with the two inſtruments I have mentioned, equal to what is produced by theſe ſavages.

Thoſe whom I ſaw were collected around a huge fire, at the bottom of a rocky eminence, and were drawing from it a pretty large bar of iron, which was red hot. Having placed it on the anvil, they began to beat it with ſtones exceedingly hard, and of ſuch a figure as rendered them eaſy to be held and managed in the hand. They ſeemed to perform their work with much dexterity. But what appeared to me moſt extraordinary, and afforded me an excellent opportunity of giving them ſome uſeful leſſons on its mechaniſm, had they been capable of putting them in practice, was their bellows. Their bellows indeed, which was a moſt wretched inſtrument, was compoſed of a ſheep's ſkin properly ſtripped off, and well ſewed. Thoſe parts that covered the four feet, which had been cut off as uſeleſs,

and

and even incommodious, were tied. They had alſo cut off the head; and placed in the orifice of the neck the mouth of a gun barrel, around which the ſkin was drawn together, and carefully faſtened. The perſon who uſed this inſtrument, holding the pipe to the fire with one hand, puſhed forwards and drew back the extremity of the ſkin with the other; and though this fatiguing method did not always give intenſity to the fire ſufficient to heat the iron, yet as theſe poor Cyclops were acquainted with no other, they were never diſcouraged. I ſincerely pitied them; and the pains they took to accompliſh their end, redoubled the pleaſure which I enjoyed in pointing out to them an eaſier and much more effectual proceſs. I had great difficulty to make them comprehend how much ſuperior the bellows of our forges in Europe were to their invention; and being perſuaded that the little they might catch of my explanation would ſoon eſcape from their memories, and would conſequently be of no real advantage to them, I reſolved to add example to precept, and to operate myſelf in their preſence. Having diſpatched one of my people to our camp, with orders to bring the bottoms of two boxes, a piece of a ſummer kroſs, a hoop, a few ſmall nails, a hammer, a ſaw, and other tools that I might have occaſion for—as ſoon as he returned, I formed in great haſte, and in a very rude manner, a pair of bellows, which were not more powerful than thoſe generally uſed in our kitchens. Two pieces of hoop, which I placed in the inſide, ſerved to keep the ſkin always at an equal diſtance; and I did not forget to make a hole in the inferior part, to give a readier admittance to the air—a ſimple method of which they had no conception, and for want of which they

were

were obliged to waſte a great deal of time in filling their ſheep's ſkin. I had no iron pipe; but, as I only meant to make a model, I fixed to the extremity of mine a toothpick caſe, after ſawing off one of its ends. I then placed my inſtrument on the ground, near the fire; and having fixed a forked ſtick in the ground, I laid acroſs it a kind of lever, which was faſtened to a bit of packthread proceeding from the bellows, and to which was fixed a piece of lead weighing ſeven or eight pounds. To form a juſt idea of the ſurpriſe of theſe Caffres on this occaſion, one muſt have ſeen with what attention they beheld all my operations; the uncertainty under which they were, and their anxiety to diſcover what would be the event. They could not reſtrain their acclamations, when they ſaw me by a few eaſy motions, and with one hand, give their fire the greateſt activity, by the velocity with which I made my machine draw in, and again force out the air. Putting ſome pieces of iron into their fire, I made them in a few minutes red hot, which they undoubtedly could not have done in half an hour. This ſpecimen of my ſkill raiſed their aſtoniſhment to the higheſt pitch. I may venture to ſay that they were almoſt convulſed and thrown into a delirium. They danced and capered around the bellows; each tried them in turns, and they clapped their hands the better to teſtify their joy. They begged me to make them a preſent of this wonderful machine, and ſeemed to wait for my anſwer with impatience, not imagining, as I judged, that I would readily give up ſo valuable a piece of furniture. It would afford me great pleaſure to hear, at ſome future period, that they made uſe of my bellows, that they have brought them to perfection; and, above all, that they preſerve a remembrance of

that

that ſtranger who firſt ſupplied them with the moſt eſſential inſtrument in metallurgy.

The inhabitant of Caffraria lives ſo familiarly amidſt his cattle, and ſpeaks to them with ſo much mildneſs, that they pay the moſt perfect obedience to his voice. As they are never tormented or cruelly treated by their keepers, theſe pacific animals never uſe againſt them thoſe arms which they have received from nature. The owner, taking upon himſelf the care of inſtructing and cleaning them, does not even tie up the cows in order to be milked. If maternal ſenſations, however, ſpeak forcibly to their inſtinct, and induce them to keep back their milk for the uſe of their young, the means employed by the Caffres to compel them to yield it, are much ſimpler and leſs diſguſting than thoſe employed by the Hottentots. A ſhackle is put round one of the animal's hind feet; a robuſt man then drags it backwards, and being hurt by this attitude, ſhe immediately ſuffers her milk to flow. The ſame method is purſued when a cow has been deprived of her calf. Whether this difference between theſe cows and thoſe of Europe ariſes from their nature, their ſpecies, or the climate; it is certain that it exiſts, and that the expedient I have mentioned is neceſſary, and generally practiſed by the ſavages.

The milk is received in baſkets of that kind which I have already mentioned, and which are generally made by the women. Their ſize depends upon fancy, but their form is always the ſame. Being extremely light, and in no danger of breaking, they are, without doubt, preferable to our veſſels, of whatever ſubſtance they may be. As the women who were in my camp had not forgot their tools, and had brought reeds with them, that they might not remain idle,

idle, I amuſed myſelf in ſeeing them weave ſome of theſe pretty baſkets, which they eagerly exchanged with me for toys, as ſoon as they had finiſhed them.

Before they drew down the milk into theſe veſſels, they took care to waſh them thoroughly; but this was leſs owing to a turn for cleanlineſs than with a deſign to render them cloſer in their texture; for, however much prepoſſeſſed I may be in favour of theſe ſavages, as I profeſs that it is my intention to ſay every thing reſpecting them that I know, I muſt not conceal even their faults. I muſt acknowledge, therefore, that the Caffres are conſtantly accuſtomed to ſeaſon their utenſils with their own urine; and that they never give themſelves the trouble to ſearch for water, when it is not cloſe at hand.

This method, which they practiſed before my eyes, was not very delicate. They took care every evening to bring me a baſket full of milk, which my people and Kees, much leſs difficult than their maſter, gladly accepted. I, however, carefully avoided to ſhew before my neighbours the invincible diſguſt which their daily preſents gave me; and I would rather have been poiſoned for a few moments than have diſtreſſed or mortified them by a refuſal; for it has always been my maxim, in all the places through which I paſſed, never to oppoſe received cuſtoms. Nothing offends or irritates a people ſo much as to attack, by ſatire and ridicule, their opinions, their taſte, and their uſages; and, indeed, nothing is more abſurd and indecent. I am ſorry that I have accuſation to make againſt the moſt ſocial and moſt amiable of nations; and to ſee them in this reſpect an object of reproach even to their neareſt neighbours. Can it appear ſtrange

that

that one does not obſerve at London, the air, the manners, and the politeneſs, of the agreeable coxcomb of the banks of the Seine? A man of ſenſe never condemns, in an open manner, any thing that he ſees practiſed in thoſe countries through which he travels: however ridiculous their prejudices may be, he pretends to reſpect them, becauſe he has no right to oppoſe them. This method, which leaves an open field for reflection, procures him a flattering reception, and thoſe attentions, which are due to all men of every country. If there be any caſe in which the application of theſe principles is indiſpenſably neceſſary, it is, above all, with reſpect to ſavages. In my opinion, nothing is ſuperior to roaſt beef and plum pudding, when I dine in England; I would ſwallow train oil with the Laplander; and, among the Hottentots, contented with their ſteaks, I could eaſily forget bread, and conſider corn as of no utility.

However ſtrong the attachment of a Caffre may be to his flocks, it is by no means excluſive; he has a violent affection, that even becomes a kind of paſſion, for his dog, and he ſhews every attention, and the moſt extravagant fondneſs, for this animal; gratitude, therefore, ſoon induces it to become his beſt friend. My pack were never ſo much careſſed, nor ſo well fed, as during the time that this ſmall horde remained with me: my great Yager, above all, excited their admiration; they continually told me, that he was a moſt noble animal; and ſo much were their minds infatuated in this reſpect, that there was not a ſingle man in the company, who, if I had deſired it, would not have given twelve oxen in exchange for him. It muſt be allowed that Yager was one of the ſtrongeſt and beſt made dogs in

the

the colonies. Neither he nor any of his companions ever quitted my gueſts, with whom they ſpent the greater part of the day in their kraals. Theſe good people ſuffered them to lap quietly the milk in their baſkets; nor did they ever dare to touch it until theſe paraſites were ſatisfied. I am firmly perſuaded, that theſe animals, which returned every evening to their kennels, would have been of no ſervice to us, had we been threatened with any danger from the ſavages. They were ſo much attached to the Caffres, and had become ſo little accuſtomed to my people, that when any of them wandered too far, and returned to the camp later than uſual, he was obliged to call out to his companions to confine the dogs, to prevent his being attacked, and perhaps torn to pieces.

On the ſlighteſt appearance of any treacherous deſign on the part of the Caffres, I would have ordered my whole pack to be tied up; but, as I ſaw nothing that could awaken my ſuſpicions, had I prevented them from enjoying the company of my dogs, I ſhould only have mortified them to no purpoſe, and deprived them of a pleaſure which attached them more and more to my perſon; and I ſhould have beſides deſtroyed that freedom which rendered them every moment more ſincere.

Beſides, my manner of thinking, in this reſpect, was peculiar to myſelf. In vain ſhould I have attempted to make the Hottentots adopt my opinions; for a panic terror keeping them always in continual dread, all my repreſentations and remarks on the openneſs and affability of theſe ſtrangers, and even their own imprudent acknowledgments, were not capable of rooting out their prejudices. Caffraria, according to them, was ſoon to be the tomb which I took a pleaſure

pleaſure to dig with my own hands; and as they refuſed to be accomplices in my death, they would by no means conſent to be the victims of my raſhneſs. Neither the fear of puniſhment, when I ſhould return to the Dutch ſettlements, nor my threats of chaſtiſing ſuch baſe deſerters on the ſpot, could move them from their reſolution.

This change always appeared to me to be ſomething new; and I was much vexed to ſee them ſo obſtinate in thwarting my deſires, and ſo forgetful of their duty. I had, it is true, found them refractory and diſobedient before I arrived at Bruyntjes-Hoogte, when I ſaw myſelf cruelly abandoned by the horde who had for ſome time travelled along with me, and by the detachment that joined me in the night: but here circumſtances were widely different. We had no aſſurances or promiſes from the Caffres; we had never before fallen in with any of them; their manners, their character, and their way of living, were entirely unknown to us; prejudice, which is generally ſtrengthened by the abſence of danger, had always repreſented them to us as a ferocious and ſanguinary people. The ſcheme of penetrating through their country as far as the ſea, might therefore juſtly alarm men deſtitute of firmneſs and intrepidity; but at this time I could ſee nothing in their refuſal except obſtinacy and diſobedience, and a certain ſpirit of diſorder, which inſpired them with a diſlike for the tedioufneſs and fatigue of ſo long a journey. Other cauſes, which I did not then know, and which I diſcovered too late, contributed alſo to the ſame end.

Being, however, determined to follow my own plan, and wiſhing to be accompanied only by people

people who had never dared to ſhew the leaſt ſigns of diſobedience, who could boaſt of having ſubjected obſtacles to my pleaſure, and who had never dictated to their chief, as maxims of prudence, what were only the precautions of their fear and puſillanimity, I tormented my imagination, if I may ſo expreſs it, and made a thouſand efforts to deviſe ſome means of extricating myſelf from my diſagreeable ſituation.

I depended upon Klaas as on myſelf, and I was equally ſure of old Swanepoel and my hunter Zean, who had followed me from Milk-Valley, and who killed for me the firſt *tzeiran* or *blue antelope:* Pit and Adam were likewiſe both ſtrongly attached to me; and Narina's couſin, and two of his companions, had offered me their ſervices: but all theſe three being entirely unacquainted with the uſe of fire-arms, might be as much afraid of diſcharging a fuſee as of receiving the fire of others. They, however, added to my number, and I hoped to be able to derive ſome benefit from their aſſiſtance. The Greeks who burnt the city of Troy had neither the ſtrength nor the arms of Achilles.

With theſe eight people I reſolved therefore to attempt this journey; but as my plan was not yet properly digeſted, I thought it would be proper not to give any intimation of my deſign until the departure of the Caffres, whom I wiſhed above all not to know any thing of it.

A ſecret, however, which had hitherto eſcaped me, notwithſtanding all my foreſight and care, unexpectedly cleared up part of my ſuſpicions. Klaas arriving one afternoon from a hunting excurſion, entered my tent, and informed me that four baſtard Hottentots were concealed in my camp, and that he ſuſpected them to be ſpies

ſent

ſent by the planters of Bruyntjes-Hoogte. He underſtood, he ſaid, from ſuch part of the converſation of theſe villains as he could overhear, that the whites knew of the arrival of the Caffres at my camp, and their reſidence there; that they all murmured on this account, and were aſtoniſhed that I ſhould receive their moſt inveterate enemies with ſo much cordiality. Klaas ſtrongly urged me to be on my guard until he ſhould learn more; requeſting me, above all, to be extremely cautious of truſting one of my people, named Slinger, whom he believed to be privy to their deſigns, and to co-operate ſecretly with the four emiſſaries.

Filled with indignation at the audaciouſneſs of theſe people, and the aſſurance which they had to enter my camp, I ordered them immediately to be brought before me. By their timid and embarraſſed gait, I could eaſily perceive their guilt; and I aſked them, in a ſtern manner, by whoſe orders they had dared to introduce themſelves among my people, and to conceal themſelves without letting me know, as if they hoped to eſcape detection. This ſpeech, delivered rather in a harſh tone, my threats of inflicting inſtant puniſhment upon them, and the paſſion with which all my features were animated, frightened them ſo much, that they were incapable of returning an anſwer. I added, that I ſuffered no ſpies near me; that I always ſuſpected thoſe who entered my camp privately, and that they deſerved to be puniſhed as traitors; that I did not conſider them of ſo much conſequence as to proceed to ſuch an extremity; but that they might, whatever had been their intentions, tell thoſe who ſent them every thing they had ſeen; that being perfectly maſter of my own will, no one had a right to call me to an account for

for my actions; that an irreproacable conduct placed me beyond the reach of fear; that, as I never eſpouſed quarrels in which I had no concern, I had no reaſon for entering into any with theſe Caffres, by whom I was ſurrounded, and to whom I would readily render thoſe ſervices which friendly and inoffenſive people had a right to expect from the compaſſionate and juſt part of mankind; that I would be anſwerable for their good behaviour, and take them under my protection as long as they remained with me; but that equity, which prompted me to defend them, would alſo determine me to turn my arms againſt them, ſhould I obſerve them make the leaſt attempt to diſturb the repoſe of the planters. I concluded by obſerving, that I was ſufficiently acquainted with the conduct of both, to be convinced that the ſavages, who breathed nothing but peace and tranquility, would never be the firſt to give the ſignal for committing hoſtilities.

After this diſcourſe, which was rather ſharp, I ordered theſe four baſtard Hottentots inſtantly to quit my camp, and made four of my fuſileers accompany them until they ſhould be out of my ſight. I warned them, that if ever they ſhould think proper to return, whatever might be their pretext, I would purſue them as I would do wild beaſts; and every other perſon who might appear with the like intentions, as thoſe which had brought them. This laſt threat ſeemed to make a conſiderable impreſſion on my Hottentots; who, on hearing the noiſe, had aſſembled around my tent. When it came to their turn to be interrogated reſpecting the ſecret abode of theſe ſpies, whom they had harboured in ſo criminal a manner in my camp, not one of them ventured to utter a ſingle word in his own defence. I therefore gave vent to very cutting

ting and ſevere reproaches, and threatened to put the firſt of them to death who ſhould dare to direct his ſteps towards that quarter in which the planters lived, with whom I wiſhed them to have no communication whatever. As for Slinger, I treated him in a very harſh manner, and poſitively forbade him ever to quit his poſt without my leave.

The Caffres, who were preſent at this ſcene, having remarked that I had more than once alluded to them by my geſtures, ſeemed to be alarmed at the marks of anger which were diſplayed in my looks, and by the conſternation that prevailed among my Hottentots. They readily peceived how much I was incenſed againſt them for what had paſſed in my camp; but as they underſtood leſs of our language than I underſtood of theirs, they were as much ſurpriſed as uneaſy at all this noiſe. By their eyes, which they turned firſt to one ſide and then to another, and fixed ſometimes on our countenances, they expreſſed the perplexity and ſuſpenſe with which their minds were agitated. Hans, however, took care to explain this enigma, and I thought that they then became much more compoſed; but when he informed them that the planters had taken ſhelter ſo near us, they were plunged into the utmoſt diſtreſs. They imagined that, being informed by the four ſpies, whom I had diſmiſſed, of their abode with me, theſe treacherous and vindictive white men would immediately haſten to attack them, and to deſtroy them even in my camp. In vain did I endeavour to allay their fear, by aſſuring them that they were perfectly ſafe, and that I would ſupport and protect them. I no longer beheld in them that open and ſincere joy which proceeds from tranquility of mind.

They

They conferred much more than uſual with one another, and appeared as if they were concerting meaſures together, and wiſhed only to depart, in order that they might fly from the danger that threatened them. Hans, who had accompanied them that evening when they retired to their kraal, confeſſed to me next morning, that they ſuſpected him to be a traitor who had enticed them to me to be butchered, and that, conſequently, I myſelf was not free from ſuſpicion; that they remembered one of theſe four baſtard whites to have often viſited their country, under the pretence of exchanging cattle; that, believing him to be a ſincere friend, they had repoſed the greateſt confidence in him, and never ſaw him arrive among them without teſtifying their joy at his preſence; but that this monſter ſoon betrayed them in the baſeſt manner, and that he durſt not afterward appear amongſt them, from a dread of finding in ſudden death, a juſt puniſhment for his villany.

Hans informed me beſides, that they had formed a reſolution to return; and that they begged him to prevail upon me to give them ſome old iron, in exchange for a few oxen which they had brought along with them. I, however, flatly refuſed to grant them this article, giving them to underſtand that it was impoſſible for me to comply with their requeſt, as I was unwilling to be accuſed of having ſupplied them with arms againſt the planters; that, without any intereſted views, and merely from a deſire of obliging them, I ſhould, under any other circumſtances, have been extremely happy to give them this mark of friendſhip; but that they muſt be ſenſible, as affairs then ſtood, that I was not at liberty to behave towards them ſo honour-

ably as I wiſhed; that, except iron, every thing I poſſeſſed was at their ſervice; that I would give them a proof of this before their departure: and, to ſoften the harſhneſs of my refuſal, I added, that being deſirous of continuing in friendſhip with the whole world, and of obſerving, both towards them and the planters, that ſtrict neutrality which I had always profeſſed, I was ready, upon every occaſion, to give the ſame anſwer to their enemies, ſhould they, when in want of arms or ammunition, come to implore my aſſiſtance in order to continue the war.

Though this anſwer and the ſubſequent explanation were clear and preciſe, theſe ſavages, who are never diſcouraged by the firſt refuſal, returned to the charge, and renewed their importunities more than once; but my reſolution was formed, and upon this head I was inexorable. I was too well acquainted with the exaggerating diſpoſition of the planters, who would not have failed to accuſe me of perfidy for the leaſt article extorted from me by their importunity, and for ſhewing weakneſs or condeſcenſion in ſuch a delicate conjuncture. I do not doubt that they would have even gladly embraced this opportunity of being revenged for the contempt with which I had more than once treated them; and they would then have no longer wanted a pretence for rendering me criminal. However powerful this prudent policy might be, which induced me to behave in this manner towards them, I had ſtill a motive of much greater weight. Being too much above the attacks of theſe banditti, and their atrocious conſpiracies, by refuſing arms to theſe ſavages againſt the planters, and to the latter reſources againſt the ſavages, I prevented them from continuing their horrid

horrid ravages. In caſe either of the parties ſhould be exhauſted, as had more than once happened, I could not ſupply them without taking a part in their quarrels; and this conduct would have very ill agreed with the integrity and ſentiments of my heart. I even ſcrupled to accept a few cattle, offered me by the Caffres in exchange for a quantity of beads and toys, which I diſtributed among them when they departed.

I greatly wiſhed that the young Caffre would remain with me; but I had no better ſucceſs in endeavouring to entice him, than his companions had in attempting to prevail on me to give them old iron. Neither my preſents, nor the promiſes I made of leaving him at liberty to depart in caſe he ſhould not find his ſituation agreeable with me, had any effect upon him. He withſtood my ſolicitations with ſo much firmneſs, that I loſt all hopes of having any influence over him: "I know the whites too well," ſaid he to me; "they have done us much hurt, and ſtill "continue their injuries: were I ſimple enough "to follow you, in vain ſhould I require you "to fulfil your promiſes: I ſhould never be per-"mitted to ſee my country again." From the very juſt prejudices entertained by his nation, who in the time of peace had ſometimes frequented Bruyntjes-Hoogte, he was afraid of being treated in the ſame manner as the planters who inhabit that part of the country treat their ſlaves: and had he, from an attachment towards me, yielded with a good grace, and conſented to follow me, he was not aſſured, he ſaid, that I ſhould always have it in my power to protect him, and to ſend him back ſafe. I did every thing I could to deſtroy this prejudice, telling

him that he ought not to confound all the Dutch nation with thoſe ſanguinary and perfidious planters; that he ought alſo to enquire whether the people I had in my ſervice were unhappy, or had any cauſe to complain; and that all of them were their own maſters, and might quit me whenever they choſe. Notwithſtanding all theſe arguments, this young man continued in his reſolution with aſtoniſhing firmneſs and obſtinacy; ſo that, finding them in vain, I put an end to my ſolicitations.

Our frequent excurſions, and the petty altercations that aroſe in my camp, had conſiderably interrupted my eaſy and familiar converſation with the Caffres; but they did not make me entirely forget to procure information. I returned to this ſubject from time to time, and they gratified my curioſity with that cordiality with which a grateful ſenſe of my kindneſs had inſpired them. The news of their intended departure made me ſtill more eager to aſk them queſtions: above all, I had not yet forgotten the unhappy people who had been ſhipwrecked; but they could not make me acquainted with all thoſe particulars which I was deſirous of learning. They knew only that ſuch a misfortune had happened; but as they were eſtabliſhed to the north-weſt, and ſtill more diſtant from the ſea, they could tell me nothing certain reſpecting that unhappy cataſtrophe. They had indeed ſeen the greater part of the effects carried away from the wreck of the veſſel; for ſeveral hordes had bartered them for cattle, and even thoſe who were in my camp had ſome of theſe things in their poſſeſſion. One of them ſhewed me a piece of ſilver coin, which was ſuſpended from his neck; another wore a

ſmall

ſmall ſteel key; and they deſcribed, in the beſt manner they could, a trinket which they had divided into pieces, I readily gueſſed that it muſt have been a watch, the wheels and other works of which they had converted into ornaments. I was fully convinced that my conjecture was right, when having produced mine they all cried out that it was the ſame thing, except in colour, which they ſaid reſembled the piece of money ſuſpended from the neck of their companion. They added, that the moſt beautiful articles procured from the ſhip had fallen into the hands of a numerous body of Caffres who lived near the ſea; that, above all, they had in their poſſeſſion a great deal of money; but that with reſpect to the people who had eſcaped from the waves, they heard that ſome of them were found dead on the beach, and that the reſt, more fortunate, had been able to reach a country inhabited by white people like me.

My converſation with theſe Caffres always concluded with repeated ſolicitations to accompany them to their country; but ſuch a ſtep, even had it been agreeable to me, would have been very inconſiſtent with prudence: for though I might be convinced that they were incapable of deceiving me, of attempting my life, or of robbing me of my effects; yet it was proper that they ſhould be ignorant of the quarrels I had with my people; and that, as the reſt refuſed obedience, it was impoſſible to carry more along with me than eight. On the contrary, I was extremely happy to think that on their return they would inform their countrymen that we were ſtrong and numerous, and that we had nothing to fear from them. Had a diviſion taken place, they might have ſuſpected ſome bad deſign;

ſign; and there would have been nothing to prevent them, whilſt amuſing me among their horde, from ſending out a detachment to plunder my camp, and maſſacre thoſe whom I had left to defend it. When I reflected on the numberleſs barbarities committed by the whites, I determined to be on my guard againſt theſe ſavages, from whom I ſhould have had nothing to fear under any other circumſtances; and on this account alſo I laid it down as an eſtabliſhed rule, which I obſerved with the utmoſt rigour, never to permit any ſtranger to enter my camp in the night-time. Old Swanepoel took care that this regulation ſhould be ſtrictly followed: we always ſlept ſeparately, immured in our encloſures, and no one was even ſuffered to go out during the night, as the ſavages always choſe that time to attack the whites, who were eaſily perceived, and could be ſeen at a diſtance, on account of their clothes. As my abſence would have been publicly known among theſe Caffres, I ſhould have been very uneaſy for the fate of thoſe whom I left at my camp; but as I concealed from them the preciſe time of my departure, I thought they would conclude, that when I ſet out I would leave nothing behind me; for I had told them that I intended to ſend back my carriages to the colonies.

On the 21ſt of November they all came to inform me that they were ready to depart. Upon this occaſion they renewed their proteſtations of gratitude and friendſhip, promiſing that, whereever they paſſed, their firſt care would be to tell what they had ſeen; how much they were obliged to me; and in how affectionate and familiar a manner I had treated them during their long reſidence in my camp: and adding, that the

riches

riches with which I had loaded them would awaken the envy of more than one; and that all the hordes would wait for me with the greateſt impatience, and ſee me arrive among them with pleaſure. The deſcription which they promiſed to give of my camp, my perſon, and above all of my beard, would, they ſaid, ſerve thoſe who did not know me as a mark by which to diſtinguiſh me, and make be received in a very different manner from that in which they would receive a planter. They then all turned, as if by agreement, towards my tent, over which a flag was waving, and aſked me if I would not bring it with me, in order that they might be able to obſerve me at a diſtance. On my anſwering in the affirmative, they immediately ſhouted for joy; as if, not contented with the hopes I had given them that I would pay them a viſit, they entertained no apprehenſion that I would be confounded with their deteſtable perſecutors; and as if they had wiſhed, from a ſincere love towards me, to protect my perſon from every kind of inſult. After the uſual *tabès*, I accompanied them as far as the river, which both they and their cattle croſſed by ſwimming; and when they reached the oppoſite bank, I ſaluted them, for the laſt time, with a general diſcharge of all my muſquetry. They then proceeded on their march, and entering the valleys and thickets, ſoon vaniſhed from my ſight.

When theſe Caffres had departed, I flattered myſelf that my people would make ſome reflections on the peaceable manner in which they had lived among them; that they would be ſenſible how ill-founded their fear was; and that they would at laſt conſent to accompany me. In order however that I might not appear to be anxious on this

this account, or for carrying my project into execution, and that I might ſuffer them to purſue their own inclinations, I reſolved to ſet out immediately, for the purpoſe of paying a viſit to the venerable Haabas, intending on my return, if I found any change in their ſentiments, to move my camp and begin my journey, that they might not have leiſure to repent. During the time that the Caffres remained with me, I had ſeen only two Gonaquas, and I was deſirous of renewing my acquaintance with theſe worthy neighbours, and of knowing what had paſſed amongſt them ſince our ſeparation. Having repaired to their kraal alone, they teſtified every mark of joy as ſoon as they recollected me; they all crowded around me, and they called to each other, and flocked together from all quarters, ſo that I was ſoon ſurrounded. Haabas informed me what fears both he and his horde had entertained whilſt the Caffres reſided in my camp; and he aſked me an hundred times whether they were acquainted with the place of his retreat. I did every thing in my power to calm his uneaſineſs: I told him that the Caffres entertained no hatred againſt the Gonaqua Hottentots, who, they were convinced, had no communication with the whites or the other Hottentots, and who, on the contrary, lived in a ſeparate horde; that, beſides this, the preciſe ſituation of their kraals was unknown to them; but that, in any event, it was the ſureſt and beſt method of ſecuring the common ſafety for them to remove and eſtabliſh themſelves ſomewhere elſe. Haabas agreed to this propoſal with the greater readineſs, as he placed little confidence in the fine ſpeeches of the Caffres, ſince not long before they had obliged him to enter into hoſtilities

lities with them: on this account, he ſaid, it was the moſt prudent plan to take every precaution, and to avoid ſuch a misfortune. Haabas had ſo good an opinion of me, that he aſked my advice reſpecting the new eſtabliſhment which he was about to form; and it was agreed that as ſoon as poſſible he ſhould make for the mountains in the weſt, and remove altogether from the country of Caffraria, which extends to the north-eaſt.

The banks of the Sondag were formerly the boundaries of the Caffres, who had their principal habitations on the Bruyntjes-Hoogte, ſome faint veſtiges of which ſtill remain. The expreſs orders, as well as the intention of government, were, that theſe limits ſhould always be accounted ſacred; but the planters, who have neither the ſame views nor the ſame wiſdom as a political adminiſtration, finding the lands of their defenceleſs neighbours much better than their own, in proceſs of time took poſſeſſion of them, and with impunity drove theſe people beyond the Groot-Vis. The orders of the governors, more and more diſregarded, produced no effect, and the great diſtance favoured theſe abuſes, and made them become every day more frequent.

Whilſt I continued with Haabas I kept myſelf quite private, and ſeveral motives prompted me not to remain here long. Being deſirous of knowing whether he could not engage ſome of his people to unite with thoſe three who had voluntarily offered to accompany me when I paid my firſt viſit to the Gonaquas, I deſired him to put the queſtion to them; and I found that there was only one who heſitated, and who at length gave a flat refuſal: but as I was unwilling to uſe compulſion, or to afford any cauſe of complaint

to

to theſe worthy people, I deſired the three, who had readily agreed to my propoſal, to meet me at my camp in the courſe of four days. By this arrangement they had more than ſufficient time to put their affairs in order, and to prepare their arms.

It was impoſſible to carry my carriages along with me, as I could depend at moſt upon no more than eight people to accompany me in my journey to Caffraria. It was neceſſary that I ſhould have ſome oxen to carry my baggage, and I had not one accuſtomed to this ſervice; we therefore agreed to make an exchange, and I promiſed to fulfil the terms of it as ſoon as I returned. All this was the buſineſs of a moment. Notwithſtanding the preſſing entreaties of the chief, and of the whole horde, I reſolved to quit them immediately; and I pretended that I had a thouſand things to ſettle amongſt my own people. I did not however behold this retreat with the ſame pleaſure as before; I found myſelf croſſed in every poſſible manner, and new obſtacles ſeemed to ariſe at every ſtep: beſides this, I found myſelf exhauſted with fatigue. Before I took leave of Haabas, I did not forget to enquire concerning my unfortunate patient; but I had no inclination to ſee him again. He aſſured me, that all the means employed till that time had been attended with no other effect than that of preſerving cleanlineſs around his perſon; but that his ſufferings were neither leſſened, nor were there any hopes of his life. I enquired alſo concerning the beautiful Narina, and was informed that both ſhe and her mother were then abſent. Suſpecting that ſome of the horde had gone in queſt of her, I was the more anxious

anxious on this account to depart; and having ſaluted Haabas, I returned to my camp.

When I got back to my tent, I called my people before me, one after the other, being deſirous of learning from their own mouths what were their intentions, in order to diſcover whether there were not ſome mutinous fellows amongſt them, who endeavoured to inſpire them with a ſpirit of ſedition and revolt. Their anſwers all tended to the ſame purpoſe, and they grounded their reſiſtance only upon the terror into which my raſhneſs had thrown them; but, however incenſed I was at this diſobedience, and however diſagreeable the conſequences were likely to be, I had not reſolution enough to reprimand them. Too many motives pleaded for them in my heart; and I was ſenſible that my attachment to them was ſtill too ſtrong, being convinced that nothing elſe but fear had ſeduced them, and that this alone had deranged their heads, eſpecially as they told me that they were unwilling to enter a country from which they never ſaw either white men or Hottentots return. I exhorted them at leaſt to continue faithful to me, and not to forget my kindneſs whilſt I was abſent, and how much they were indebted to their maſter. By their geſtures and looks I could eaſily ſee what impreſſion theſe laſt words made upon them, and how far I might have depended on their affection had I not attempted to force them to undertake this fatal journey. I promiſed to ſhew them the ſame attention in future, and I ſhut myſelf up in my tent. During part of the night I employed myſelf in forming my plan, and deviſing means for executing it with as much caution and expedition as I poſſibly could. Next morning,

very

very early, I called thoſe Hottentots upon whom I could depend, and I again told them that I was ready to depart with them, if they were ſtill reſolved to accompany me; and, to diſpel from their minds every doubt, and to prove that I did not act raſhly, I declared that I had no intention of penetrating far into Caffraria, unleſs I met with no obſtacles, and experienced no kind of diſcontent on their part; that as, from the accounts of my envoys, I could not hope to find king Faroo eaſily, I propoſed only to pay a viſit to the Caffres, who waited for me with impatience, and then to turn off towards the eaſt, in order to get near the coaſt, where we might perhaps diſcover the veſſel that had been ſhipwrecked. Finding that they all adhered to the promiſe which they had made me, I addreſſed Swanepoel; and telling him that I conſidered him as another ſelf, and inveſted him with the whole of my authority during my abſence, I conjured him to watch over my camp, and preſerve good order in it, as I could not depend on the reſt.

My three Gonaquas having arrived on the day appointed, nothing remained but to prepare ourſelves, and to lay in proviſions neceſſary for our journey. I filled two leather bags with gunpowder, which I encloſed in a third, to preſerve them from moiſture; and we caſt balls of different ſizes, made a conſiderable quantity of ſmall ſhot, and I carried eight fuſees along with me, leaving eight more for the defence of my camp. I then collected different kinds of beads and toys, which I aſſorted ſeparately into bags and ſmall boxes, and packed up a woollen coverlet, a large cloak, and ſome other effects, which I conſidered as abſolutely neceſſary. For the uſe of my kitchen, we carried only one kettle, a boiler,

and

and ſome tea, ſalt, ſugar, &c. My companions alſo employed themſelves in rolling up their ſkins, mats, and utenſils; and they did not forget to requeſt that I would lay in a proper proviſion of tobacco and brandy. The buſtle and agitation, with the running backwards and forwards, which all theſe preparations occaſioned, would have afforded me a very amuſing ſcene, had my mind been calm, and all my people diſpoſed to follow me:—it might have been an excellent ſubject for a painter. On the other hand, the aſtoniſhed and ſorrowful air of thoſe poltroons who remained exhibited a ſingular contraſt: thoſe who were about to depart exalted their voices, and beheld them with a kind of pity; one might have ſaid, that they no longer knew them, and that they were not of the ſame ſpecies. The former ſufficiently manifeſted the uneaſineſs they felt at our departure, and their dejection on ſeeing me no more at their head: they ardently wiſhed to know how long I ſhould be abſent; but this depended as little upon me as on them.

When our baggage was packed up, and nothing more remained to be done, we reſolved to depart the next day, being the third of November.

When our evening fires were kindled, I placed myſelf by them as uſual, with all my people, in order to drink tea; and I embraced this opportunity to give a gentle admonition to thoſe who were to remain in my camp. I ſhewed them no ſign of diſcontent; I even pretended to approve of their reaſons; being well aſſured that I ſhould not alter the determination of thoſe who intended to depart with me: but with reſpect to the concern which they

teſtified

teſtified for my perſon, I told them, that I had too great confidence in my brave friends who were to accompany me, not to be perfectly eaſy. I recommended it to them to be ſtrictly obedient to the orders of old Swanepoel, and I promiſed to reward all thoſe who ſhould behave agreeably to the good opinion which they had hitherto given me cauſe to entertain of them. In ſhort, that I might leave no regret in their minds, and that I might efface even the remembrance of our reciprocal diſagreement, I ordered a general bumper to be handed round. They then drank to the ſucceſs of our journey, and each retired to his place of reſt.

Not being able to ſleep during the night, I rouſed my people at break of day; after which we got ready our baggage, and loaded my four oxen.

While we were breakfaſting, I ordered all my dogs to be tied up: for without this precaution, the whole pack, which foreſaw the time of our departure, and which on this account ſhewed every demonſtration of joy, as was the caſe every time we changed our encampment, would not have failed to get before us, and to diſperſe themſelves throughout the fields. I carried only five of them along with me.

Before we took leave of each other, I called Swanepoel aſide, and told him, that if I found it either unſafe or impoſſible to traverſe all Caffraria, I would return without fail in fifteen days; but that, if I did not appear after ſix weeks were elapſed, he might decamp and repair to Camdebo, which was his own country; that I left him at liberty to purſue this route even before that period, if he apprehended that there would be the leaſt riſk in remaining where he was,

was, and that I could eaſily find means to join him. I begged him to have a watchful eye over my people, my carriages, and my collections; and, in a word, on the firſt appearance of danger, to think of putting every thing in a place of ſhelter. If, on not ſeeing me return, (added I, with an emotion which I could not at that moment conceal), you have reaſon to deſpair of my ſafety, you muſt make directly for the Cape with all my people, and deliver my effects to my friend Mr. Boers.

This worthy old man, on hearing theſe laſt words, could not help ſhedding tears. Whilſt he was almoſt ſuffocated by ſighs and ſobbing, I endeavoured to conſole him, by promiſing that I would attempt nothing but what was conſiſtent with prudence. But it would have been in vain for him to attempt to detain me any longer: I tore myſelf away from his affectionate careſſes, and joined my horſes, my oxen, and my dogs.

Kees had already got the ſtart of me. Eſcorted by my eight people, one of whom carried my tent, I purſued my way, and ſoon loſt ſight of my camp. To croſs the river, I was obliged to go up its banks for the ſpace of a league and a half; and when I had reached the other ſide, a part of my people, who accompanied me thus far, took leave of me, and returned.

Having quitted the river, we directed our courſe towards the north-eaſt, which, according to my ſyſtem, agreed very well with the directions I had received from Hans, where to enter Caffraria in the broadeſt part. We always travelled under the ſame kind of trees which were interſperſed throughout every part of this canton, and the ground was covered with very long graſs, that incommoded us much; but my people ſuffered

fered more than I, becauſe, as it was entirely dry, it pricked their feet at every ſtep: they however remedied this inconvenience in part, by forming buſkins of thongs and graſs twiſted together. My oxen alone appeared to be very well ſatisfied with this circumſtance; for, whilſt they were marching forward, they fed whenever they choſe, without having the trouble of bending down their heads to the earth. We had always in our view antelopes of different kinds, particularly that called the *ſpring-bock*. My dogs ſprung a buſtard, which I killed; it will form a new ſpecies, never before deſcribed, larger than the French field-duck of Europe: the plumage of its neck before, and that of the breaſt and belly, is of an uniform blueiſh grey colour; all the upper part of the body has a reddiſh tint, ſpotted and ſtriped with a colour almoſt black; and its voice has a great reſemblance to that of the toad, but it is ſtronger.

We continued our journey in this manner for five hours, under an exceſſive heat, which obliged us to halt. We were, it is true, almoſt continually ſheltered by the trees, which grew cloſely together; but the leaves of the mimoſa are ſo ſmall, and ſo thinly ſcattered, that its ſhade, which never darkens the place where it falls, may almoſt be accounted as nothing. We found no other in the whole plain; and I obſerved that the beautiful trees, like thoſe of Auteniqua, grew upon the tops of high mountains, which we muſt have gone much farther in ſearch of.

Perceiving in the courſe of our march that my ape often ſtopped at the mimoſa, detached ſome of the prickles with which that tree is furniſhed, and eat them with pleaſure, I was deſirous of partaking with him, eſpecially as I confided

confided much in his taſte. The greeneſt of theſe prickles, and thoſe only which could be eaten, were from two or three inches in length, and as brittle as aſparagus. When I taſted them, I found myſelf very much deceived; for though I at firſt thought them ſweet and agreeable, a moment after a moſt inſupportable taſte of garlic, which burnt my mouth, and which the moſt robuſt inhabitant of Marſeilles could not have endured, made me ſpit them out again. The ſeeds of this tree, which Kees ſeemed to prefer, produced the ſame effect on my palate. This ſmell was ſo ſtrong, that at a diſtance I could diſcover, by its urine, when an ape had eaten of the mimoſa.

On this tree I found a very large and moſt elegant ſpecies of caterpillar; its body was ſurrounded with bands of a velvet black on a beautiful green ground. When it becomes a butterfly, its wings are almoſt entirely white, with a few brown ſtripes and ſpots; its body is ſo ſoft that it feels to the touch like cotton. I had ſeveral opportunities afterwards of remarking, that when the mimoſa is in bloom, which generally happens towards the commencement of January, its flowers are covered with a great number of inſects of different kinds; in the cantons, therefore, where this tree grows, one may find in the greateſt abundance a part of thoſe different individuals which compoſe this claſs of natural hiſtory; and, by a neceſſary conſequence, an infinite number of different birds are attracted by theſe inſects, which form the principal part of their nouriſhment.

I took advantage of this firſt halting to ſkin the buſtard which I had killed; its fleſh afforded me a meal, and my people dined on the provi-

ſions which we had brought with us. My oxen had fared ſo well during the way, that we had ſcarcely ſtopped. When they lay down, notwithſtanding the loads which they carried, the graſs around them was ſo high that they were entirely hid by it. In the afternoon the ſky became overcaſt, and we were attacked by a moſt dreadful ſtorm, accompanied with thunder; but we ſtill continued our journey; for being unwilling to unload the oxen before night, and having no ſhelter in the place where we dined, we ſhould have been equally expoſed to the rain when at reſt as when in motion. About five in the evening, however, finding ourſelves ſo much haraſſed that we could proceed no farther, I ordered my tent to be immediately erected. Large fires were kindled; and when we had dried ourſelves I retired to reſt, whilſt my people ſtretched themſelves out as well as they could under their ſkins and mats, inclined towards the rain in the ſame manner as ſcreens are placed to defend houſes from the heat of the ſun. The moiſture of the earth ſoon penetrated the blanket upon which I had thrown myſelf, but in vain, to enjoy repoſe; and the rain, which poured down inceſſantly, penetrated though the canvaſs of my tent on all ſides, ſo that I was as completely drenched as my people.

Having prepared to depart at break of day, Hans informed me that we could not be far diſtant from that kraal of the Caffres which had been deſtroyed by the planters. As the riſing of the ſun had diſperſed the clouds, I reſumed my courage, and reſolved to proceed till I found this kraal, which ſeemed to promiſe us a commodious ſhelter; but as we had already marched ſeven hours, and had three leagues more to travel before

before we could reach it; and as my oxen were oppreſſed by fatigue, and as night was approaching, I reſolved to erect my tent, eſpecially as I found myſelf in the neighbourhood of a moſt delightful rivulet. Every league we travelled the mimoſas became ſtill ſcarcer, ſmaller, and more ſtunted, than in the places through which we had paſſed: the graſs alſo was not ſo high. We indeed found that we were now upon a very elevated ſpot. From the place where I was encamped my people ſhewed me a very high mountain, which they thought they knew, and which I could diſtinguiſh better by the help of my ſpying-glaſs. It was the neareſt to the encampment of Koks-Kraal, and I had more than once traverſed it in my hunting excurſions: it was about ten or twelve leagues diſtant from us.

When they had unloaded the oxen and erected my tent, I made an excurſion on foot along the banks of the rivulet, which probably, after many windings, joined the river Groot-Vis; and I had the good fortune to kill a bird of the cuckoo kind, which to me was new and uncommon. Notwithſtanding its affinity to that of which I have already ſpoken, and which Buffon deſcribes under the name of the *green and golden cuckoo* of the Cape, I have ſtrong reaſons for making it another ſpecies: its note, beſides, is entirely different. The female, more cunning than the male, made me loſe a great deal of time in purſuing her, while by her tricks, which I might compare to thoſe of a coquette, ſhe every moment ſeemed to become leſs ſhy, in order to deceive my hopes the more. When I thought I had hold of her, ſhe inſtantly flew to the diſtance of ten paces, to renew her provoking ſport: at length, after amuſing me in this manner for an hour, ſhe retired to

the thickeſt part of the wood, and I was obliged to return after having ſpent my labour in vain.

Juſt as I reached my camp, one of my hunters had arrived there with a gnou * which he had killed. Colonel Gordon was the firſt perſon who gave an account of this beautiful and rare animal; and the deſcription of it which he ſent to profeſſor Alleman, and which that learned man publiſhed, is very accurate; but it is to be regretted that the figure which accompanies it is defective and badly delineated. This animal, which in ſhape reſembles a ſmall ox, is no better repreſented in the French tranſlation of Dr. Sparmann's Voyage, becauſe the engraver, or the perſon who made the drawings, not contented with giving it the cheſt and buttocks of a horſe, has added alſo his tail, which is falſe, as the gnou has a tail exactly like that of an ox. The Hottentots name this antelope *nou*, preceded by that ſecond kind of clapping which I have already mentioned. It was probably this clapping which induced Colonel Gordon to add a *g* to the proper name, which renders the pronunciation of it almoſt the ſame. Dr. Sparmann writes the word *gnu*, becauſe the *u* in the Swediſh and German languages is pronounced *ou*. Tranſlators ought to attend to theſe ſmall variations, which may occaſion errors reſpecting the proper names of animals, which ought not to be diſfigured.

We ſpent this night very peaceably, having our oxen faſtened near us with large leather thongs, and our horſes with reins. We indeed heard ſome lions roaring at a diſtance in the mountains; but we were under very little apprehenſions on that account. In general our uneaſineſs and embar-

* A ſpecies of antelope.

raſſment

raſſment in this reſpect had always decreaſed in proportion to the train which followed us.

Having departed early on the 5th of the month, we arrived at the kraal of the Caffres, which we imagined we had met with the evening before. The greater part of the huts were ſtill entire, and only a few of them had been burnt. I obſerved ſix or ſeven ſtanding cloſe together in a cluſter; the reſt, which might amount to about fifty or ſixty, were ſcattered here and there in the extent of half a league. Here I diſcovered, for the firſt time, that theſe people apply themſelves a little to agriculture: they ſow a kind of millet, known under the name of Caffre wheat; and, in order that they may be enabled to till the ground with greater facility, each chooſes that ſpot which ſeems to be moſt favourable for his views, and erects his hut in the centre of it: on this account their kraals are not in one and the ſame place, like thoſe of the Gonaquas or Hottentots. It is probable that thoſe among whoſe huts we were had been ſurpriſed by the planters; for we found every where around us carcaſſes and ſcattered limbs, half devoured by ferocious animals. Several fields of corn were ready for the hand of the reaper; but the antelopes, which appear in great numbers when they are not driven away by ſcare-crows, had damaged them conſiderably: my oxen, which were here let looſe, completed the devaſtation.

As for me, I eſtabliſhed myſelf in my tent, and my Hottentots in the ſeven huts of which they took poſſeſſion. As the ſituation of this place appeared to me very agreeable, I reſolved to ſpend ſeveral days in it; and in conſequence of this determination, we cut down a number of large branches, with which my tent was ſo well concealed, that it would have been very difficult to diſcover

diſcover it. A rivulet of limpid water rolled over its pebbly bed cloſe to us; a few mimoſas here and there interſperſed preſerved a little coolneſs; and at the diſtance of an hundred paces from our camp we could, if neceſſary, enjoy a moſt delightful ſhelter, in an immenſe foreſt compoſed of large and magnificent trees. I often went thither to walk, eſpecially during the great heats of the day; and it clearly appeared, from the various paths which croſſed each other in a thouſand different directions, that this place muſt have been long frequented.

I obſerved here many trees of the ſame kind as thoſe I had met with in the country of Autenicqua: the *ſtink-houtt*, or ſtinking wood, abounded in every quarter. This tree is found alſo, as I have already remarked, near the bay of Agoa, from which it is tranſported by the inhabitants of the Cape, in order to be manufactured and employed in cabinet work; but the expence occaſioned by the diſtance of that bay renders it exceedingly ſcarce and dear. Beſides being ſuſceptible of the fineſt poliſh, it has the valuable property of being proof againſt the attacks of worms; and when it grows old, it acquires a cheſtnut colour, the veins of which being very broad are ſhaded with tints more or leſs dark. When it is cut, and before it becomes dry, it exhales an excrementitious ſmell, which occaſions a nauſea, particularly in wet weather, and when it is impregnated with water; but in proportion as it dries, it loſes this noxious quality. Like all hard and compact timber, it grows ſlowly; but in proceſs of time it increaſes in height and bulk, ſo as to ſurpaſs the talleſt oaks.

I obſerved alſo the *geele-houtt*, or yellow wood, which takes its name from its colour. It is not ſo highly

highly valued as the other for making different articles of furniture; but as it is well ſhaped and ſells readily, it is converted into beautiful boards, planks, and beams for building. It produces a yellow fruit of the ſize of a plum, which is very thickly covered with ſmall tubercles: the kernel, which is extremely hard, is the only part of it that can be eaten.

Another tree, the *roye-houtt*, or red wood, takes its name alſo from the deep red colour of its bark. It is thick, but very tender, and a dye may be extracted from it. The fruit, which is of the ſize of an olive, is likewiſe red when ripe: it is eat with pleaſure, and the inhabitants make a kind of ſpirituous liquor from it.

I ſtopped before a *kaerſen boom*, or cherry-tree, which to me ſeemed to have no other merit than that of recalling to my view the place where I killed my four elephants, and the time when that event happened. I remembered that they readily eat the fruit and the leaves of this tree; as I had never taſted them, I embraced this opportunity of their being within my reach; but I was convinced that one muſt be an elephant to be able to endure them.

My Hottentots made me remark a tree which I had never before ſeen, and which they told me had been formerly very common in the colonies. It was employed in preference to any other for making carts and waggons; but only by the company, who had expreſsly forbid it to be uſed except for their ſervice. This excluſion was the cauſe of its deſtruction, and it is now only ſeen in places remote from the colonies. On the other hand, the indolence of the planters ſuffered it to decay entirely, ſo that at preſent it is conſidered as a loſt

ſpecies.

ſpecies. This tree, at the Cape, is named *boeken houtt.*

Caffraria often produces, in the neighbourhood of ſmall rivers and in marſhy places, a kind of trees which have a great reſemblance to our willows. I have alſo often met with the wild almond tree, *wilde-amandel*, the narrow leaves and fruit of which, ſhaped exactly like ours, differed only in the reddiſh brown colour of the huſk.

If ſome ſkilful botaniſt would traverſe this beautiful country which I am now deſcribing, he would certainly find objects highly worthy of his attention, and which might prove of great advantage to ſcience. As for my part, I directed my reſearches to thoſe things only which I had never before ſeen, or which appeared extraordinary. Being incapable of diſtinguiſhing the real properties of trees, plants, and ſhrubs, I admired nothing but their ſtriking differences; ſuch, for example, as the moſs or yellow lichen that adhered to them; all its ſhoots being often ten or twelve feet in length: my people, in their language, called it hair; and in ſeveral cantons the trees were ſo covered with it, that one could neither diſtinguiſh the trunk nor the branches, nor even a ſingle leaf; which appeared to me very ſingular.

This moſs was of the utmoſt ſervice to me in preſerving my birds; and I ſtrongly adviſe ſuch ornithologiſts as may be induced to viſit this very curious part of Africa, not to encumber themſelves with tow, cotton, or any other ſubſtances of the like nature. In order that I might procure a quantity of it ſufficient for my whole journey, as I was afraid of not finding it elſewhere, I ordered one of theſe trees to be cut down and to be ſtripped of all its hair. The youngeſt and ſhorteſt is the moſt delicate; that which is ſix

feet

feet long is harder, and can be of no uſe but for quadrupedes and very large birds.

I found creeping plants alſo in almoſt every place where I paſſed, which having reached the ſummits, and even the ſmalleſt branches of the trees, ſhot forth filaments that hung down to the earth. Being at firſt exceedingly weak and ſlender, they at length attain to the ſize of one's arm, like thoſe ſeen in America. Theſe filaments, which are almoſt innumerable, bear no leaves, and the natives call them *bavians tow*, or *bavians ropes*, becauſe by their aſſiſtance, theſe apes climb to the tops of the trees in order to reach the fruit of the plants, which grows only at their extremities where the filaments begin to ſhoot forth. This bruit, which birds, and particularly the touracos, are exceedingly fond of, contains in its pulp a few round and flat ſeeds: it is of the ſize of a cherry, and has a crimſon colour. I ſpeak here of the fruit of a particular ſpecies of theſe plants, which is called the wild grape, on account of the great reſemblance which its leaves have to thoſe of the vine. Theſe natural ropes will ſuſtain the weight of a man, if the branch from which they are ſuſpended be ſufficiently ſtrong; this cherry is excellent, and very proper for making a kind of ſpirituous liquor; when preſerved, it is ſtill better. I have often imitated the *bavians*, and mounted, by the help of theſe cords, to the ſummits of the trees, to gather the fruit, and ſometimes to collect inſects.

Theſe woods abounded likewiſe with two ſpecies of antelopes, not at all wild: the *bos-hoc*, which I had ſeen in other places, and that called by the Hottentots *noumetjes*. Of the latter I had only a ſlight view in the country of Auteniqua; it is not uncommon, but it is very difficult to approach

proach ſo near it as to kill it, Beſides this, it ſeldom appears in the plains, but keeps itſelf concealed in the buſhes and thickeſt parts of the foreſts. At the utmoſt it is no more than twelve or fifteen inches in height; the horns of the male are ſtraight, ſmooth, and diſtant about a hand breadth from each other. The colour of this little animal is a mouſe grey, which, on the ridge of the back, aſſumes a reddiſh tint: but the belly and the inſide of the thighs are white. It may be eaſily ſeen, by the elegance of its form, that it is exceedingly nimble; it ſometimes takes ſurpriſing leaps, and ſquats down like a hare. If any one happens to get near it, as ſoon as it perceives him, it inſtantly betakes itſelf to flight with the velocity of lightning, and afterwards ſtops at ſome diſtance to examine its purſuer. This is the only opportunity one can have of firing at it; and the hunter muſt, without loſs of time, embrace it, for it laſts only for a moment. Its cry, which I ought rather to call its warbling, is very long and ſhrill: it would be in vain for me to attempt to imitate it. It begins by a broken kind of whiſtling, the tones of which are like thoſe of a tabour hung round with little bells; and its goat-like voice imitates them exceedingly well: one would hardly conceive that ſo ſmall an animal could make ſo loud a noiſe; when I heard it for the firſt time I imagined that I was dreaming. Its fleſh, more delicate than that of any other antelope, was to us a moſt delicious treat. I ſhall give a deſcription, with a figure of this animal, in my account of the quadrupedes of Africa.

Among other new birds of this canton, I ſhot a ſmall eagle, which had a very long creſt that hung down behind its head; and I named another

ther bird the *king's hunter* *, on account of the reſemblance of its form to that of the king's-fiſher. Its bill, which is long, is of a red colour; the back, the wings, and the tail, are of a lively blue: it feeds upon inſects, inhabits only the woods, and makes its neſt in hollow trees. I ſhall not forget this beautiful bird in my ornithology.

Nothing remarkable occurred to us in this encampment, except that, during the whole time of our reſidence here, we regularly experienced every evening, between three and four o'clock, ſevere ſtorms, which did not much incommode us, becauſe they were of ſhort continuance. On the 9th of the month we packed up our baggage and again ſet out, when my Hottentots, according to their cuſtom of giving names to places from ſome circumſtance that has happened in them, called the kraal which we left the *Camp of Slaughter*. Having advanced ſtraight towards the eaſt, and traverſed a canton all the graſs of which had been a prey to the flames, a freſh verdure that began to ſhoot up formed a moſt beautiful green carpet under our feet. At every ſtep we met whole flocks of ſpring-bocks, gnous, and oſtriches. As we had more proviſions than were neceſſary, we did not fire at theſe antelopes. I only diſcharged my fuſee at a few oſtriches; but being too ſuſpicious to ſuffer any one to approach near them, I could not kill one of them. In proportion as we advanced, the antelopes collected themſelves into a body to ſee us paſs; and the heat was ſo intenſe, and perſpiration ſo abundant, that a cloud of vapour aroſe from the middle of theſe innumerable flocks. In the courſe of our march I killed partridges ſufficient to dine all my people, but we did not ſtop to regale on them till we had fatigued ourſelves by continuing our journey

* *Martin chaſſeur.*

journey for full five hours more. About which time a heavy rain came on as uſual that refreſhed us much. Throughout all this canton I obſerved the traces of oxen, which indeed ſeemed to be very old; but I was ſurpriſed that ſo fine a country ſhould be entirely deſtitute of inhabitants, and that we did not meet with a ſingle Caffre. Hans pretended that the alarm had been too general; and though we had already travelled thirty leagues, I began to deſpair of ſeeing even one kraal: every thing ſeemed to announce that theſe people had retired farther towards the centre; and I conjectured that if we ſhould diſcover any of the inhabitants, they could only be ſpies from the hordes, who, deſirous of promoting the general good, ranged the country, and kept themſelves concealed in ambuſh.

While I was converſing familiarly with my people, I perceived a ſmall flock of antelopes, which, paſſing quite cloſe to us, made off full ſpeed, being purſued by a pack of ſeventeen wild dogs. I inſtantly mounted my horſe, and ſet out on a full gallop to defend the antelopes and to attack the wild dogs; but I unluckily ſoon loſt ſight of them both. As the ground was covered with pebbles concealed under the graſs, my horſe ſtumbled at every ſtep, and we both narrowly eſcaped having our necks broke. Returning therefore very deliberately in order to join my people, an oſtrich ſtarted up at the diſtance of twenty paces from me; and as I doubted whether it might not be a female which had been ſitting, I haſtened to the ſpot from which I ſaw it depart, where I found eleven eggs ſtill warm, and four more ſcattered at the diſtance of two or three feet from the neſt. Having called to my companions,

panions, who inſtantly flocked round me, I ordered them to break one of the warm eggs, in which we perceived a young one completely formed, and of the ſize of a chicken when ready to burſt its ſhell. I imagined that all theſe eggs were ſpoiled; but my people thought otherwiſe. Each of them endeavoured to fall upon the neſt; and Amiroo, taking up the other four, deſired me to eat them, aſſuring me that I ſhould find them excellent. I here learned from this ſavage a circumſtance which my Hottentots themſelves were ignorant of, and which is even unknown to naturaliſts, ſince no one whom I know ſpeaks of it. This fact, which I have often afterwards had an opportunity of verifying, is, that the oſtrich always depoſits near her neſt a certain number of eggs, proportioned to thoſe which ſhe deſtines for incubation. As ſhe never ſits upon theſe eggs, they will keep freſh a long time, and the provident inſtinct of the mother ſets them apart for the firſt nouriſhment of the young produced from the reſt. Experience convinced me of the truth of this aſſertion; and every time I met with an oſtrich's neſt, I found ſeveral of the eggs ſeparated in the ſame manner. When I deſcribe theſe ſingular birds, I ſhall enlarge more on this intereſting ſubject.

At half after ſeven in the evening I halted near a conſiderable pond formed by the rain-water, as my oxen had not taſted any when we ſtopped at noon, and as I was not certain of finding an opportunity of refreſhing them if I advanced farther. When our fires were kindled, each cooked his eggs after his own manner; having taken off the ſkin from one of thoſe which were reſerved for me, my Hottentots put a little greaſe into it, after it had been half buried in hot

hot aſhes, and ſtirring it with a wooden ſpoon, they made of it what is called a broiled egg, which, if I remember right, might be equivalent to at leaſt a dozen of hen's eggs; but, notwithſtanding my voracious appetite, and the exquiſite taſte of this new food, I could only eat the half of it. Several of my people, after taking out the young which they found in theirs, made an omelet of the reſt. I queſtioned them, with ſome pleaſantry, reſpecting their fine ragouts of theſe half-hatched eggs, and I could not help concluding that they muſt be infectious; on this account I was deſirous of taſting them, and had I not been blinded by prejudice, I ſhould have found no difference between them and mine, and ſhould have eat them with as much pleaſure.

We ſpent the evening very cheerfully; but this was not the caſe during the night, for we were all kept awake by the continual barking of our dogs, which was the more diſagreeable, as our ears were aſſailed by no other noiſe. As this uproar was not occaſioned by any wild beaſt, for it would ſoon or late have made its appearance, our ſuſpicions fell upon the ſavages, and I began to be apprehenſive of ſome treachery. Day at length appeared, but it did not bring back tranquility, and all the ſearch which we made in the neighbourhood proved entirely fruitleſs. We did not know whether the people whom we dreaded were Caffres, or ſome of thoſe plunderers called the Boſhmen: the dryneſs of the ground and the graſs, in the ſpot where we were encamped, did not permit us to diſcover their traces; and on the 10th, without learning any thing farther, we departed, keeping ſtill towards the eaſt. This direction conducted us to a can-

ton,

ton, in which the mimoſas were in ſo great abundance, and ſo tall and buſhy, that they formed a real foreſt. After paſſing through it we found a ſmall river, which we were ſo fortunate as to be able to ford; and marching along its banks two full leagues, we encamped, as night was about to overtake us.

Having been informed by our guide, that three leagues farther we ſhould at length find the kraal of thoſe Caffres who had ſolicited me to pay them a viſit, I was the more deſirous of ſeeing it, as it was very curious and ancient; and as this place, extremely commodious and well known to the ſavages, ſeldom remained vacant, and as the horde was exceedingly numerous. That we might not diſcover ourſelves, I ordered my people not to fire at any game whatever; and when my tent was erected, and our fires kindled, we remained around them till late at night. After this, in order to deceive the enemy, in whoſe promiſes I prudently repoſed very little confidence, I ordered ſome freſh branches to be thrown into theſe fires, to keep them burning till day-light, and we then went and laid ourſelves down on mats at the diſtance of fifty paces farther. We were not diſturbed in our ſleep; and next morning Hans, with two of my Hottentots well armed, ſetting out before, I appointed them to meet us at a place two leagues diſtant from us, that is to ſay, within a league of the kraal, and to come immediately and give us an account of what they had ſeen. In two hours they returned, and informed me, with equal grief and aſtoniſhment, that they had found the kraal in very good condition, but that, like the reſt, it was abſolutely deſerted; upon which I continued my route to the ſpot, and

and took poſſeſſion of this new empire. In this kraal, which was remarkably extenſive, we found above an hundred huts apparently very ancient, conſtructed with great ſolidity; they were diſtributed in the ordinary manner, and at the uſual diſtances, and it appeared that the inhabitants had been alarmed without cauſe, for we obſerved no ruins, and not a ſingle dead body. In one of the huts they had forgot two aſſagays; and in another a woman's ſmall apron, a few wooden utenſils for tilling the earth, and ſome other trifles of very little value: theſe different objects I took poſſeſſion of. The ſmall cornfields did not here exhibit, as in the firſt kraal where we ſtopped, a picture of deſolation and deſtruction; on the contrary, it appeared that the crops had been carried away in peace. We determined to ſtop here two or three days, in order to diſtribute a few ſcouts at a diſtance, and to ſee if we could not diſcover ſome Caffres in the neighbourhood. I well knew that by going directly northward I ſhould fall in with the centre of Caffraria, which I above all things wiſhed to avoid, as I thought it better to advance gradually towards it by long circuits, and not to expoſe myſelf, but in proportion as I ſhould ſee the dangers leſſened, and according to the information which I might acquire by the way. All our ſtratagems, and all our reſearches, ended however in nothing, for not a ſingle Caffre appeared.

I will be candid enough to confeſs, that, from my own prejudice, and the pompous deſcriptions of the magnificence and luxury of the Aſiatic deſpots, I imagined that I ſhould find at leaſt ſome appearance of them in the territories of the king of the Caffres. This idea had inſpired me with

with a very ſtrong deſire of ſeeing Faroo; but I no longer found the ſame food for my curioſity, after the laſt gueſts whom I had received in my camp, and who generally reſided near, had told me that this prince, without any particular train, inhabited, like the meaneſt of his ſubjects, a hut which was neither larger nor better ornamented than the reſt; that, like them, he might become very poor, if a mortality prevailed among his cattle; that his ſubjects were obliged to pay him neither ſubſidies nor taxes; that he had no right to touch their property; that, in a word, he was only a plain chief as among the Hottentots: that the only remarkable difference between this chief and the reſt was, that his place was hereditary; but that, deſtitute of every external decoration, and of every badge of royalty, he poſſeſſed only a very limited power.

From theſe details, many of thoſe brilliant ideas which my imagination had formed reſpecting this king began to diſappear; and as I could gain nothing by ſeeing him, and I deſpaired of meeting with him, my whole views were directed towards the ſhipwrecked veſſel. The relations of my Caffres gave me very little hopes of being able to ſatisfy myſelf on this point; yet I purſued my courſe towards the coaſt, always full of the chimerical notion that I ſhould obtain more certain information reſpecting it.

In every part of our way we found nothing but deſerted huts, without ſeeing a ſingle inhabitant, or any traces of the human race. In order, however, to indemnify us for this loſs, all the places through which we paſſed abounded with buffaloes, antelopes, and in general with game of every kind—which proves better than vain reaſoning, that the Caffres are not ſo much addicted

to hunting as the Hottentots; that they truſt leſs to hopes, and that they depend more on their corn and flocks than on the reſources of their ſkill and dexterity in wielding their aſſagays and clubs. We ſaw ſeveral elephants, but they did not ſuffer us to get near enough to fire at them.

Since my departure from Koks-Kraal, I had formed ſo large a collection of birds, that I no longer knew where to put them; it was certainly more embarraſſing by its ſize than its weight; though I had always taken care, after preſerving each individual, to place it flat in order to ſpare room.

On the 15th we croſſed the ſmall river which we had followed this far, in order to avoid barren and ſteep mountains which appeared before us; after this we were obliged to turn off towards the ſouth, becauſe, not finding any beaten track, we were forced to direct our courſe according to circumſtances and the nature of the ground. In the courſe of our march I ſprung a buſtard a little before me, which I killed: it had been ſitting on two eggs, which contained young ready to burſt the ſhell, and covered with their firſt down. I was extremely happy that chance procured me this bird, which was entirely new to me; and it appeared that the male and the female ſit on the eggs alternately. The one I killed, which was a male, had a very large and thick creſt, like a capuchin, on the hinder part of its head. The female, which ſoon came and hovered around the ſpot, ſeemed to watch us, and from time to time ſent forth a very hoarſe cry. I had flattered myſelf that I ſhould be able to kill her alſo, and with this view I left the two eggs in the neſt: but as in the whole neighbourhood

hood there was no place where I could conceal myſelf ſo as not to be ſeen, ſhe did not approach; I therefore abandoned my deſign, and purſued my journey.

It is probable that there was not a ſingle Caffre in all that part of the country which we had hitherto traverſed; for the reports of our fuſees, which we fired continually for ſome days, either in our marches or in our different encampments, muſt have diſcovered us, and conducted them towards us, as they are far from being timorous. During our journey we were not, however, all of the ſame opinion on this ſubject, which formed the uſual grounds of our converſation; ſome pretending that there muſt be Caffres in the canton, but that, not being numerous, they did not venture to appear; and others maintaining that there were none, ſince we had not been attacked by them: but when we came to deliberate what conduct we ought to purſue when we ſhould meet them, all my people loſt themſelves in abſurdity, and formed the moſt ridiculous and impracticable plans for our defence. I alone was of opinion that it would be proper to ſuſtain the firſt diſcharge of their weapons without returning it, and to endeavour, by gentle means, to come to an explanation before we uſed our arms, which would ſecure us the advantage, ſhould we be compelled to have recourſe to them. I entertained no doubt that this method would ſucceed ſhould we be attacked in the day time; but if in the night, the caſe would have been different. In this prudent plan of accommodation I however ſaw difficulties almoſt inſurmountable; and it was to avoid every kind of misfortune that we had always made it a rule to ſleep at the diſtance of fifty paces from my tent, over which I

took care to leave my flag floating, that it might be perceived at a great diſtance. This little ſtratagem ſecured us at leaſt from the firſt ſurpriſe.

Notwithſtanding our apprehenſions, we did not give over our courſes and hunting excurſions. Water now grew more ſcarce, and I began to entertain very ſerious apprehenſions. One day, when the weather was cloudy, which enabled us to make a very agreeable and gentle march for more than ſix hours, I perceived Kees ſtop all of a ſudden, turn his face and noſe towards the wind, and begin to run, with all my dogs after him, none of which made the leaſt noiſe. Aſtoniſhed at this new ſpectacle, and perceiving nothing that could particularly attract them, I made haſte to come up with them; but what was my ſurpriſe when I found them all collected around a beautiful ſpring, at the diſtance of three hundred paces from the place whence they had ſet out! Upon this diſcovery, having made a ſign to my people with my hand to approach, they inſtantly obeyed, and we encamped cloſe to this beneficent ſpring, which immediately aſſumed the name of the magician that diſcovered it.

I ſhall more than once have occaſion to recollect circumſtances, in which I received ſignal ſervices from the animals I had along with me; and on this occaſion they freed me from a dreadful affliction, under which I muſt have ſunk without their aſſiſtance. I never doubted that man received from his Creator the ſame faculties in an equal proportion, but his corruption has inſenſibly deprived him of them all. The ſavages approaching nearer to nature in proportion as they are removed from us, have likewiſe every ſenſe more acute; and I myſelf (I hope my aſſertion will not

not be doubted), after paſſing five or ſix months in the deſarts, when, following their example, I turned my face from one ſide to the other, was at length able, like them, to diſcover either a river or a pond, and we never failed to find them.

Being reſolved to paſs the night at Kees-fountain, I embraced the opportunity of a few moments leiſure to prepare the buſtard I had killed; and as the diſtant clouds collected together ſeemed to threaten a ſtorm, I ordered the oxen to be unloaded, and my tent to be erected.

Before night the rain came on in great abundance; but it did not continue long, and it ſcarcely ceaſed when I began to range all the neighbourhood in ſearch of the ſmall birds. In a ſpot, not far from our encampment, I perceived two of thoſe golden yellow ſerpents, ſo common and well known in the colonies under the name of *kooper-capel*, ſtart up at my feet. Theſe reptiles, as ſoon as they ſaw me, reared themſelves erect, ſwelling up their heads prodigiouſly, and hiſſing in a moſt frightful manner. As I knew that the bite of theſe animals is mortal, and that the faculty which they have of darting forwards renders them more dangerous, I diſcharged my piece, upon which one of them fell down dead, while the other entered its hole. Having ſeized the one which remained, I found that it was five feet three inches in length, and nine inches in circumference in the thickeſt part: beſides an infinite number of very ſmall teeth, hardly perceptible, with which its mouth was armed, it had on each ſide of the upper jaw, as high as the noſtrils, a hook five lines long, playing upon its joint, and which it could extend in the ſame manner as a cat or a tiger extends its

claws.

claws. One of theſe my Hottentots broke; and, as I was very fond of hearing them diſcourſe upon natural hiſtory, becauſe, perhaps, I found more truth in the rude reaſoning of habit and experience than in the ingenious ſpeculations of our literati, I aſked them ſeveral queſtions concerning my ſerpent, which they anſwered in a much more ſatisfactory manner than I expected. They did not fail to point out to me, among other ſingularities, that this hollow tooth was the conductor which conveyed the poiſon into the wound that it made. Such is, if I miſtake not, the nature of the *boicininga*, or rattle-ſnake, which I have ſeen often in South America.

I obſerved on this occaſion how much theſe animals are dreaded by apes. It was not poſſible for me to make Kees approach the ſerpent that I had got poſſeſſion of, though it was entirely dead. In order to amuſe myſelf, I found means however to faſten it to his tail; ſo that not being able to make any motion without moving the ſerpent alſo, it may eaſily be conceived what leaps and jumps poor Kees took, and what fury and impatience he ſhewed during the whole time that I kept his fatal enemy affixed to him.

When night came on, we obſerved a large fire, which we concluded, as far as the obſcurity would permit us to judge, to be on the top of ſome mountain, at the diſtance of about three leagues from us. Notwithſtanding this diſtance, concerning which we were not certain, my Hottentots thought they perceived the ſhadows of ſome men paſſing backwards and forwards before the fire, and my ſpying-glaſs ſoon convinced me that they were not miſtaken; but we were ignorant whether

whether they were Caffres, or thoſe deteſtable Boſhmen, enemies to every nation without diſtinction, and plunderers by profeſſion, from whom we could expect no kind of friendſhip. We however conjectured that they were ſome of the latter, becauſe the Caffres never inhabit the mountains; we therefore took the precaution to extinguiſh our fires, and we ſpent the reſt of the night very peaceably.

Our firſt care, when we awoke, was to endeavour to diſcover with more certainty where, and by whom, the fire we had ſeen the preceding evening had been kindled. The weather was exceedingly favourable for obſerving the ſmoke, but it appeared that the fire was extinguiſhed, for we ſaw nothing more of it. Being thus deprived of a fixed point of direction, we ſet out to enter the hollow defiles, where we were likely to be in danger of loſing ourſelves. Nevertheleſs, as my Hottentots, perſuaded that theſe people were not Caffres, appeared willing to purſue their route that way at the riſk of every thing that might happen, and as our plan naturally conducted us thither, we packed up our baggage in great haſte, and bid adieu to Kees-fountain.

We were obliged to paſs through a kind of wood, in which the mimoſas were ſo numerous, ſo thick, and ſo encumbered with buſhes, that we could ſcarcely proceed ten ſteps without being obliged to ſtop in order to force our way, which impeded us much, eſpecially as our oxen continually turned from one ſide to the other to ſearch for a paſſage. We however at length got clear of this tedious foreſt; but I am perſuaded that, after ſo much fatigue, and ſo many turnings and windings, which continued for the

ſpace

ſpace of three hours, we were not more than a league from Kees-fountain. Before us we had a thicket almoſt like that which we paſſed; and, in order to avoid it, we made a turn round, purſuing our courſe in a direction more to the ſouth-weſt.

Covered with ſweat and duſt, and oppreſſed by heat, after marching more than ſix hours, we ſtopped on the banks of a lake, which luckily happened to be in our way. One of my dogs, which had heated himſelf very much by running after game, was here in great danger of periſhing; and I ſhould have indeed loſt him, had it not been for Jan, who, perceiving him in the water, inſtantly ruſhed forwards to drag him from it. I mention this circumſtance, which to many readers may appear trifling, merely for the purpoſe of eſtabliſhing a fact which I have been eye-witneſs of in Africa: as ſoon as an over-heated dog plunges into the water to cool himſelf, he expires, unleſs ſpeedy aſſiſtance be given him. In a hunting excurſion I had with Mr. Boers, a large grey-hound, which had got about an hundred paces before his carriage, having thrown himſelf into a rivulet that lay in our way, was found dead when we came up to him.

Scarcely had we encamped and refreſhed ourſelves a little, when I diſpatched ſome Hottentots to make diſcoveries, eſpecially in that quarter from which we had been principally diſturbed during the night. In leſs than an hour I heard from this detachment; for one of my people came back in great haſte to tell me, that he had perceived a body of Caffres in full march; and having conducted me and Hans by ſeveral windings, he at length brought us to the ſpot where we

we had an opportunity of judging for ourſelves. We indeed ſaw ten men, who were quietly driving before them a few horned cattle; and as we had nothing to fear from ſo ſmall a number, we made our appearance at a diſtance. As ſoon as theſe people obſerved us, they betook themſelves to flight, being frightened, above all, by our fire-arms; but Hans calling out to them in their own language that they might advance boldly, they immediately ſtopped. Going forward, therefore, to ſpeak to them, when they were convinced that I was a friend to the Caffres they all approached me; and having received them very politely, I ſtretched out my hand, and ſaluted them with a *tabè*. The ſight of my beard diſpelled their terror; for they had heard mention made of me by thoſe whom I received in my camp at Koks-Kraal, and one of them knew Hans, whom he had ſeen in his own country. I conducted them all together, with their cattle, to my encampment, and regaled them with tobacco and brandy. They pointed to my flag, to give me to underſtand that they were well informed reſpecting me; and they ſeemed to be much aſtoniſhed not to ſee my carriages, and my whole troop. As I was unwilling to let them know how much they were dreaded by the Hottentots, I told them that I only wiſhed to make a little excurſion into their country to procure intelligence, and afterwards to traverſe it at my leiſure.

They were extremely deſirous of knowing where the planters then were; if they were ſtill in purſuit of them, and what might be their intentions. On this ſubject I gave them ſuch information as I thought conſiſtent with prudence. I had ſeen the planters who had retired to Bruyntjes-

Bruyntjes-Hoogte keep themſelves there on the defenſive, agitated by terrors as much as the Caffres themſelves. The latter told me, that, to reach the neareſt hordes of their nation, it would be ſtill neceſſary to continue my journey for full five days more. Calculating therefore the diſtance which ſeparated theſe people from the planters, and which I reckoned to be nearly ſixty leagues, I could, without deceiving them, allay their fears, and convince them that the latter were neither diſpoſed nor in a condition to undertake ſo long a journey. Theſe poor people were in ſuch a wretched ſituation that I could not help pitying them, for they had never been haraſſed in ſuch a manner as they were at that time; beſides the loſſes which they had ſuſtained in men and cattle by the attacks of the white people, they were daily expoſed to others from the Tambouchis, a neighbouring nation, who, taking advantage of their critical ſituation, overran ſeveral of the cantons of Caffraria, and put every thing to the ſword that they met with; ſo that, oppreſſed on both ſides by this diverſion, the Caffres, deſtitute of warlike ſtores and unable to defend themſelves, retreated as faſt as poſſible, and penetrated farther northwards, to avoid two enemies whom they could not oppoſe; while the Boſhmen, a third, no leſs formidable, plundered and maſſacred them wherever they could find them.

From the information given me by theſe people, I was aſtoniſhed that they had ſtraggled ſo far from their horde; and that they wandered as chance directed, without knowing whither to direct their courſe. They however told me, that on the firſt incurſion made by the whites, they had ſuddenly driven their flocks, all in confuſion,

fuſion, either towards the ſea coaſt, or to other remote parts of Caffraria; but that hearing no accounts of any new hoſtilities, they had ventured to quit their hordes, and to go in queſt of their diſperſed cattle, in order to bring them back again. They had indeed about thirty along with them; and when I mentioned the fire which we had obſerved in the night-time, they aſſured me that it was kindled by them; but that they had not ſeen mine, which would have alarmed them much. Having queſtioned them reſpecting the veſſel which had been ſhipwrecked, they only repeated what had been told me by others; which was, that a ſhip had really been loſt on the coaſts of Caffraria. After this information, I concluded that this misfortune had happened beyond the country of the Tambouchis, oppoſite to Madagaſcar, and towards the channel of Moſambique. They added, that, without mentioning other difficulties which muſt be encountered in their territories, it would be neceſſary, beſides other rivers, to paſs one which was too broad to be croſſed by ſwimming, or to advance a great way towards the north to find a place where it could be forded; that they had ſeen ſeveral white people among the Tambouchis; that they themſelves had purchaſed, by barter, ſeveral articles from theſe people: and above all, a great number of nails procured from the wreck of the veſſel; but that, being then at war with the Tambouchis, they could not get any more iron from them, though they were in great want of that commodity. They then begged me to give them ſome, the ordinary requeſt of theſe poor wretches, which I little expected; but I anſwered their ungracious petition with a mortifying refuſal.

To

To indemnify them, I diſtributed amongſt them all my beads, toys, tinder-boxes, tinder, and a large quantity of tobacco; in return for which they begged me to accept a couple of their oxen: I however replied, that inſtead of taking from them a bleſſing ſo valuable to unfortunate people, I wiſhed rather to be in a ſituation that might enable me to augment the number of their cattle. This mark of kindneſs touched them the more, as they conſider the white people to be the moſt dangerous and miſchievous beings in the world. With that ingenuous and ſincere modeſty which is ever afraid of hurting thoſe on whom it beſtows praiſe, they made a confeſſion to me which remained long imprinted in my memory: Hans declared to me, in their name, and in very energetic terms, that I reſembled the only *worthy man* of my race whom they had ever met with; ſome years before they had ſeen this worthy man on the Boſhman river, the banks of which they then inhabited, and from which the planters had never yet been able to expel them: he was, as they ſaid, a man who, like me, travelled merely for curioſity. I could eaſily perceive that they alluded to Colonel Gordon; and they were extremely happy to underſtand that we lived in ſtrict friendſhip together: they even begged me to intercede with him when I returned to the Cape, and to prevail upon him to lay before government a true and affecting picture of their miſery, and of the deſtitute condition into which they had been thrown by the atrocious injuſtice of their perſecutors.

I ſpent all this day in converſing with theſe Caffres reſpecting their manners, cuſtoms, religion, taſte, and reſources; and I always found that their anſwers correſponded with what had been

been related to me by thoſe whom I had firſt ſeen. They told me, with equal ſincerity, whatever tended to criminate themſelves, or to do them honour; and my Hottentots found them ſo peaceable and unſuſpicious, that they requeſted at night that I would permit them all to remain amongſt us. I continued to converſe with them for ſome time, and then retired to my tent, to prepare for the labours of the next morning.

As ſoon as day appeared, whilſt the Caffres were preparing to depart, I aſſembled my Hottentots. The reflections which their familiarity with theſe ſavages, whom they dreaded more than wild beaſts, enabled them to make, and their converſation with one another when I had retired to my tent, made me immediately reſolve what courſe to purſue. Not wiſhing to give them an opportunity of acquiring any merit from determining what plan was beſt to be adopted in the preſent conjuncture; but, on the contrary, apprehending that they might borrow from me thoſe ideas of prudence and compoſure uſeful to my deſigns, whatever they might in future be; I told them, that after what they, as well as I, had heard the evening before, reſpecting the difficulties of advancing farther, and the danger of being attacked by the Tambouchis and the Boſhmen who were traverſing Caffraria, my intention was to return to Koks-Kraal; that in conſequence of this, if we directed our courſe towards the weſt, we could not fail of falling in with the river Groot-Vis, and that then, by going up its banks for ſeveral days, according as things might appear, we ſhould undoubtedly ſoon reach our camp: I however added, that they were all at liberty to deliver their opinion on the propoſal which I had made. I could ſee too plainly, by the looks of all

my

my people, what pleaſure they received from my reſolution; and they all gave me the honour of ſtarting an idea to which they had as much pretenſion as I. My collection was now become ſo bulky, that I had no hopes of increaſing it, for I ſcarcely knew where to place it.

I afterwards declared, that when I reached Koks-Kraal I would remain there no longer than might be neceſſary to repair our carriages, and to prepare for going towards the ſnow mountains, from which I meant to proceed to the Cape by keeping more to the weſtward. I knew that this plan was not approved by any of my people, becauſe in traverſing theſe dry and barren deſarts, in the time of the greateſt drought, it would be neceſſary for us to encounter more than one difficulty; but being impatient to take a view of the natural curioſities contained in this country, I had formed an irrevocable reſolution to croſs it, and the overture I made was only a ſtratagem to reconcile early to this idea ſuch of my Hottentots as I had with me, in order that, when we returned to my camp, they might be better able to inſpire their companions with confidence, and to teſtify the greater aſtoniſhment at their reſiſtance, ſhould they ſhew any.

Before I left theſe Caffres, I diſtributed among them, as well as among my Hottentots, a quantity of tobacco; and I reſerved no more than was ſufficient to ſerve us till we returned to our camp. This made room for the birds with which we were encumbered, and alſo for thoſe that I might be able to procure by the way. Theſe ten ſavages aſſiſted us to pack up our baggage and to yoke our oxen; after which we wiſhed one another a good journey, and ſet out to purſue two oppoſite routes,

they

they towards the north and we towards the ſouth.

We ſpent three days, during which nothing remarkable happened, in reaching the ſo much wiſhed for banks of the Groot-Vis. This forced march having fatigued both us and our cattle conſiderably, I reſolved to paſs the next day on the banks of the river, both with a view to refreſh ourſelves, and to ſee what diſcoveries I might make in the neighbourhood. We were at this time under no uneaſineſs reſpecting water, and we had been in no want of it during the three days that we employed in ſearching for the river, which we knew would conduct us to the place of our deſtination; but we could not preciſely aſcertain the time which might be neceſſary to follow its courſe to our camp. It was poſſible that high mountains and other obſtacles might oblige the Groot-Vis, before it diſcharged itſelf into the ſea, to form ſome bendings, which muſt have greatly prolonged our journey. We went along its banks very peaceably for three days more, ſtill keeping cloſe to it; and at length, on the morning of the fourth, we perceived the high mountain, the back part of which we had ſeen ſoon after our departure. This ſight made my people ſhout for joy. We were now about to reviſit our camp, our herds, our riches, and our companions; we therefore quickened our pace, and, late in the evening, without being obſerved, reached the happy ſpot. All were ſunk in the moſt profound tranquility, and nothing could have given me more pleaſure than the agreeable ſurpriſe of this precipitate arrival. The horrid noiſe made by my dogs immediately ſpread the alarm; all haſtened towards us; they knew our voices; and, even to the moſt inſenſible animals, all ſeemed to ſhare in the general joy: above all, we could not

diſengage

diſengage ourſelves from my dogs, which teazed us by their careſſes and ſtunned us with their barking. Another ſpectacle however appeared to me no leſs intereſting: my family had increaſed conſiderably: at my departure a ſmall detachment from the worthy Gonaquas had quitted their horde, and had eſtabliſhed themſelves in the ſame place which I had aſſigned to the Caffres, where they had conſtructed ſeveral new huts. They informed me, and indeed I plainly ſaw by the admirable order that prevailed in the camp, that every thing had been quiet during my abſence: we had been the whole ſubject of converſation to thoſe we had left. Every evening Swanepoel gave me the moſt favourable accounts of each ſeparately; he told me, that the firſt fifteen days having elapſed without hearing news of me, he could not help entertaining a little fear, and that he was apprehenſive he ſhould not ſee me till I returned to the Cape, as he was perſuaded that, unleſs I met with inſurmountable obſtacles, I would ſtill proceed as long as I had ammunition.

I honeſtly confeſs, that having been for nearly a month deprived of the comforts and enjoyments of my camp, I was exceedingly happy to find myſelf returned; and I had the higheſt ſatisfaction in the fidelity and attachment of theſe Hottentots, ſo feeble and timid, whom I had not been afraid to abandon to themſelves. It was therefore now time that I ſhould ſhew them my gratitude: on this account I proclaimed with a loud voice that it was Saturday; and this declaration, which paſſed from mouth to mouth even to the Gonaquas, ſeemed ſtill to add to their agitation. This circumſtance requires ſome explanation, which I ſhall give with freſh pleaſure; for the remembrance of theſe trifling but agreeable methods I purſued

purſued to vary my amuſements, and in an uninhabitable deſart to convert the ſimpleſt object into a ſubject of pleaſantry and entertainment, announces the greateſt tranquillity, and makes me, even when ſurrounded by the arts, and agitated by pride and vanity, lament that I can no longer diſtinguiſh my own character.

When I ſet out from the Cape, I did not neglect to carry an almanack with me; but in order to have ſome certain method of reckoning, and to keep my journal correct, I made all the months to conſiſt of thirty days. As I never paſſed one without giving an account of it, I conſidered it as a matter of indifference whether or not I diſtinguiſhed the weeks, and marked the days by their proper names, but I determined to diſtribute among my Hottentots their allowance of tobacco every Saturday. If it happened that, not chooſing to give myſelf the trouble of conſulting my book, I aſked them what the day was, I could eaſily gueſs what anſwer they would give me; according to their calculation it was always Saturday: ſo that when I looked at my regiſter after travelling fifteen months, I found ſeven or eight of theſe Saturdays which belonged to no week.

I found myſelf therefore, as uſual, ſurrounded by my numerous family; and whilſt all of them, and even the Gonaqua women, were ſmoking their pipes round a large fire, and enjoying a double allowance of brandy, I regaled myſelf very cheerfully with my tea.

Having mentioned to them the route which I intended to purſue next day, I found that they were already informed of it, and that they did not make ſo many remonſtrances and objections as I expected. I perceived that my journey was

approaching to a close; and that every body, exhausted by fatigue, thought any road good that appeared to bring us nearer to the Cape; but the passage through the mountains of *Snew-Bergen*, the usual haunt of the Boshmen, made more than one of my brave attendants tremble. I fixed my departure for the eighth, in order that I might have time to repair my carriages, to make new wooden work to support the top of that in which I rode, to cover the canvass of it with new mats, to replace our old traces from the hides of the buffaloes killed during my absence, and to cast balls and small shot. All this required considerable time; and no less was necessary to arrange the collection which I had formed in Caffraria, and to consign to my journal the result of my researches respecting that country and its inhabitants. For the sake of expedition, my people exerted themselves considerably; and I shut myself up in my tent, and hastened, while my observations were still fresh in my memory, to reduce them into some order.

To judge of the Caffres from those I have seen, they are generally taller than the Hottentots, and even than the Gonaquas; they however approach much nearer to the latter; but they appear to be more robust, more fierce, and much bolder. The figure is likewise more agreeable, and their countenances have not that narrowness at bottom, nor their cheeks those prominences which are so disagreeable among the Hottentots; neither have they those broad flat faces and thick lips of their neighbours, the negroes of Mosambique. A round figure, a nose too flat, a broad forehead, and large eyes, give them an open and a lively air; and if prejudice

judice can overlook the colour of the ſkin, there are ſome Caffre women who, even when ſeated by an European lady, would be accounted extremely pretty. Theſe people do not make their faces ridiculous by pulling out their eyebrows like the Hottentots; they tattoo themſelves much, and particularly their bodies: they never greaſe their hair, which is frizzled in a very great degree; but this is not the caſe with reſpect to the reſt of their body, and they follow this practice merely with a view to preſerve agility and vigour.

The men generally beſtow more attention on their dreſs than the women; and they are remarkably fond of beads and copper rings. They, for the moſt part, wear bracelets on their arms and legs, made of elephants tuſks, which they form into natural rings, of greater or leſs thickneſs, by ſawing through the hollow part; after which they make them round on the outſide, and give them a fine poliſh. As theſe large rings do not open, they muſt be of ſuch a ſize that the hand can paſs through them, in order that they may be put upon the arm; on which account they are always eaſy, and move up and down one againſt the other. If ſmall rings of this kind are given to children, in proportion as they increaſe in years the vacuum is filled up; and as they then adhere firmly to the arm, they become a luxury which is highly pleaſing to thoſe who have been thus decorated in their youth. They make necklaces alſo of the bones of animals ranged on a ſtring, which they have the art of whitening and poliſhing in the moſt perfect manner. Some of them are contented with the whole bone of a leg of mutton; and this ornament makes a very conſpicuous figure on

the breaſt of a Caffre: it has the ſame effect as a patch on the face of a pretty woman in Europe.

They ſubſtitute ſometimes for this bone the horn of an antelope, or any thing elſe, according to their caprice; and I am of opinion, that one would ſee as many varieties, and as many fantaſtical ornaments in their dreſs, as are ſeen in Europe, provided they had the ſame means and the ſame reſources. They, however, always employ the ſame materials, becauſe they have no kinds of ſtuff to ſupply the place of thoſe ſkins with which they clothe themſelves. It would appear that they are not ſo chaſte as the Hottentots, becauſe they do not uſe a jackal to veil what nature bids them conceal. A ſmall cowl, which covers only the glans, inſtead of diſplaying modeſty, ſeems to announce the greateſt indecency. This ſmall covering adheres to a thong, which is faſtened round their girdles merely that it may not be loſt; for a Caffre, if he is not afraid of being hurt or ſtung by inſects, cares very little whether this cowl be in its place or not. I never ſaw but one man who, inſtead of a cowl, wore a caſe made of wood, ornamented with ſculpture: this was a new and ridiculous faſhion, which he had borrowed from a nation of black people who lived at a great diſtance from Caffraria. In the hot ſeaſon the Caffres go always naked, and retain nothing but their ornaments: in cold weather they wear kroſſes made of calves or oxen's hides, which reach down to the ground.

A peculiarity, which is perhaps to be found no where elſe, and which deſerves ſome attention, is, that the Caffre women ſet very little value upon dreſs: as they are, in compariſon of other ſavages, well made and pretty, they perhaps

perhaps have alſo good ſenſe enough to believe that ornaments are rather calculated to veil imperfections than to ſet off beauties; however this may be, one never ſees amongſt them that diſplay and profuſion of them which are common among the Hottentot women. They do not even wear copper bracelets; but their ſmall aprons, which are ſtill ſhorter than thoſe of the Gonaquas, are bordered with a few rows of glaſs beads, and in this all their luxury conſiſts. The ſkin which the female Hottentots wear on their reins behind, among the Caffre women riſes to their armpits, and is faſtened round the neck, which it covers. Like their huſbands, they have kroſſes of the ſkins of calves or oxen, but always more ſmooth: they, however, uſe neither the one nor the other except in cold or rainy weather. Theſe ſkins are as ſoft and pliable as our fineſt ſtuffs; and with regard to the proceſs which the Caffres employ to dreſs them, it is almoſt the ſame as that of the Hottentots.

Whatever the weather or the ſeaſon may be, both ſexes go bareheaded. I have indeed ſometimes obſerved a plume of feathers fixed in their hair; but this whimſical ornament is very uncommon.

The precautions taken by the Caffre women when they bring forth children, and in their periodical indiſpoſitions, are abſolutely the ſame as thoſe obſerved by the Gonaqua or Hottentot women.

Their daily occupations are confined to the fabrication of earthen-ware, which they form with as much ingenuity as their huſbands. Thoſe which I had with me in my camp, having found clay fit for their purpoſe, did not loſe this opportunity

opportunity of making pipkins, and other veſſels which are in uſe amongſt them. At their departure they carried with them a ſufficient proviſion of this earth, with which they loaded their oxen. It is the women alſo, as I have already ſaid, who weave their baſkets: they likewiſe prepare the fields for receiving ſeed; but they rather ſcratch it up with wooden pickaxes than till it.

The Caffre huts, more ſpacious and higher than thoſe of the Hottentots, have alſo a more regular form; it is abſolutely that of a perfect hemiſphere. The frames of them are conſtructed of wooden work, well put together and very ſolid, becauſe it is intended to laſt a long time. This they afterwards cover, both within and without, with a kind of mud or plaſter made of cows dung and clay mixed up together, and ſpread over it very ſmoothly. Theſe huts exhibit to the eye an air of neatneſs which the habitations of the Hottentots undoubtedly have not; and one would almoſt believe them to be done over with the fineſt cement. The only opening which they have is ſo low and narrow, that people muſt lie down on their bellies to enter it. The cuſtom at firſt appeared to me highly ridiculous, and to be carried to a much greater length than among the Hottentot,; but as they uſe theſe huts only in the night-time, it is eaſier, on this account, to defend oneſelf either againſt animals, or the ſudden attacks of an enemy. The floors of them are covered with the ſame ſubſtance as the walls; and in the centre is formed a circular hearth, ſurrounded by a border two or three inches in height, to contain the fire, and preſerve the hut from any danger which it might occaſion. Around the hut, at the diſtance

tance of five or ſix inches, they dig a ſmall trench, about a foot and a half in depth, and as much in breadth, for the purpoſe of receiving the waters; and this precaution ſecures it from all moiſture. In different cantons I viſited and ſurveyed more than ſeven hundred of theſe huts; but I never ſaw one of a ſquare form, as ſome authors have pretended. Beſides, I ſuppoſe it is of little importance to the reader to know whether theſe ſavages lodge in round or in ſquare habitations; but I muſt remark, that, by mentioning every thing, one may, ſoon or late, diſcover thoſe travellers who have only ſeen a part of what they have related.

The fields of the Hottentots being either by the ſoil, their poſition, or the number of ſmall rivers which water them, much more fertile than thoſe of the Hottentots, it neceſſarily follows, that the Caffres, who apply to agriculture, remain fixed to one ſpot; and this is always the caſe when nothing interrupts their repoſe. The ſame fields which gave them birth, is alſo the ſcene of their lateſt moments, unleſs they are attacked, I do not ſay by barbarous perſecutors only, who thirſt after their blood, but by ſome of thoſe deſtructive ſcourges which ſpare neither men nor animals, and which ſpread deſolation in a moment throughout immenſe regions. A neat and ſolid habitation, conſtructed near a rivulet, in the middle of a cultivated field which they have inherited from their fathers, is enough to enrich the language of the Caffres with the agreeable appellation of country; which the wandering indifference of the Hottentots will prevent them from ever knowing.

I have,

I have, however, made a remark, which though it may appear ſtrange, is nevertheleſs certain and general: notwithſtanding the foreſts and beautiful woods with which Caffraria is covered; notwithſtanding thoſe delightful paſtures which riſe to ſuch a height as to conceal the herds that are ſcattered here and there in the fields; and notwithſtanding thoſe rivers and ſtreams which croſs each other in a thouſand different directions to render them rich and fertile; their oxen, their cows, and almoſt all their animals, are much ſmaller than thoſe of the Hottentots—a difference which uncoubtedly ariſes from the nature of the ſap, and a certain flavour predominant in every kind of graſs. I have made this obſervation, not only on the domeſtic animals of the cantons which I traverſed, but alſo on thoſe which were wild, and I really found them ſmaller than thoſe I had before ſeen in the dry and parched countries. I remarked, in my tour among the Nimiquas, who inhabit mere rocks and the moſt barren parts perhaps of all Africa, that their oxen were the moſt beautiful I had ever ſeen; and that even the elephants and the hippopotami were much more robuſt than any where elſe. The little paſture which is to be met with in theſe miſerable places, is likewiſe exceedingly tender and ſweet. This quality in the herbs may be eaſily diſtinguiſhed, and I employed a particular method to diſcover it. After I arrived in any canton, when my cattle returned from paſture, I judged of the harſhneſs of the graſs upon which they had fed, by their diſperſing themſelves all over my camp, and eagerly ſearching for the bones left by my dogs, in order to eaſe their teeth. As theſe bones were of a calcareous nature, by gnawing them they blunted the

the force of that irritation and acidity which tormented them. We therefore never threw our bones into the fire. We therefore never threw our bones into the fire. When theſe were wanting, dry wood or ſtones ſupplied their place; and when they could not find theſe reſources, they even gnawed each other's horns. When the paſtures were good, this ceremony never took place.

A more perceptible induſtry, an acquaintance with ſome of the moſt neceſſary arts, a little knowledge of agriculture, and a few religious dogmas, ſeem to announce that the Caffres are a much more civilized people than thoſe who live farther ſouth. Circumciſion, which they generally practiſe, proves that they either owe their origin to ſome ancient people, from whom they have degenerated, or that they have only copied it from neighbours, of whom they have at preſent no remembrance; for when one ſpeaks to them of this ceremony, they ſay it is neither from religion nor any other myſtic cauſe that they adopt it. They however entertain a very exalted idea of the Supreme Being, and of his power: and they believe in a future ſtate, and that the wicked will be puniſhed, and the good rewarded; but they have no idea of the creation. They imagine that the world exiſted from eternity, and that it will always remain as it is at preſent. In other reſpects they uſe no religious ceremonies, and they never offer up prayers; ſo that we may juſtly ſay they have no religion at all, if there be no religion without worſhip. They take upon themſelves the care of educating their own children. Though they have no prieſts, they have magicians, who are much feared and reverenced by the greater part; but I never had the

the ſatisfaction of ſeeing any of them. Notwithſtanding all their credit, I am very doubtful whether they impoſe as much upon the vulgar as ours. Theſe Caffres ſuffer themſelves to be governed by a general chief or king, whoſe power, as I have had occaſion to obſerve, is very limited. As he receives no ſubſidies, he cannot maintain troops, and he is far from having it in his power to be deſpotic. He is the father of a free people, but he is neither feared nor reſpected. He is often much poorer than any of his ſubjects, becauſe, being at liberty to take as many wives as he chooſes, and as theſe women think it an honour to belong to him, the expences occaſioned by this regal train, and which he is obliged to take from his private treaſury, I mean his fields, his cattle, &c. ruin his property, and reduce it to nothing. His hut is neither higher nor better ornamented than any of the reſt; and he collects his ſeraglio and his family around him, which compoſe a group of twelve or fifteen huts at moſt. The fields which ſurround them are generally thoſe that he cultivates, and it is cuſtomary for each perſon to gather in his own crops, in order to diſpoſe of them in whatever manner he thinks proper. The grain which they reap is the favourite nouriſhment of the Caffres: they pound and bruiſe it between two ſtones; and on this account, each family ſeparating from the reſt that they may have their productions within their reach, a ſingle horde, not very numerous, often occupies a league ſquare of ground, which is never the caſe among the Gonaquas or the Hottentots.

This diſtance of the different hordes from one another, renders it neceſſary that they ſhould have chiefs, who are appointed by the king.

When

When he has any thing to communicate to them of great importance for the nation, he ſends for them, and tells them his orders, or, I ought rather to ſay, his news. The different chiefs then return to make them known to thoſe who are under them.

The arms of the Caffres, a plain lance or aſſagay, announces ſomething grand and intrepid in their character. They deſpiſe poiſoned arrows, which are ſo much uſed among their neighbours, and conſider them as unworthy of their courage. They always ſeek to meet their enemy face to face, and they never can throw their aſſagays until they are in the open fields. The Hottentot, on the contrary, concealed under a rock or behind a buſh, deals out deſtruction without being expoſed to danger. The one is a perfidious tiger, which ruſhes treacherouſly on his prey; and the other is a generous lion, which having given warning of his approach, makes his attack boldly, and periſhes if he does not get the better of his antagoniſt. The inequality of his arms is not capable of making him heſitate a moment, for his courage and ſpirit ſupply every deficiency. In the time of war, indeed, he carries a buckler of about three feet in height, made of the thickeſt part of a buffalo's hide, which is ſufficient to defend him from arrows, and even aſſagays, but not from a ball. The Caffre manages alſo, with much addreſs, a weapon no leſs terrible than the aſſagay, when he falls in with his enemy. This weapon is a club, two feet and a half in length, made of one piece of wood, or of a root, three inches in diameter where thickeſt, and decreaſing in ſize towards one of its extremities. Sometimes he will dart it to the diſtance of fifteen or twenty

twenty paces, and it is very rare that he does not hit the propoſed mark. I have ſeen one of theſe ſavages kill a partridge in this manner the moment it ſprang up from the ground.

The ſovereign power is hereditary in the king's family, and the prince is always ſucceeded by his eldeſt ſon; but in default of male heirs, the neareſt nephews, and not his brothers, are the ſucceſſors. In caſes where the ſovereign leaves neither nephews nor children, a king is then choſen from among the chiefs of the different hordes. Upon theſe occaſions a ſpirit of party ſometimes prevails, which gives riſe to factions and intrigues that generally end in bloodſhed.

Polygamy is uſed among theſe Caffres, and their marriages are ſtill ſimpler than thoſe of the Hottentots. The parents of the bridegroom are always contented with the choice he has made, but thoſe of the bride inſpect into matters a little more narrowly. They, however, ſeldom ſtart many difficulties; they drink, dance, and make merry for whole weeks, according to the riches of the two families: but theſe feſtivals never take place, except when one marries for the firſt time; in other caſes every thing is tranſacted in private. The Caffres are no better acquainted with muſic, and have no other inſtruments than the Hottentots, except that I ſaw amongſt them a wretched flute ſcarcely worth being mentioned. They uſe the Engliſh ſtep in their dances, but in other reſpects they are almoſt the ſame.

On the death of a father the male children and the mother ſhare the ſucceſſion between them. The girls receive no part of it, and they remain with their mother until they can procure a huſband. If they marry while their parents are alive, they receive nothing elſe for a dowry but a few

a few cattle, in proportion to the riches of either.

In general they do not inter their dead; they are tranſported from the kraal by the family, and depoſited in a ditch which is open and common to the whole horde. Savage animals often go thither to feed at their leiſure, and this preſerves the air pure, which would otherwiſe ſoon become corrupted, by the multitude of carcaſſes that are heaped together. Funeral honours are due only to kings and the chiefs of each horde. The bodies are covered with a heap of ſtones, collected into the form of a dome; and this accounts for that ſeries of ſmall mounts ſeen ranged in a line near Bruyntjes-Hoogte, which formerly belonged to the Caffres.

I am not acquainted with the diſpoſition of the Caffres in reſpect to love, and I do not know whether they are jealous. I however imagine that they are ſo only with their own countrymen; for they readily give up their women to the firſt white man who wiſhes to enjoy them, provided they receive a ſmall retribution. Hans repeatedly gave me to underſtand, that all thoſe whom I admitted into my camp were at my ſervice, and that I had nothing to do but to make a choice: indeed there were no kind of allurements which they did not throw out before their huſbands to lead me into their ſnares; and the latter were perhaps only offended at the cool manner in which I ſeemed to receive their addreſſes.

I will not enlarge farther on theſe details, as I conceive I have ſaid enough to ſhew how far theſe people differ from their neighbours, when there is no other communication between them but that eſtabliſhed by bloody wars and continual enmiyt.

The

The eighth, that happy day which was to bring us nearer the Cape, at length appeared, upon which I made a general review of my carriages, equipage, and oxen, &c. I had arranged my new collections, and ſurveyed thoſe which I procured before; the balls and ſhot neceſſary for our hunting excurſions were caſt; my oxen, which for a long time had enjoyed reſt, and abundance of excellent paſture, were full and in good condition: in a word, I was ready to depart; but I allowed two days more to take leave of our worthy neighbours, and to amuſe ourſelves with them.

When the news of my reſolution were ſpread abroad, I ſoon ſaw the whole horde arriving, both men and women, in cluſters. Haabas was at their head, while all who could walk followed him, and ran up to bid us farewel before we departed. I was extremely happy that they had come to ſpend theſe two days with us. The good Haabas introduced to me four or five Gonaquas of another horde, who having heard mention made of me, had been deputed to invite me to viſit their canton. This requeſt was made too late; but I ſoftened my refuſal by promiſing to remember their invitation the next time that I undertook a journey into thoſe countries.

During theſe two days both parties gave themſelves up to all the extravagance of joy and pleaſure; my brandy was not ſpared, nor the hydromel which Haabas had made on purpoſe and brought along with him; but the beautiful Narina and her ſiſter, who were of the party, took no ſhare in theſe orgies. Sadneſs had above all disfigured the features of Narina, whom I comforted as well as I could by giving her a few

few preſents. I gave her ſome alſo for her ſiſter, her mother, and her friends; in a word, I diſpoſed upon this occaſion of the greater part of my toys: but dreſs at this time was not what principally engaged her attention. To Haabas and his people I gave every thing I could ſpare without hurting me, and without depriving myſelf of thoſe reſources which were neceſſary for my return. Tobacco above all was diſtributed with great profuſion among theſe worthy ſavages, and I reſerved only as much as might be ſufficient to ſupply my people till we reached the Cape.

After this I took the venerable Haabas aſide, and preſſed him in an affectionate manner, and even with emotion, to follow the advice which I had given him reſpecting his own preſervation, and that of his whole horde. I endeavoured to perſuade him that the apparent tranquility of the planters, always aſſembled in the ſame place, ſeemed to forebode ſome new project, and conſequently new acts of treachery; and that his kraal being ſituated juſt between the planters and the Caffres, he might ſoon or late become a victim either to the one or the other.

He promiſed that he would remove to a proper diſtance as ſoon as I had departed; telling me that he had not formed this reſolution ſooner, as he wiſhed to have the pleaſure of ſeeing me again on my return from Caffraria: but he added, with that affection and love of which he had given me ſo many proofs, that if the times became fortunate, that is to ſay, if peace ſhould be reſtored, he was determined to eſtabliſh himſelf in my camp, in remembrance of his benefactor, and becauſe he could not find a more agreeable ſpot.

On

On the 4th of December I departed: but in vain ſhould I attempt to deſcribe the conſternation of the Gonaquas; one might have ſaid that I was abandoning them to the wild beaſts, and that by loſing me they loſt every thing. With ſtill more difficulty could I deſcribe my own internal ſenſations. I had now given the ſignal, and my people, my carriages, and my cattle, were already on their way: I therefore ſlowly followed this convoy, leading my horſe by the bridle; and while I neither looked behind me, nor uttered a ſingle ſyllable, I ſuffered my tears to relieve the ſad oppreſſion of my heart.

My worthy and ſincere friends, I ſhall behold you no more!—Whatever may be the cauſe of thoſe tender ſentiments which you have ſworn to entertain towards me—be happy!—The ſource of them is not purer in Europe than among you—be happy! No force is capable of deſtroying the remembrance of them. Confiding in my adieus, my regret, and my tears, you have perhaps long expected me in your calamities; your deceived ſimplicity has perhaps brought you back more than once to thoſe happy ſpots which were the ſcenes of our meetings and of our feſtivals; you have in vain ſought for me; in vain have you called me to aſſiſt you: I could neither comfort nor defend you, immenſe tracts of country ſeparate us for ever. But think no more of me. May no fooliſh hope diſturb the tranquility of your moments; ſuch an idea would embitter all my days. I have again ſubmitted to the chains of ſociety; I ſhall die like ſo many others, borne down by an enormous load; but I can at leaſt ſay, with my lateſt breath, "my

" my name is already effaced from the remem-
" brance of my friends, while the traces of
" my feet ſtill remain viſible among the Gona-
" quas."

From the information I received, I concluded that we ſhould find the ſnow-mountains to the eaſt; and that by leaving Bruyntjes-Hoogte on my left, and croſſing that chain of mountains which bear the ſame name, though they extend to a conſiderable diſtance, we muſt infallibly arrive at the former, at the diſtance of forty or fifty leagues, more or leſs, according to the way by which the windings might oblige me to conduct my carriages and baggage.

I had heard ſuch different accounts of theſe mountains, that I was extremely deſirous of ſeeing them, and of croſſing them at my leiſure; but I was not able to reach them ſo ſoon as I expected. Beſides, being informed that the elevation and coldneſs of their ſummits rendered them uninhabitable during ſeveral months of the year, this new climate ſeemed to promiſe new productions, and varieties of different kinds, worthy of exciting my curioſity.

Though the heat was exceſſive we advanced full ſix leagues; and at one in the afternoon we ſtopped at the ruins of a kraal which had been dreadfully ravaged. Its wretched inhabitants had probably been ſurpriſed and maſſacred on the ſpot, as the ground was ſtrewed with human bones and fragments of carcaſſes; a diſguſting ſight, from which we haſtened to remove.

Having ſet out at four in the evening, after a march of four hours, we reached a deſerted habitation, from which nothing had been carried away except the furniture. I intended to paſs the night here; but ſcarcely had we arrang-

ed ourſelves, when I perceived a moſt extraordinary itching all over my body; upon which I uncovered my breaſt, and found it quite black with innumerable ſwarms of fleas. My Hottentots themſelves were not entirely exempt from the attacks of theſe importunate vermin; and on this account we inſtantly quitted theſe infectious places, which my people named the *camp of fleas*, and went to eſtabliſh ourſelves at a little diſtance, on the banks of a limpid and delightful rivulet, into which I plunged without taking time to undreſs. As my body was abſolutely ſpeckled, Klaas adviſed me, when I quitted the bath, to ſuffer myſelf to be rubbed in the manner of the ſavages. I was therefore greaſed and *boughoued* for the firſt time in my life, and I muſt confeſs that I found myſelf much eaſier. Though we had ſtopt only a quarter of an hour in this unlucky ſpot, my dogs and my carriages were covered with theſe inſects. The balſamic operation to which I had juſt ſubmitted was the only means to ſecure me from them, until length of time, or a ſhower of rain, might free us from them entirely. On account of this proceſs, which is familiar to the Hottentots, they had been leſs attacked by them than their maſter.

The new ſituation which we occupied, and in which we paſſed the night, was not deſtitute of beauties. On the north we were flanked by immenſe foreſts of the ſame kinds of trees as thoſe before mentioned; and the plain was covered with the mimoſa, which the planters name *dooren-boom*: I had the pleaſure of ſeeing it in full bloſſom. This to me was a lucky circumſtance; and I did not neglect to take advantage of it; for, as I have ſaid, the flowers of this tree attract vaſt numbers of curious inſects, which

which are ſeldom to be found but at this ſeaſon; and theſe inſects, in their turn, draw thither large flocks of birds of every kind, to which they ſerve as food. I ſettled, therefore, in this plain, where I amuſed myſelf in changing my place of encampment. I had reaſon to conclude that all the borders of the foreſt had been inhabited by Caffres; for we could not move a ſtep without ſeeing the remains of ancient huts, more or leſs deſtroyed by the hand of time. In this place I found without any difficulty, two kinds of antelope, the gnou and the ſpring-bock. The ſilence of the night never appeared to me more majeſtic than here. The roaring of the lion reſounded around us at certain intervals; but the converſations of theſe ferocious animals could not frighten us, nor interrupt our repoſe, after having been accuſtomed to them, and to live in the midſt of them for more than twelve months. We, however, did not neglect our uſual precautions. I was increaſing my collection every day, more and more; and I enriched it here with a magnificent bird entirely unknown to ornithologiſts: my people called it *uyt-lager*, or the mock-bird. As ſoon as it perceived any of us, or one of our animals, more of the ſame ſpecies inſtantly appeared in ſcores; and perching upon the branches neareſt to us, raiſing themſelves perpendicularly on their feet, and balancing their bodies from one ſide to another, they ſtunned us by repeating in a very precipitate manner theſe ſyllables, *gra*, *ga*, *ga*, *ga*. Theſe poor animals ſeemed to hurry to their own deſtruction; for we killed as many of them as we choſe. This bird is almoſt of the ſize of the black-bird; its plumage, which is of a golden green, reflects ſomewhat of purple; its long tail is ſhaped like the head

head of a lance, and, like the feathers of the wings, it is beautifully ſpotted with white: the bill, which is hooked and long, is remarkable as well as the feet, by being of a moſt beautiful red colour. It climbs along the branches of trees, to find inſects on which it feeds; and when they conceal themſelves under the bark, it detaches it very dexterouſly with its beak.

We muſt not call this bird a wood-pecker, though it ſeems to have a conſiderable reſemblance to it. Very eſſential characteriſtics, as will afterwards appear, ſeparate it from that claſs.

Having one evening remarked that they came in flocks, without any precaution, or being in the leaſt alarmed at our preſence, to repoſe in different holes in the trunk of a large tree, near which we were encamped, I ordered ſeveral of theſe holes to be cloſed; and next morning, when I opened them with great care, I had the pleaſure of ſeizing theſe birds by their bills, as they made their appearance in order to eſcape. This method is certainly eaſy and ſimple; and barbets and wood-peckers of every ſpecies may be procured in the ſame manner; but, as the latter conceal themſelves better than the former, it is more difficult to diſcover them. An obſervation which I conſider as very juſt, is, that all birds which have two toes before and behind, retire to hollow trees during the night-time; but this, however, does not deprive other ſpecies, ſuch as the titmouſe, the nut-hatch *, &c. of the ſame inſtinct.

It would be highly imprudent to thruſt one's hand into theſe holes without being certain what they

* In French *Torchepot*. Sitta Europæa, Linn. T.

they contain; for they are often inhabited by ſmall quadrupedes of the ſize of a rat; and ſerpents alſo ſometimes get into them, in order to devour the birds or rather eggs: and though theſe reptiles, for the moſt part, are not noxious, they never fail to occaſion great terror, which people cannot always ſuppreſs. That ſpecies called *kooper-kapel*, of which I have already ſpoken, glide up trees very eaſily, and may alſo take ſhelter in ſome of theſe holes: people, then, would be expoſed to ſomething more than fear, and pay dear for their imprudent curioſity.

On the 16th we purſued our journey. In five different encampments I traverſed all the country, which we were about to quit. After marching three hours, I found myſelf on the banks of the Klein-Vis river; ſo that I could not advance farther that day: and we ſpent a great deal of time in endeavouring to find a part of the river fordable for my carriages. In this place they had before been in great danger of being overſet.

The following day having croſſed the river without ſuſtaining any loſs, I ſaw another deſerted habitation; but I had not the curioſity to approach it. Some leagues farther we found abundance of mimoſas, and all as completely in bloſſom as thoſe I had left the evening before. I yielded the more readily to the temptation which induced me to ſtop on the borders of theſe foreſts, as I obſerved a variety of birds which I had no where ſeen, and, for the ſecond time, that kind of perroquet of which I have before ſpoken. Wandering to a little diſtance, I found myſelf in a ſmall meadow, amidſt a wood of very buſhy trees. This peaceful deſart ſeemed to be favourable for my operations, and very convenient for my carriages; but to convey them through buſhes

buſhes and branches which croſſed each other in a thouſand different directions, appeared to be a work of great difficulty. We had, however, overcome obſtacles even more inſurmountable; and this, like all the reſt, gave way to our exertions. On the 19th, after much labour and fatigue, I accompliſhed my deſign; but I had the misfortune to loſe one of my beſt oxen, which was driven with ſo much violence againſt one of the mimoſas that its prickles penetrated the animal's breaſt, and broke in the fleſh. We extracted in the beſt manner we could all thoſe which appeared, or which we could lay hold of, with a pair of pincers; but, as our art extended no farther, thoſe which had ſunk deeper, and which we could neither lay hold of nor perceive, occaſioned ſo great an inflammation, that, after twenty-four hours, all the conſultations of my beſt phyſicians ended in a reſolution of putting the patient to death, which was immediately executed.

Theſe woods ſwarmed with touracos, which were more familiar, and appeared to be much larger than thoſe of the foreſts of Auteniqua. I found here alſo a new ſpecies of calao; and, among other birds which I had never before ſeen, I diſtinguiſhed a blackbird with an orange-coloured belly; which, beſides the pleaſure occaſioned by this diſcovery, gave me alſo an opportunity of remarking the ſimplicity of the Hottentots.

Pit having brought me this bird, which was a female, I ordered him to return inſtantly to the ſpot where he had killed it, not doubting that he would find the male; but he begged me to diſpenſe with his ſervices upon this occaſion, as he durſt not venture to fire at it. I however continued

nued to inſiſt upon his obeying; but what was my aſtoniſhment when I ſaw him with an affected air, and in a tone almoſt lamentable, declare that ſome misfortune would undoubted enſue; that he had ſcarcely killed the female, when the male began to purſue him with great fury, continually repeating *Pit-me-wrou, Pit-me-wrou!* It muſt be obſerved that theſe two words exactly repreſent the animal's cry; and I was more convinced of this afterwards, by killing one of theſe blackbirds, than by the vain terrors of Pit. The ſyllables it ſeems to pronounce are three Dutch words, which ſignify *Pit* or *Peter my wife*; and Pit imagined that the bird, calling him by his name, requeſted him to return his mate. I found it almoſt impoſſible to calm the diſturbed imagination of this man, who perſiſted in refuſing to fire on theſe birds; and had any unlucky accident happened to him during our marches or hunting excurſions, whatever might have been the cauſe of it, his companions would not have failed to aſcribe it to his killing the firſt of theſe blackbirds. This belief, founded on a fact which I myſelf had an opportunity of being convinced of, might, in the deſarts of Africa, have eſtabliſhed the firſt miracle of a new religion.

In every part of this foreſt I found a ſpecies of apes with black viſages; but I could never catch any of them. Leaping from one tree to another, as if bidding me deſiance, they in turns appeared and diſappeared in an inſtant; whilſt I fatigued myſelf to no purpoſe in purſuing them. One morning, however, ranging for ſome time in the neighbourhood of my camp, I obſerved about thirty of them ſeated on the branches of a tree, and expoſing their white bellies to the firſt rays of the ſun. As the tree which they had

choſen

choſen was ſo much ſeparated from the reſt, that their ſhadow did not incommode them, I made a circuit though the buſhes, and having approached as near to them as I could without being diſcovered, I ran up to the tree before they had time to deſcend. I was certain that none of them had eſcaped; but, notwithſtanding this, I could not perceive one of them, though I caſt my eyes round on every ſide, and walked backwards and forwards, examining the tree with the utmoſt attention. I reſolved therefore to ſit down at ſome diſtance from the root of it, and to watch until I could obſerve ſome motion; and after a conſiderable ſpace of time I was amply repaid for my patience. I at length ſaw a head ſtretched out, apparently with a view of diſcovering what was become of me; upon which taking aim, I diſcharged my piece, and the animal inſtantly fell. I expected that the noiſe of the report would have frightened the reſt of the troop; but this was not the caſe; and though I kept my poſt for half an hour longer, not one of them ſtirred or appeared. Tired of this fatiguing employment, I fired ſeveral times into the tree at random, and had the pleaſure of ſeeing two more fall; while a third, which was only wounded, ſuſpended itſelf by its tail from a ſmall branch: another diſcharge brought this one down alſo; and, being ſatisfied with my ſpoil, I collected my four apes, and ſet out to return to my camp. When I had got to a certain diſtance from the tree, I ſaw the whole troop, which, imagining that I was now too far from them to do any execution, deſcended with precipitation, and haſtened towards the thickeſt part of the woods, ſending forth loud cries. By ſome ſtragglers, which with difficulty followed the reſt, halting

halting either on one of the hind or fore feet, I concluded that ſeveral of them had been wounded by my ſhot; but in this precipitate flight I did not obſerve, as ſome travellers have ſaid, that thoſe unhurt aſſiſted the lame ones, by taking them up to their ſhoulders, in order that their common retreat might not be retarded: and I am of opinion that, in this reſpect, when attacked, they are like the Hottentots, whoſe attention is too much engaged with their own ſafety to think of that of others.

When I returned to my tent, I began to examine my capture. This ſpecies of ape is of a middle ſize; its hair, which is pretty long, has generally a greeniſh tint; its belly, as I have already remarked, is white, and its face is altogether black. Its rump is callous; and this part, which is entirely deſtitute of hair, as well as the organs of generation in the male, is of a fine blue colour. At the time when I was examining theſe animals, Kees entered my tent, and I imagined that he was about to give vent to loud cries, when he perceived them, though they were of a different ſpecies from him; but it appeared that he was not ſo much afraid of them when dead as when alive: he conſidered them one after the other, and turned them over ſeveral times in all directions, to examine them in the ſame manner as he had ſeen me. He was not, I believe, the *firſt monkey* who wiſhed to ſet up for a naturaliſt; but he was ſtrongly impelled by a ſecret motive much leſs generous than that of acquiring knowledge. By feeling the cheeks of the deceaſed, he had diſcovered ſome treaſures; for I ſoon ſaw him venture to open their mouths, plunder their pouches

pouches * of the almonds they had plucked from the tree called *geel-hout*, and conſign them to his own.

My encampment in this place became highly intereſting, and afforded me much riches: beſides this, it was very agreeable to my people, and ſupplied plenty of proviſions for my cattle. I remained in it, therefore, till the 28th, and left it with much regret. It was one of thoſe which made me ſenſible how eaſy it would have been for me to forget that there are other climates, other manners, and other pleaſures.

In the morning of the day following we decamped, and, after travelling three hours, we met a few ſavage Hottentots, who were driving ſome ſheep before them, and going to join their reſpective hordes, from which they had ſeparated; but for what purpoſe I did not learn. As I wanted proviſions, I purchaſed a couple of theſe animals from them, for which I paid them liberally, and we continued our journey together for above an hour; after which, their deſtination being different from ours, they left us to reviſit their kraals that were a few leagues diſtant. Three hours after, we were ſtopped by the river Klein-Vis, which, from the time that we croſſed it, now appeared to us for the third time. The wheels of one of my carriages began here to give way; the ſpokes were ſo looſe in the naves, that the leaſt jolt made us tremble; a longer delay would only have increaſed the evil, and on this account I reſolved to remain encamped ſome days in this place to repair it. In this place two days

* Naturaliſts remark that apes have, between their cheeks and the inferior jaw-bones, a kind of bags or pounches, which ſerve them as magazines, in which they occaſionally preſerve ſuch fruits as they have not time, or are not diſpoſed to eat, till they are hungry.

days after, according to the new ſtile of my calendar, we ſpent the firſt day of the new year 1782.

The Hottentots, who have no comprehenſion of the ſolar, year, are entirely unacquainted with the etiquette of the firſt day that begins it; no compliments therefore were paid on our part, and conſequently there were no falſehoods told, and no hypocritical proteſtations made. I only gave myſelf, as a new-year's gift, a new hat, which had never been cocked, and I made my people ſhoot for my old one. Klaas having been ſo fortunate as to break the bottle to pieces, it would be impoſſible for me to deſcribe his joy when he found that he had won the prize, and added to his wardrobe an article of ſo much value, and a piece of dreſs ſtill more magnificent than the pair of old breeches which I gave him when I made my ſolemn entry among the Gonaquas.

Next morning, while we were buſily employed on our waggon and wheels, a general joy ſeemed to be diffuſed over every countenance: and when I aſked my people the cauſe of this ſudden emotion, they came up to me, and pointed to a diſtant cloud, which ſeemed to be advancing towards us. In this phenomenon I found nothing that could occaſion ſo much rejoicing; and I did not diſtinguiſh, till this pretended cloud had got nearer us, that it was compoſed of millions of locuſts. I had often heard mention made of theſe inſects, which every year collect themſelves into innumerable ſwarms, and quit the places that gave birth to them, in order to eſtabliſh themſelves ſomewhere elſe; but this was the firſt time I ever ſaw them. They were indeed ſo numerous, that they darkened the air; they did not, however,

however, riſe very high above our heads, and they formed a column which might be about three thouſand feet in length, and, reckoning by my watch, three hours elapſed before they had paſſed us. This ſwarm were ſo cloſe, that ſeveral of them, ſtifled or hurt by being daſhed againſt the reſt, fell down like hail, while Kees, who collected them, feaſted on them with much pleaſure.

They afforded an excellent treat alſo to my people, who extolled this manna ſo much that I yielded to the temptation, and wiſhed to partake with them; but if it is true, as we are aſſured, that in Greece, and particularly at Athens, the public markets were always ſupplied with this food, and that it was much ſought after by the epicures of the time, I freely confeſs, that I ſhould have cut a very poor figure among theſe Acridophagi, unleſs Heaven, together with the taſte of the Greeks, had beſtowed upon me a different conſtitution.

On the 3d of January we, at length, departed, and, leaving behind us that chain of mountains called Bruyntjes-Hoogte, we perceived to the north thoſe of Snew-berg, for which we had been ſo long wiſhing. Though the hotteſt ſeaſon was now arrived, we ſtill obſerved ſnow in the fiſſures and ravines neareſt the ſummits of theſe awful mountains. Whilſt I was amuſing myſelf in looking at them with my ſpy-glaſs, my Hottentots informed me that they ſaw a white man. This diſcovery affected me in a very ſenſible manner, for I had not ſeen any of that colour for ſeveral months. I found that this perſon had undertaken a very long journey, merely with a view to procure ſalt, at a lake ſituated near the river Swart-Kops; and having joined him, we converſed

converſed together for ſome time; but he could not refrain from ſhedding tears when he related to me that in the commencement of the war againſt Caffraria, in which he refuſed to aſſiſt the reſt of the planters, he had been attacked, with his wife, an only ſon, and his Hottentots, by the Caffres, with whom he had always before kept up a friendly intercourſe; that he and his family had quickly hid themſelves in the buſhes; but that, when day arrived, the whole troop united, and he found his ſon pierced through by a thouſand aſſagays. The melancholy tale of this unfortunate father filled me with great grief; and though I did not attempt to allay his, the moſt profound ſilence expreſſed, better than vain reaſoning, what conſolation he could expect from a feeling heart. He however confeſſed, that the hatred of the Caffres was inveterate, but that it was very unlucky for the innocent that the effects of their vengeance did not always fall upon thoſe alone who deſerved it.

To amuſe him a little, I begged him to paſs the night with me, and I treated him in the beſt manner I could. I regaled him with a diſh of my niceſt tea, and gave him ſome excellent tobacco. The thread of our converſation having conducted us, I know not how, to the ſubject of horſes, he told me that one of his friends, who lived near the Swart Kops, had ſhewn him one which he had found when out on a hunting excurſion, and that not being able to diſcover to whom he belonged, he had kept him. This circumſtance reminded me of the one I had left on the banks of the river Krom, at the end of the Ange-Kloof, ſeven or eight months before; and, after the account which I gave, he was ſo firmly perſuaded that this was my horſe, that he immediately offered

to

to let me pick out two of his beſt oxen, if I would conſign my right over to him, and give him a letter to his friend that he might ſend for him. My horſe undoubtedly was worth much more than he offered; but conſidering on the one hand the difficulties and the delay that would be occaſioned by undertaking ſo long a journey, and on the other the ſervice that I might immediately receive from thetwo oxen which he offered me, and being deſirous beſides to ſhew him ſome mark of my eſteem and friendſhip, I did not heſitate to accept his propoſal, and I gave him a note to receive my horſe.

I ſtill continued my journey towards the Snew-Berg, which we continually kept in view, and at the bottom of which I flattered myſelf I ſhould arrive the next day; but about eleven the exceſſive heat obliged us to halt on the banks of the Bly river, where we paſſed the night. This torrent was of little ſervice to us, as the drought had dried it almoſt entirely up, ſo that we had nothing elſe to quench the thirſt which tormented us but ſome bad-taſted ſtagnant water, that we found in ſome of the deepeſt parts of its bed. At the break of day we haſtened to quit this diſagreeable place, and, after a march of three hours and a half, we fell in with another river, named Birds river, where I remarked, among other ſingularities, that the more we approached the ſnow mountains the more intenſe the heat became. The piles of rocks which compoſed their lofty peaks, heated no doubt by the ſcorching ſun, reflected his rays and concentred them in the neighbouring valleys. As the whole caravan were much incommoded on this account, it was not poſſible for us to proceed any farther.

In the ſhort ſpace which we had traverſed between

tween the one river and the other, we met only one flock of ſpring-boc antelopes; but I may ſay that it filled the whole plain. It was an emigration of which we ſaw neither the beginning nor the end. This was preciſely the ſeaſon when theſe animals quit the dry rocky regions of the extremity of Africa to repair towards the north, either to Caffraria, or ſome other woody country abounding with water. To attempt to number them, or to ſay that they amounted to twenty, thirty, or even fifty thouſand, I ſhould be very far from the truth; to believe what I here aſſert one muſt have ſeen their paſſage. We marched in the midſt of them, yet they ſeemed not to be in the leaſt deranged; and they were ſo tame that I killed three of them without quitting my carriage: it would have been very eaſy for us, had there been occaſion for it, to procure as many as would have ſupplied proviſions for a long time to innumerable armies. In ſhort, the retreat of theſe antelopes foretold, with more certainty than the *Liege Almanack*, that approaching drought which we had every reaſon to expect.

Having reſumed our journey on the morning of the 6th, in going up the Birds river, which has its ſource in the ſnow mountains, an accident, that might have been attended with very ſerious conſequences, ſtopped us for ſome time. The clothes of the perſon who drove one of my carriages having caught hold of ſome prickles of the mimoſa, which he did not obſerve, while he was endeavouring to place himſelf in his ſeat he fell down, and as the waggon advanced the wheel went over his leg. I inſtantly ran up to him, and I was exceedingly happy to find, after a minute examination, that there was no fracture. I applied fomentations to the wound myſelf, afterwards

wards wrapped it up with ſeveral bandages ſoaked in brandy, and, leſt my patient ſhould regret the uſe to which I applied it, I made him ſwallow a large bumper of it. For ſeveral days he rode in one of my carriages; and this accident was attended with no other effects.

The ſnow mountains appeared to me like the land of promiſe, for I found it very difficult to reach them, as one obſtacle conſtantly ſucceeded another. On the 7th, when I was about to depart, perceiving, when I numbered my cattle, that three of them were miſſing, my people diſperſed themſelves on all ſides to ſearch for them, and were fortunate enough to ſucceed; but this operation required ſo much time, that we could not yoke them till ſeven in the evening. The days had now attained to their greateſt length, but the coolneſs of the night was extremely agreeable; and, as I conjectured that we were no more than four or five leagues from Platte river, I intended, when we arrived there, not to advance any farther.

Scarcely had we travelled two or three leagues, when one of my Hottentots in the rear-guard came galloping towards me full ſpeed, followed by all the relays, which arrived in the greateſt diſorder. The terror being communicated to the twelve oxen of my Pampoen-kraal waggon, which at that time having no Hottentots to keep them back and manage the two firſt, as is generally the caſe, took fright and ſtarted on one ſide, by which accident the pole was broken, and dragging the carriage after them, they ruſhed into the thickeſt part of the buſhes. Our confuſion now became every moment more general, and by the bellowing of the oxen there ſeemed to be no doubt that we were purſued by lions. We therefore ran to

our

our arms; and whilſt ſome attempted to ſtop the oxen of the other two carriages, which had ſuffered themſelves to be hurried away like thoſe of the third, and while others were employed in gathering and collecting every thing they could lay their hands on in order to kindle fires, I ſet out, accompanied by my moſt expert huntſmen, and went back the ſame way we had come, to oppoſe theſe cruel animals, and give the reſt time to make every neceſſary preparation. The night was not very dark; we were upon a ſandy plain, which enabled us to perceive objects at a certain diſtance; and when I ſaw my dogs approach us, and keep cloſe to us in a body, I was fully convinced that there were lions near us. Having ſuddenly obſerved two of theſe animals, which ſeemed to be waiting for us on a ſmall eminence, we diſcharged all our pieces together; but this produced no other effect than to make them diſappear. We however ſtill advanced in the hopes of killing at leaſt one of them, and, by way of precaution, we continued to diſcharge our fuſees, but we ſaw nothing more of them. As it was of no avail to perſiſt in purſuing them farther, for they had by this time got to a conſiderable diſtance, and as our fires were well kindled, we approached them, while our ſcattered oxen did the ſame. They arrived at the ſpot one after the other, and in a little time we had recovered them all, except thoſe belonging to the Pampoen-kraal waggon, which we heard bellowing at a certain diſtance. Though they were not far from us, none of my people ſhewed any inclination to go to their relief; but having at length prevailed upon a few of them to follow me, each of us took a flaming torch in the one hand, and a fuſee in the other, and protected by my dogs which preceded us, we went in

queſt of them, and ſoon reached the place where they were. When we arrived, I found that the piece of the pole which the oxen had carried with them being caught between two trees had ſtopped them: they were all in a cluſter, and ſo embarraſſed in the traces, that there were no other means of extricating them but by cutting them to pieces. Three of the oxen were miſſing; they had broken their yokes, and we imagined that they were devoured; but when we returned to our fires, I learned that they had juſt made their appearance.

Were theſe animals taught by an inſtinct merely mechanical that near fires they had nothing to dread from their enemies? Had cuſtom inſpired them with this reflection, that for more than the ſpace of a year, ſpent in travelling along with me, voracious animals which had at firſt cauſed ſo much uneaſineſs to them, dared neither to attack them nor come near them? Or did they conceive ſo high an idea of man, as to ſee in him a powerful protector, and an irreſiſtible defender? This ſubject I ſhall not attempt to explain; but I know that Nature, which beſtows on all animals whatever a ſufficient ſhare of intelligence to provide for their own ſafety, ſeemed here to have doubled it; and upon this point I have on more than one occaſion made remarks, which have always filled me with aſtoniſhment and admiration. The morals to be drawn from natural hiſtory extend farther than may be imagined. The eye of metaphyſics penetrates every day farther and farther; and blind curioſity, which alone formed collections formerly, gives place at preſent to nobler and more valuable motives. No objects now are too ſmall for the attention of the philoſopher; the genius of diſcovery knows to give importance to every

every thing; and even inſects, conſidered twenty years ago as minute and mean objects, occupy a conſpicuous place in the ſcale of beings *.

At break of day I returned to the place where I had fired the preceding evening, and I obſerved the traces of a lion and thoſe of a lioneſs, which though equally ſtrong, are always leſs. Having followed theſe traces for ſome time, they conducted me, by a ſmall winding, near to my people, which proved to me that theſe animals had advanced cloſe to us. We thought it very fortunate that we had kept watch till the appearance of day; and this circumſtance was an uſeful hint to me never to travel during the night in countries with which I was ſo little acquainted, and which, as I afterwards learned, are the moſt dangerous to be paſſed of all Africa.

I had under my carriages ſome ſpare poles cut down in the foreſts of Auteniqua; but as there was no water in the place where we had ſtopped, and as we had no time to loſe in procuring any, I ordered the traces to receive a temporary repair: we ſpliced therefore the broken pole, in the beſt manner we could, with two pieces of wood, and purſued our journey; but what was our diſappointment when we arrived at the Platte river to find it dry! We went up its banks for three quarters of an hour, always tormented with thirſt, which ſtill increaſed, and out of breath; but we at length had the good fortune to arrive at ſome bogs, containing a little muddy water which the ſun had not yet exhaled.

Here we no longer beheld the magnificent

* A complete treatiſe of Ontology will ſoon appear, worthy of the learned man who firſt laid the foundation of that grand work, and of the reſpectable connoiſſeur who protects and ſupports by his fortune ſo noble an undertaking.

country of Caffraria ; and we had entirely loſt ſight of thoſe rich paſtures, and thoſe majeſtic foreſts, over which our eyes had wandered with ſo much delight. Rocks piled on each other and parched ſands every day ſucceeded thoſe beautiful views, under forms always more hideous. We found ourſelves every where hemmed in by mountains, the ſides of which were inclined in a moſt fantaſtical manner, while their peaked ſummits, ſuſpended over our heads, filled the mind with that profound terror, which is the conſequence of diſcouragement, and which awakens the moſt diſmal remembrance. Thoſe of Snew-Berg, at the bottom of which we now were, roſe very far above the reſt ; and winter, ſeated on their ſummits, ſeemed to diſpute with the ſun the ſovereignty of theſe diſmal regions.

At it was my intention to climb and traverſe a part of this famous cordillera, though I knew that the Boſhmen had, like the lions, eſtabliſhed their haunts in it, and as I was deſirous of ſecuring myſelf from any ſurpriſe by either, I fixed my camp in an open ſpot, and fortified it in the beſt manner I could.

Having ſeen the traces of a rhinoceros, my ancient ardour for hunting was again revived, and I promiſed a handſome reward to the firſt of my people who ſhould procure me one of theſe monſtrous animals ; but neither of us were ſo fortunate,, for we ſaw no farther appearance of them. I however unexpectedly fell in with a ſmall flock of eight elks, none of which ſpecies I had ever killed, and purſuing them briſkly, I ſhot one dead on the ſpot. Dr. Sparmann has given a very accurate deſcription of this animal, which the ſavages name kana. It is entirely different from the

elk

elk deſcribed by Buffon, and is only the largeſt ſpecies of the antelopes of the Cape.

When I returned to my camp, I found that all my hunters, who had diſperſed themſelves every where throughout the neighbourhood with a view of gaining the prize, were arrived very much diſcontented and fatigued. One of them having informed me that he had met with a horde of ſavage Hottentots, whoſe kraal was ſituated juſt at the foot of the mountains, I reſolved to pay them a viſit; but I carried with me only three of my beſt markſmen and the perſon who had given me this intelligence. Next morning, at the break of day, we had ſcarcely advanced half way when we met five of theſe people, who of their own accord were coming towards my camp to ſee me. They however turned back, and conducted me to their habitation, where their children, as ſoon as they eſpied me, ran different ways to conceal themſelves, ſending forth horrible cries. This general conſternation appeared to me very unnatural, and diſconcerted all my ideas; for, when I firſt entered the horde of Haabas and that of ſeveral others, the women and the children had indeed retired, but by their behaviour they ſhewed neither fear nor apprehenſion. Being very deſirous to diſcover the cauſe of this terror, I was informed that theſe people had been eſtabliſhed only a ſhort while in the place where I ſaw them; that in Camdebo, their own country, they had experienced a thouſand perſecutions from the planters; that, animated with the moſt inveterate and ſanguinary hatred againſt the whites, they endeavoured to inſpire their children with the ſame deteſtation of them, in order that it might increaſe with their years; and that they were not ſorry to have heard

heard them repeat, in this rencontre, the catechiſm of vengeance.

With regard to the men, they ſmiled on my approach, and ſeemed not at all aſtoniſhed to ſee me; for they had been informed the preceding evening that I intended to pay them a viſit. Their horde amounted only to about an hundred, or an hundred and twenty people; and their flocks, which I met in going towards them, and which conſiſted of an hundred horned cattle, and perhaps twice that number of ſheep, plainly ſhewed that they were far from being wealthy: but I was more fully convinced that this was the caſe when I ſaw theſe poor wretches employed in drying locuſts upon hard mats, and cutting off their legs and their wings. As their collection of this proviſion was in the higheſt ſtate of fermentation, I was obliged to take the windward ſide of them, in order to avoid the infectious exhalations which every now and then proceeded from it.

Not quite ſix months before theſe poor Hottentots had taken ſhelter in this place, to avoid the cruelties committed by the planters; but, without knowing it, they had expoſed themſelves to atrocities of another kind. Beſides the dangerous Boſhmen, who might every moment diſcover them, they had to defend themſelves alſo againſt ferocious animals, and particularly wild dogs, which occaſioned great ravage among their flocks. Having given them ſome advice reſpecting their ſafety, and made them a few preſents, I offered to purchaſe ſome ſheep from them, which they promiſed to bring next morning. As I was preparing to take leave of them, I was obliged to enter one of their huts, to ſhelter myſelf from a dreadful ſtorm which ſuddenly came upon us, and which continued full three hours, during which

I was

I was almoſt inundated. The whole kraal was in danger of being ſwept entirely away; many of the huts were violently ſhaken; the torrents hurried before them ſand and earth, which they waſhed down in their courſe, and trees torn up by the roots; but as the place where I occupied was better ſecured, I beheld with pleaſure, though up to the knees in water, the caſcades and cataracts that fell with a horrid noiſe from the ſummits of the mountains, and which, daſhing againſt each other in their fall, reached the plains in a thouſand ſtreams, and covered them with vapour and foam. The banks of the Platte river, which was only a few paces from me, having in a moment diſappeared, I gave the firſt body of water time to ſubſide; but being under great uneaſineſs concerning my camp, I took advantage of the earlieſt interval which the rain gave us, and ſet out to return. Whilſt I was confined in this hut, I ſuffered much from a bag of locuſts, which, though already dry, emitted a moſt fœtid and diſguſting ſmell. The rain continued with great fury during the whole night, and the day following the inundation increaſed ſo much that theſe Hottentots were not able to viſit my camp as they had promiſed.

We now entertained little dread of being in want of water; but we made no uſe of that of the river, becauſe it was both brackiſh and muddy: we preferred having recourſe to the ponds, which being undiſturbed, the ſand and the mud had ſubſided at leiſure.

The next day, as the weather was much calmer, about twenty men and a few women brought me four ſheep, and an old cow which was only fit for the knife. Theſe people did not ſeem to be remarkably fond of my glaſs beads: their

their women, indeed, were loaded with them. They ſhewed much more avidity for tobacco; and as I could procure a ſupply of this part of my proviſion with the greateſt eaſe when I entered the colonies, I was not ſparing of it. My liberality on this occaſion won their hearts, and they brought me eleven ſheep more, for which I paid them very generouſly.

Knowing that I was about to traverſe a very dry and barren country, I preſerved theſe different acquiſitions as a valuable reſource in caſe of neceſſity.

One day, while I had a great many of theſe ſtrangers with me, one of the keepers of my flocks came to inform me, that ſeveral of the Boſhmen, coming down from the mountains, had approached him and his companions, but that they had kept them in awe by a few diſcharges of their fuſees. Upon this intelligence, Klaas and I got on horſeback, and, followed by four other chaſſeurs, ſet out to purſue them. We indeed ſoon diſcovered thirteen of theſe plunderers; but the rapidity of our courſe, and our determined and reſolute appearance, ſoon put them to flight. We however galloped towards them full ſpeed, and made ſome of our balls whiz around their ears; but we could not get near enough to take proper aim at them. I conſidered it as ſufficient for me, and it tended not a little to my ſafety, that we had ſtruck them with ſome terror. We ſaw them all enter the mountains by different paths, and they diſappeared entirely. I greatly admired the agility with which they climbed the ſteepeſt rocks with the nimbleneſs of monkeys; but I did not chooſe to follow them farther; for it would have been highly imprudent to attempt to attack them

in

in their ſtrong holds, and their impenetrable receſſes.

Theſe people would not aſſuredly have miſſed us. They were all perfectly naked; and I judged, by the traces of their feet, that they wore ſandals. This ſlight alarm was of the greateſt utility: it ſerved to render us more ſuſpicious; and on this account I doubled our guards, and Swanepoel and I went the rounds alternately; while my faithful Klaas, at the head of a ſmall detachment, viſited the valley and its environs. From time to time they fired their fuſees, which ſignals my herdſmen were obliged to anſwer; and by theſe means I was aſſured that they had not fallen aſleep, and that they diſcharged their duty with fidelity

This precaution, which I obſerved for the ſake of good order, and that I might have nothing to reproach myſelf with in our preſent circumſtances, was of very little utility in other reſpects. A Hottentot dreads a Boſhman much more than a lion: this ſalutary fear kept all mine on the watch, and even in the moſt open places, which expoſed them to excruciating torment from thirſt; for the heat had now become almoſt inſupportable. I myſelf was expoſed to the ſame inconvenience as much as they, but this did not make me abandon my hunting excurſions. It was a matter of indifference to me whether I walked or ſtood ſtill: my tent was ſo intolerably hot that I could not remain in it; but, upon ſuch occaſions, my beard well ſoaked afforded me conſiderable relief: I derived ſome advantage alſo from the form of my hat, which I moiſtened in the like manner. In theſe critical moments, when oppreſſed by an unquenchable thirſt, having remarked that the quantity of water I drank ſerved

ved only to inflame me the more, I reſolved to drink in future like the dogs, that is to ſay, to lap. This ſtrange method gave me wonderful eaſe, for a very little water was then ſufficient to allay my thirſt, and I no longer feared to be incommoded by it.

As long as we remained on the banks of the Platte river we were not much diſturbed by lions. Our artillery, which thundered on every ſide during the day, kept them at a diſtance, though we heard them roaring every night; but, except once, they never ventured ſo near us as to occaſion any alarm. The panthers alſo at the riſing and ſetting of the ſun, gave us ſigns of their being on the banks of the river; but they kept at a reſpectable diſtance. In the middle of the night they advanced much nearer to us, but we were conſtantly warned of their approach by our dogs, and the next morning we could judge by their traces how far they had expoſed themſelves. Neceſſity alone renders all theſe ſpecies of carnivorous animals bold, for they naturally dread the ſight of man; and I am of opinion, that the dangers to be apprehended from their being in the neighbourhood have been too much exaggerated. The only two kinds of antelopes found here are not ſufficient to ſatisfy their voracity; they chooſe rather to follow thoſe numerous hordes who travel from one canton to another; and they have then an opportunity of ſelecting ſuch food as may be moſt agreeable to them, and of making a dreadful ſlaughter among their flocks.

My neighbours ſeeing me determined to aſcend the ſnow mountains, adviſed me to be upon my guard, and not to remain long in them, as the Boſhmen were at this time in great force. I had no intention of carrying my whole caravan thither,

ther, for this fooliſh project would not have been practicable; but as I was deſirous of examining a few of their ſummits, and of traverſing them only in the day-time with my chaſſeurs, I advanced as near to the bottom of them as I poſſibly could, and eſtabliſhed my camp at the diſtance of three hundred paces from the ſavage horde. I expected to find on the ſummit, as I had been told, a conſiderable volcano, that emitted ſmoke and flames; but I ſaw nothing that had any reſemblance to ſuch a phenomenon. By the aſſiſtance of my ſpy-glaſs, I diſcovered an immenſe extent of country ſtretched out towards the north, and bounded only by the horizon; and on the moſt elevated peaks and the plain ſpaces pyramids of flints and ſand, exactly like thoſe found upon downs. I endeavoured, but in vain, to diſcover ſome ſhells; I obſerved no fragments or remains that had the leaſt affinity to any marine production. My principal attention was directed to birds; and I had the good fortune to diſcover and kill ſome very uncommon, particularly a very beautiful ſpecies of widow bird *, that concealed itſelf in the long graſs with which theſe high mountains were almoſt every where covered.

In all my excurſions, which always ended at ſun-ſet, I never ſaw any of the Boſhmen but once. They were only three in number, and were traverſing the back part of a mountain oppoſite to that on which I was; but they did not think proper to attack us. We indeed carried nothing with us that could tempt them; and theſe three vagabonds had perhaps been among thoſe to whom I had ſo recently given chace, and in all

*The *Embriza Paradiſea* of Linnæus; the *Paſſer Indicus* of Ray, Willoughby, and Johnſton; and the *long-tailed red throat* of Edwards. T.

probability

probability remembered the terror into which I had thrown them. Theſe infamous wretches do not form, as has been falſely ſuppoſed, a particular nation; nor are they a people who have had their origin in thoſe places where they are now found. Boſhmen is a name compoſed of two Dutch words, which ſignify *buſh-men*, or *men of the woods*: and it is under this appellation that the inhabitants of the Cape, and all the Dutch in general, whether in Africa or America, diſtinguiſh thoſe malefactors or aſſaſſins who deſert from the colonies in order to eſcape puniſhment. In a word, they are what in the French Weſt-india iſlands are called *Marroon Negroes*. Theſe Boſhmen, therefore, far from being a diſtinct ſpecies, as has been even lately aſſerted, are only a promiſcuous aſſemblage of mulattoes, negroes, and meſtizos, of every ſpecies, and ſometimes of Hottentots and Baſters; who all differing in colour, reſemble each other in nothing but in villany. They are real land pirates, who live under a chief, without laws and without diſcipline; abandoned to the utmoſt miſery and deſpair; baſe deſerters who have no other reſources to procure them a ſubſiſtence but plundering and crimes. They retire to the ſteepeſt rocks, and the moſt inacceſſible caverns, and there they paſs their lives. From theſe elevated places they command an extenſive proſpect over the ſurrounding plains, lie in wait for the unwary traveller and the ſcattered flocks, pour down upon them with the velocity of an arrow, and ſuddenly falling upon the inhabitants and their cattle, ſlaughter them without diſtinction. Loaded with booty, and whatever they can carry with them, they then repair to their gloomy caves, which they never quit, till, like the lions, hunger again impels them to freſh maſſacres

cres. But as treachery always marches with a trembling ſtep, and as the preſence of one reſolute perſon is ſufficient to overawe whole troops of theſe banditti, they carefully ſhun thoſe plantations where they are certain that the owners themſelves reſide. Artifice and cunning, the uſual reſources of timid ſouls, are the only means which they employ, and the only guides that accompany them in their expeditions. In places where the prints of their feet, too ſtrongly impreſſed, might alarm the inhabitants, and rouſe them to purſue, they diſguiſe them by a wonderful addreſs, to which our plunderers in Europe, more impetuous or leſs patient, never think of having recourſe: they always march backwards if they are not ſhod; but if they wear ſandals, they tie them to the foot in ſuch a manner that the heel correſponds with the toes. When they carry off a conſiderable flock of living animals, they diſtribute them, under the care of ſeveral of their gang, into ſmall bodies, making them purſue different routes; and by theſe means, if they are chaſed they always ſecure the greater part of their plunder.

Another nation, entirely different from that of the Hottentots, is confounded alſo under the name of Boſhmen. Though theſe people in their language uſe the ſame clappings as the Hottentots, they have however a particular pronunciation and expreſſions peculiar to themſelves. In ſome cantons they are called *Chineeſe Hottentot*, Chineſe Hottentots, becauſe their colour approaches near to that of the Chineſe found at the Cape; and, like them, they are of a ſmall ſtature. On account of the affinity of their language, I conſider theſe people, as well as the great and leſſer Nimiquas, of whom I ſhall have occaſion ſoon to ſpeak,

ſpeak, as a particular race of Hottentots; and though the planters confound the former under the general denomination of Boſhmen, it is nevertheleſs true that the ſavages of the deſart, who have no communication with the Dutch ſettlements, know them only under the name of *Houſwaana*.

This nation, whatever name may be given it, inhabited formerly the Camdebo, the Bocke-Veld, and the Ruge-veld; but the uſurpations of the whites, whoſe victims they have been like the other ſavages, compelled them to take flight, and to ſeek ſhelter in very remote places. At preſent they inhabit that vaſt country comprehended between Caffraria and the great Nimiqua land; and of all thoſe people, whom the avarice of the Europeans has treated with cruelty, there are none who preſerve a ſtronger remembrance of the injuries they here ſuſtained, or who hold the name of the whites in greater deteſtation. They will never forget the perfidies of the planters, and the infamous return made to them for the ſignal ſervices which they have rendered upon more than a hundred occaſions Their reſentment is ſo violent, that they have always the dreadful word *vengeance* in their mouths, and an opportunity of giving vent to it happens always too late, though they are continually watching for it. I propoſe to give ſome farther account of theſe Houſwaana when, paſſing under the tropic, I come to viſit their hordes.

One evening, after retiring to my tent, having begun to conſign to my journal the events of the day, while all my people ſeated around a fire were ſmoaking their pipes, my curioſity was greatly rouſed by loud peals of laughter, which ſtruck my ears; and I overheard one of my huntſmen relating

relating to the reſt a diſcovery, which ſo much the more excited their mirth, as it afforded them great matter of ſurpriſe, and as they took it for a tale merely invented on purpoſe by my Hottentot humoriſt. The latter, however, who endeavoured to perſuade them of the truth of it, told them, that as ſoon as I knew it I would not reſt ſatisfied until I ſhould be convinced by my own eyes. Their immoderate laughter was then renewed with louder burſts than ever: they all ſpoke at the ſame time, and ſeemed very impatient that the uſual hour of my drinking tea was not yet arrived. Having called Klaas, I learned from him that Jan, one of my chaſſeurs, aſſured him, that he had diſcovered, after dinner, in the horde, a Hottentot woman, who had that peculiar conformation which I always conſidered as a fable, becauſe I had never ſeen it in any of the countries through which I paſſed, notwithſtanding all my enquiry and reſearches, though one of my people had before aſſerted the ſame fact, and though my whole troop had ſome knowledge of it by hearſay, and by a tradition pretty generally diffuſed. He indeed related to me, in the minuteſt manner, and with all the energy, or rather ingenuity, of his language, what the moſt unexpected accident had permitted him to examine at his leiſure, and in the completeſt manner.

Being very deſirous of clearing up as ſoon as poſſible this very intereſting point of civil as well as of natural hiſtory, which I had more than once found in different books of travels and in romances, ſuch as thoſe of John Struys, I repaired next morning to the neighbouring horde, together with my Hottentot, who immediately diſtinguiſhed the woman whoſe conformation had ſo much aſtoniſhed him. When ſhe was pointed out to me,

I found

I found her to be a married woman, who had ſeveral children, and who was already pretty far advanced in years. I made her ſeveral preſents, under various pretences, in order to prepoſſeſs her in my favour, and to gain her eſteem; and, in a word, to prevail upon her to permit me to ſatisfy my curioſity. I had not to deal here with thoſe impudent and diſſolute Hottentot women of the colonies, always too much diſpoſed to gratify, and even to anticipate, the deſires of the white men and their ſcandalous fantaſies. Here I had reaſon to expect great difficulties, for I knew that ſavage women almoſt always refuſe that to curioſity which they grant to love—a delicate diſtinction, which people would not expect to find in a deſart, when they carry thither with them their prejudices, and all the bias of pride.

Ye worthy and provident mothers, who may chance to read this work, you will never be induced to believe that the chaſte children, whom you educate with the hopes of ſeeing them attain to your virtues, would be as ſafe from corruption and the pernicious effects of bad example amidſt the ſavages of Africa, as in the boſom of thoſe profound and ſilent retreats where wiſdom, as we are told, watches over innocence, and removes from it whatever might tend to corrupt it, or give offence to its ſight: accuſe not Nature, and do not boaſt too much of your precepts and grand inſtitutions; you owe them entirely to a contempt of her laws.

To the honour of theſe people I muſt here aſſert, and I ought to take every opportunity of doing ſo, that all my ſtratagems, and all my entreaties to obtain what I deſired would have proved fruitleſs, had it not been for the aſſiſtance of one of my people, and aſſurances, twenty times repeated,

ed, to perſuade this woman that I was a curious ſtranger, of a race very diſtinct, and who lived very remote from hers; that Gonaqua, Caffre, and other Hottentot women, had readily conſented to grant me the ſame indulgence; and, in ſhort, that I would detain her no longer than a moment in that humiliating poſture: ſome of the men alſo of the horde ſupported my arguments, and pleaded in my favour. Confuſed, abaſhed, and trembling, ſhe covered her face with both her hands, ſuffered her apron to be untied, and permitted me to contemplate at leiſure what I had been ſo deſirous of ſeeing, from the many accounts I had heard of this extraordinary conformation, and of which I made one exact drawing.

To deſtroy an opinion, generally received, that nature has excluſively beſtowed on the Hottentot women a natural apron, which ſerves to conceal the marks of their ſex, a modern author aſſerts, that this ſingularity is nothing elſe but a prolongation of the nymphæ; and this idea has, very improperly, been adopted by many. He repreſents this apron almoſt as an infirmity, occaſioned either by old age, the heat of the climate, an inactive life, or the uſe of greaſy unctions, &c. I ſhould never have done, were I to mention all the objections that naturally ariſe to deſtroy this opinion; but I cannot omit one which muſt inſtantly occur to the mind, and which the reader no doubt has made as well as I. Since the heat of the climate, an inactive life, and the uſe of greaſe, influence almoſt in the ſame degree all thoſe people who inhabit the ſouthern extremity of Africa, why ſhould a few particular hordes only be ſubject to this infirmity? It is well known at the Cape, and in the colonies, that nothing of the kind happens among the Hottentot women, whatever may

be their conduct, however they may live, and to whatever dangers they may be expoſed. But let us not rack our imaginations with this ſingularity, which, as it is uncommon, has nothing extraordinary in it; and let us not ſeek to explain, as a phenomenon, what is only the effect of faſhion and caprice. Yes, reader, this celebrated apron is only a faſhion, an affair of taſte, I will not ſay depraved, for ſigns of modeſty can never conſtitute the eſſence of it; but original, extravagant, perhaps abſurd, and ſuch, that the ſight of it only is ſufficient to baniſh from the mind of the moſt diſſipated libertine every idea of amorous enjoyment, and deceiving, in a new and too plain manner, the refinement of his wants, to make the moſt unbridled paſſion give place to laughter that could ſcarcely be ſuppreſſed. I wiſh to be decent, but I muſt at the ſame time pay proper regard to truth. I cannot think of omitting in my work theſe circumſtances of my travels; and ſince my female Hottentot conſented to improve my knowledge at the expence of her modeſty, too much reſerve on my part might be accounted childiſh baſhfulneſs: ſcrupulous nicety is improper on a ſubject to which nature has attached no ſhame.

This natural apron is indeed nothing elſe, as the above author has ſaid, than a prolongation of the nymphæ, or the large lips of the private parts of a woman. They may hang down about nine inches, more or leſs, according to the age of the perſon, or the aſſiduous care which is beſtowed on this ſingular decoration. I ſaw a young girl of fifteen, in whom theſe parts were already four inches in length. Until they attain to that ſize, they are made to diſtend by friction, and by ſtretching them; but the remaining

remaining part of the proceſs is performed by weights ſuſpended from them. I have already ſaid that this cuſtom proceeds from a peculiar taſte, a very uncommon caprice of faſhion, and a refinement of coquetry. In the horde, in which I then was, only four women, and the young girl already mentioned, were in this ridiculous ſituation. Whoever has read *Dionis*, will readily comprehend how eaſily this operation may be performed; as for my part, I ſee nothing wonderful in it but the whimſicalneſs of the invention. Formerly, perhaps, whole hordes of ſavages, diſtinguiſhed by this particularity, were to be met with even in thoſe parts which at preſent belong to the colonies, and this in all probability has given birth to thoſe errors which have been propagated on this ſubject; but the diſperſion of a people ſoon deſtroys their ancient uſages. This one is practiſed only in certain parts remote from one another, and by a few individuals attached by tradition to ancient manners, and who conſider it as a merit ſtill to obſerve them with the moſt ſcrupulous minuteneſs.

When I had finiſhed my obſervations, and traverſed, as far as the precautions neceſſary to be taken would permit, different chains and the moſt beautiful ſpots of the ſnow mountains, I began to think of quitting this diſmal country altogether. My people ſtrongly ſolicited me to conduct them to Carouw, and to make haſte to croſs it before the exceſſive heat had entirely dried up the ſmall quantity of ſtagnant water that we might poſſibly find in it, and leſt we ſhould not meet with paſtures ſufficient for our oxen, which for a long time had ſuffered greatly from the intenſeneſs of the ſeaſon. Being therefore as much preſſed by the circumſtances of the moment as deſirous of

returning to the Cape, and no longer finding in my excurſions the ſame charms and the ſame amuſements as before, either that fatigue had cooled my ardour, or that other projects, and powerful remembrance, had reſumed over my imagination that empire which a view of the greateſt novelties had deſtroyed, I ſet out on the 2d of February, and directed my courſe towards the ſouth-weſt. A part of the horde accompanied us three leagues, to aſſiſt us in croſſing the river *Jubers*, which they concluded to be greatly ſwelled by the exceſſive rains. When we reached it we began to think of conſtructing rafts; but our conductors, who knew of a commodious ford a quarter of a league lower, ſaved us this uſeleſs labour, which would have conſumed much time. Having accompanied them to reconnoitre the ford which they mentioned, I judged, after trying the depth of it with my horſe, that, by only elevating eight or ten inches, but with precaution, the boxes and lading of my three carriages by means of branches and bruſh-wood, we might be able to paſs without ſuſtaining any damage; we accordingly accompliſhed this buſineſs with equal dexterity and ſucceſs. Our companions, indeed, were of great ſervice to us upon this occaſion; they croſſed the river, and ſpent the night with us, in order to aſſiſt us next morning to load our carriages again, and to arrange our effects. I rewarded them generouſly for what they had done, and we then took leave of each other.

In the canton into which I was now entering, I found a prodigious number of thoſe green and golden cuckoos, of which I have already ſpoken, and ſeveral new ſpecies that I added to my collection. The ſame day I fell in with another river,

the

the name of which I did not know; but I gave it that of my reſpectable friend Mr. Boers. The dry plains of Carouw begin in this place; and I obſerved that this ungrateful ſoil, or rather theſe ſands, as far as the eye could reach, were covered with coarſe plants and weeds: on another ſide rocks no leſs barren exhibited every where to the ſaddened eye the picture of deſolation and death. We ſaw only ſmall tufts of graſs, which ſeemed to ſpring up with reluctance, for the preſervation of our flocks.

On the 4th a march of five hours conducted us to the river Voogel, which diſcharges itſelf into that of Sondag, which we had croſſed not long before near its mouth, and which we were ſoon to have a view of again not far from its ſource. Our ſufferings increaſed every day with the heat, and travelling became very laborious to us. I however ſtill amuſed myſelf in my leiſure hours with hunting; and I killed, in the courſe of my journey, another French field-duck of a new ſpecies. The following day we reached the river Sondag at a very early hour. The aſpect of this ſpot, much leſs diſmal, ſerved at leaſt to revive my hopes: ſuperb avenues of mimoſas, watered by the river, preſented every where around us magnificent views; and as they were in full bloſſom, they perfumed the ſurrounding air with their ſweet and delicious odour. Birds of a thouſand ſpecies, and moſt beautiful inſects, detained me here till the 8th; when having obſerved that, notwithſtanding the large ſupply of pins which I had carried with me from the Cape, they began to run ſhort, it came into my head to replace them by the ſmall prickles of the mimoſa, which anſwered the ſame purpoſe.

Leaving the Sondag behind me, I met ſixteen Hottentots

Hottentots with their arms and baggage on the banks of the *Swart-Rivier*, or Black River. They had left Camdebo, to join, at the bottom of the ſnow mountains, the horde which we had left there; and I learned from them that they had been compelled to this emigration by formidable troops of Boſhmen, who were carrying fire and ſword through Camdebo, and burning the plantations, in order to carry away the ammunition, arms, and whole riches of the inhabitants. Nothing could diſconcert me more than this intelligence, equally ungracious and unexpected; for it raiſed the alarm in every breaſt, and revived our former terrors. Perſuaded that any farther explanation would only diſturb the imaginations of my timid Hottentots ſtill more, I immediately ordered them all to follow me. They had already begun to ſpeak of returning the ſame way we had come, and I looked forward to the moment when my authority was about to be at an end; but the braveſt of my people, who did not heſitate to accompany me, induced all the reſt to imitate their example. Having obſerved that Slinger, who gave me ſo much cauſe to complain of his conduct at Koks-Kraal, ſhewed here the greateſt reſiſtance, and that even this day he performed his ſervice in a very ſuſpicious manner, I determined, for the firſt time, to make an example of him, to intimidate thoſe daſtardly companions whom he had ſeduced. In the evening, when I arrived at the river Camdebo, which takes its name from the country it traverſes, I ſignified to him that he ſhould inſtantly quit my caravan; reproaching him at the ſame time with having been the firſt promoter of that fear and conſternation, which had prevented all my people from following me into Caffraria, and with having obliged me by his

his culpable reſiſtance to abandon the nobleſt part of my projects, for want of ſtrength, courage, and aſſiſtance, to enable me to proſecute it, and bring it to a concluſion. I then paid him what wages were due; made him deliver up his effects and ſome proviſions, and threatened to purſue him as I would do a wild beaſt, ſhould he ever again appear in my preſence. He was ſo much ſtruck and abaſhed by this apoſtrophe, and the vehemence with which I pronounced theſe laſt words, that he ſnatched up his wallet and retired with precipitation. My people conjectured that he would make for the neareſt plantation, or join the Hottentots whom we had met in the morning; and I entertained a notion that he would have offered ſome excuſe for his conduct, or that ſome of his companions would have interceded for him; but I was extremely glad that he purſued another courſe. This ſeverity proved of the greateſt ſervice to me, and, during the reſt of my journey, was attended with all that effect which I expected.

I quitted the river Camdebo on the 9th of February, at which time ſeveral of my oxen being attacked by the *klauw-ſikte*, they found the journey very laborious. As eaſe and refreſhments were the only remedies that could ſpeedily reſtore them to their former ſtate, I choſe out, upon one of the windings made by the river, among the mimoſas, a commodious lawn, where I eſtabliſhed my camp, with an intention of remaining there ſome days. I had however no need to bid my people be upon their guard, for they were too much afraid of the Boſhmen to fail in their duty, or to relax in their precaution. We were now preciſely in that canton, in which theſe plunderers, as we had been told, were ſpreading terror

and

and conſternation. Our proviſions beginning to grow ſhort, and as we no longer found large game, I reſolved to procure ſome, if poſſible, in order that I might ſalt it; and on this account I undertook a few hunting excurſions, which carried me to a greater or leſs diſtance from my camp. One day, having purſued very cloſely an antelope-elk, I wandered to a conſiderable diſtance with one of my beſt ſhooters, who followed me; and at the corner of a thick grove of mimoſas we ſuddenly eſpied a Hottentot, who was ſearching for the nymphæ of ants, which is a favourite food among theſe ſavages. No ſooner had he ſeen us, than, ſnatching up his bow and quiver with great precipitation, he betook himſelf to flight; but giving full ſcope to my horſe, I ſoon overtook him. By the evident ſigns which he exhibited of terror and embarraſſment, I concluded that he was a Boſhman. His life was in my hands: in theſe deſarts I could have exerciſed my right of ſovereignty, and might have puniſhed him, had I been cruel, for all the crimes of his countrymen, and for the inexcuſable fault of belonging to theſe plunderers; but hitherto I had no cauſe to complain of theſe people, and beſides I was deſirous of profiting by this rencounter, and of procuring new information: a planter however would have acted in a quite different manner. By my looks he plaintly diſcovered that I had no intention of doing him any hurt; and, after ſome queſtions relating to the ſituation in which we reſpectively were, and which he could not anſwer without trembling, he began to reſume his courage, and to have ſome confidence in me. As I complained to him of the ſcarcity of game in the places which I had traverſed, he informed me where I would be certain of finding what

what I wanted. I ordered my Hottentot, who had now overtaken me, to make him a preſent of a part of his tobacco; and, after wiſhing him more moderation and probity, I turned my horſe round, and continued my excurſion. Scarcely however had I proceeded fifty paces, when my hunter, who had remained with him a few minutes to light his pipe, and put an end to his converſation, called out to me with a loud voice. Terrified by his bawling, I inſtantly returned, and, when I came up to him, I found that he was attacked by the treacherous Boſhman, who, with an arrow in his hand, was attempting to wound him in the head. Seeing the viſage of my poor Hottentot already covered over with blood, in a tranſport of rage I leaped from my horſe, and ſeizing my fuſee and diſcharging it at his breaſt, the traitor was ſtunned and inſtantly dropped, while my Hottentot in the exceſs of his fury collected his arms, and put an end to the life of his formidable adverſary by treading on him with his feet. Alarmed at his wound, he expected every moment to periſh by the effect of the poiſon; for the raſcal had diſcharged an arrow at him the moment they had ſeparated. The wound, which was exactly above the noſe, appeared to me more dangerous on that account, but luckily it was very ſlight; he had been only touched by the edge of the iron head, which is never poiſoned. Having waſhed the wound with urine, I comforted him in the beſt manner I could, perſuaded that it was not mortal; and as I always carried about me a phial of volatile alkali, which Mr. Percheron, the French agent, gave me when I quitted the Cape, in order that I might diſſipate even every appearance of poiſon, I tore off ſome pieces from my ſhirt, and dipping them

them in the alkali, applied them to the part affected; but theſe precautions of my tender friendſhip, inſtead of elevating the ſpirits of the unfortunate Hottentot made him perſiſt in attributing the ſevere pains occaſioned by the cauſtic to the effects of the poiſon: as for me, what I wondered at moſt, and what I conſidered as the influence of my happy ſtar, was, that he had not been killed on the ſpot; had that been the caſe, the aſſaſſin, armed with a fuſee which he might have taken from him, would not have failed to lie in wait for me in the neareſt turning, and to have conſigned me to the ſame fate. Taking up the villain's bow and quiver, and leaving his body dreadfully mangled, I haſtened to return to my camp. This adventure ſoon ſpread the alarm throughout the country; and my Hottentot, perſuaded that he would not live till morning, ſtill added to the conſternation of my people. It would have been in vain for me to attempt to allay their terrors; they all entertained the ſame idea as my patient, and imagined that he could not live the night through: but it paſſed away without the appearance of any alarming ſymptoms; and the pain having abated, he began to be convinced that he would eſcape at the expence of being well frightened. When he awoke, his companions, aſtoniſhed to ſee him alive, recovered the uſe of their ſpeech, and boaſted in a thouſand different ways, as is commonly the caſe when danger is over. They judged, above all, that the death of the aſſaſſin was the moſt fortunate circumſtance for us in this adventure; for had this man eſcaped and followed us through the thickets and winding ways, he would have diſcovered our retreat. He would not then have failed to give notice to the reſt of the Boſhmen, who,

who, in a numerous body, would have ſuddenly fallen upon us and maſſacred us without mercy. The various conjectures of my Hottentots, and their endleſs prattling, amuſed me much, and proved not at all unintereſting. I concluded from it that they would at length become familiarized with danger; and I was exceedingly glad that they had ſeen it ſo near; for I knew no obſtacle that could be more fatal to my deſigns than imaginary terrors.

The day following we departed, and while we were marching along I amuſed myſelf with ſhooting, either on one ſide or the other, as the weather was remarkably favourable. Having ſtarted a female oſtrich, when I went up to the neſt, the largeſt I had ever ſeen, I found in it thirty-eight eggs in a heap, and thirteen more diſtributed at ſome diſtance, each in a ſmall cavity. They appeared to be all unequal in ſize; and, when I examined them more cloſely, I perceived nine much ſmaller than the reſt: on this diſcovery I ordered my people to halt, and to unyoke the oxen at the diſtance of a quarter of a league from the reſt, whilſt I went to conceal myſelf in a thicket, which was within a gun-ſhot of the ſpot, and from which I could have a full view of the animal if it returned. After a ſhort interval, the female arrived and ſquatted down upon the eggs, and, during the reſt of the time that I continued in the buſh, three more joined her. They relieved each other by turns, one only remaining a quarter of an hour on the neſt, while one of the new comers ſat by her ſide. This made me imagine that ſometimes, and perhaps when the nights are rainy or cold, two or more unite together to cover the eggs the better. When the ſun was nearly about to ſet, a male arrived, and approached the neſt

neſt in order to place himſelf on it; for the males ſit as well as the females. As I had now the opportunity I wiſhed for, I diſcharged my piece and killed him on the ſpot; upon which the reſt, frightened by the noiſe of the report, ſtarted up, and in their confuſion broke ſeveral of the eggs. On going up to the neſt, I perceived, with much regret, that the young had been juſt ready to burſt the ſhell, for they were entirely covered with down. The male which I killed had not one beautiful white feather; they were all already ſtripped, and become quite dirty. I however picked out ſuch of the black ones as appeared to be moſt entire, and quitting the place, I deatched ſeveral of my Hottentots to ſearch for the thirteen eggs which were ſcattered around the neſt, ſtrictly enjoining them not to touch the reſt. Being deſirous to know whether the females would return in the night-time, I repaired to the neſt at day-break; but I found every thing ſwept away from the place, except a few fragments of ſhells lying here and there, which ſufficiently ſhewed that we had furniſhed an excellent repaſt to ſome jackals, or even hyænas.

This peculiarity reſpecting the female oſtrich, which unites with ſeveral others for incubation in the ſame neſt, is the more worthy to engage the attention of the naturaliſt, as, not being a general rule, it proves that certain circumſtances may ſometimes determine the actions of theſe animals, and modify their ſenſations, which would tend to exalt their inſtinct, by giving them a more ſagacious foreſight than is generally allowed them. It is not probable that theſe animals aſſociate together, in order that they may be ſtronger and better able to defend their offſpring? I ſhall have occaſion to enter more at large on this ſubject,

ject, in the deſcription of the oſtrich which I intend to give hereafter. I flatter myſelf that the public will read with pleaſure plain and authentic relations, which will contain rather a view of the manners and habitudes of theſe animals than tireſome details, which are often only repetitions concerning the number of their feathers, their proportions, and the exact dimenſions of all their parts. Ridiculous enumerations! which ſhew as little the variety of the ſpecies, as the difference of their characters.

In returning from the neſt to our camp, my dogs ſtarted a hare, and ſet out in purſuit of it; upon which I galloped after them, and ſaw it take ſhelter in the cavities of a ſmall barrow, which happened to be in the way. After ſome ſearch I at length diſcovered the preciſe place of its retreat; and having ſtopped up the mouth of the hole it had entered, I pulled down the ſtones and the gravel which compoſed this ſmall eminence; but I could ſcarcely deſcribe my aſtoniſhment when I perceived that it was a Hottentot tomb. I however found the hare ſquatted down among ſome bones, and ſeizing it alive I carried it along with me. My dogs being engaged elſewhere, in a ſpot where they could not obſerve me, through an emotion of generoſity, and as if diſdaining to put this feeble animal to death except with the arms I uſually employed in hunting, I ſet it at liberty. This action was aſcribed by my people to a motive which raiſed me very high in their eſteem, and I was extremely cautious not to undeceive them. They believed, and with the utmoſt ſatisfaction, that I had ſuffered this animal to eſcape, not becauſe I conſidered it as of little value, but becauſe I reſpected the aſylum of the dead, and deſirous of rendering this natural homage

mage to the tomb of one of their countrymen. Having covered the bones with the ſame gravel which I had taken from them, we purſued another route; and during this interval ſome more of my hunters had killed four gnous, the ſalting of which employed us three whole days.

On the 16th I arrived at a plantation belonging to two brothers who were free negroes, one of whom was married to a young mulatto woman. Theſe worthy people received me with the utmoſt joy, and offered me the free uſe of every thing they poſſeſſed. But, ſhall I ſay it? my heart, agitated by a thouſand different ſenſations, received with indifference their careſſes and their tender ſolicitude. I found in them almoſt the ſame manners and the ſame cuſtoms as thoſe common in the civilized world. I had now returned to ſociety, and I again beheld fields, utenſils, poſſeſſions, eſtabliſhed order, maſters; in a word, I was on a plantation. So much indulgence became a burden to me; an involuntary impulſe hurried me from this retreat: I often walked about, with my eyes wandering from one ſide to another, as if to diſcover my loſt way; I oppreſſed the houſe with complaints, and, if I may uſe the expreſſion, ſurrounded it with my ſighs. All was now fled; the torrents, mountains, majeſtic foreſts, impracticable roads, hordes of ſavages and their delightful huts, all were vaniſhed. Every thing ſeemed to excite my regret, even to ferocious animals; which for the moment, I imagined entertained ſentiments of friendſhip and benevolence towards me. I do not know whether theſe whimſical ideas are common to other men; but the more I reflect on them, the more I am convinced that they belong to nature. Powerful charm of liberty! invincible force, which I ſhall carry

with me to the grave! Thou transformedſt into pleaſures the moſt laborious fatigues, into amuſements the greateſt dangers, into delightful ſpectacles the moſt diſmal objects; and thou ſtrewedſt my paths with the flowers of felicity and repoſe, at a ſeaſon and age when deſtiny ſeemed to impel me to ſearch for them elſewhere. With theſe two negroes I eat bread for the firſt time during the ſpace of a year, but I had almoſt forgot the taſte of it. Though I at firſt propoſed to ſtop here only one day, I remained three days. We had ſtill a great extent of country to traverſe, ſome enormous mountains to croſs, and great difficulties to encounter in the deſarts of Camdebo; the awful aſpect of which every where preſent, inſtead of the verdure and natural gardens of the Pampoen-Kraal, nothing but hideous rocks, ſands, and flints, ſometimes grey, ſometimes reddiſh, and ſometimes of a yellow colour. As I approached towards the plantations danger decreaſed, and ſtill adhering to my ideas, I flattered myſelf with the hope of more enjoyments. If I except therefore the places where I had juſt halted, I followed my plan with equal conſtancy, when I returned and when I departed; but I embraced the opportunity which chance had afforded me, by falling in with theſe two brothers, to procure proviſions for the ſubſiſtence of my people, and I took precautions accordingly. They ſupplied me with a large quantity of biſcuit; and I made a grateful return for this eſſential ſervice, by giving them in exchange powder, ſhot, and gun-flints; all valuable articles, which they had long been in want of, though it is indiſpenſably neceſſary that a plantation ſhould always be provided with them, either to defend the cattle or repel the Boſhmen.

For

For ſo great a favour, they would have readily granted me whatever I required.

On the 19th I ſet out, at four in the afternoon; but the ſun, more ardent than ever, ſcorched us moſt dreadfully for two days. Wandering about, without being able to find a ſingle drop of water, we had recourſe to ſome jars, which I had ordered to be filled at the houſe of the negro brothers; but we were obliged to confine ourſelves to a certain allowance, as had ſeveral times been the caſe before.

On the 21ſt, after croſſing the bed of the Kriga, which was dry, and which we had croſſed the preceding evening, I fell in with two inhabitants of Camdebo, who were returning from the Cape, and purſuing their way to their own reſidence. As I had not heard from my friends at the town for above a year, I was happy to learn that, by the aſſiſtance of France, the Cape had been protected from any invaſion by the Engliſh, and that the colony was ſtill in the hands of the Dutch; but the pleaſure I received from this intelligence was ſoon effaced by hearing of the indiſpoſition of my benefactor, whom thoſe travellers ſaid they had left in a very critical ſituation at the warm baths, which are the laſt reſource of ſick people in Africa. This information threw a gloom over my mind, and embittered the remainder of my journey.

Eagerly deſirous of ſeeing a friend who had many claims on my friendſhip, I wiſhed to haſten my journey; but the fear of finding him in a languiſhing condition corrupted the pleaſure which I enjoyed by anticipation. Theſe two planters forewarned me that I ſhould ſuffer much by the way, on account of the drought and want of water; and that, as I carried a great number of cattle along with me, I could hope for no reſources

but

but in the ſtormy rains which might come on: that, beſides theſe inconveniences, the country was infeſted by the Boſhmen; and that they had even plundered them of thirty-two oxen, and maſſacred their herdſmen, at the paſſage of the Black River. This laſt part of their intelligence did not prevent me from proceeding; for, ſince the example of ſeverity which I had been forced to give, my people never ſhewed any ſigns of timidity, and I believe that along with me they would have been capable of braving all the banditti of Camdebo. I was however unwilling to expoſe them raſhly: it was impoſſible for me to march in the night-time, for this would have deprived me of every advantage; and the greater part of my oxen were rendered unfit for ſervice by a diſeaſe in their hoofs; ſo that not being able to relieve thoſe that were in a ſound condition, I made them ſet out before us with a ſtrong guard, in order that we might not be retarded in our march.

When I arrived in this manner at *Kriga-Fontyn*, or the Fountain of Kriga, my oxen found as much water as they had occaſion for; but it was ſo brackiſh, that the Hottentots who drank of it were ſeized with colics and violent diarrhœas. As I was ſounding the ſoil, and examining whether this water might not cauſe diſorders ſtill more dangerous, I was greatly ſurpriſed to obſerve Kees, who was always the firſt every where, draw from the veſſel a crab of about three or four inches in diameter. This circumſtance was indeed moſt aſtoniſhing, as the fountain was ſurrounded by ſolid rock, and had no apparent outlet whatever. My ape ſeemed to eat his crab with ſo much pleaſure, that I ordered thirty of them to be caught; and when they were roaſted I found

them excellent. Four or five diſcharges of my fuſee procured us above forty moor-fowl of a very beautiful ſpecies, which were accuſtomed to come by thouſands, and light on the borders of this fountain. The Hottentots of the colonies call them *Nimiqua patridges*, becauſe in the rainy ſeaſon they all emigrate towards the tropics. Reckoning from the time when we encamped at this fountain, we found nothing but coarſe plants and locuſts; we were indeed in a moſt deſolate place; four of my oxen, having not ſtrength ſufficient to follow us, remained on the ſpot; and I ſaw, with no ſmall grief, that my dogs halted, and could ſcarcely drag themſelves along. As the ſoles of their feet were torn and cut to the very quick, I ordered them to be rubbed over with greaſe, that they might be induced to lick them, and to be put into my carriages until they ſhould be in a condition to walk. My horſes being attacked by the ſame diſorder as my oxen, I cauſed ſmall bags or covers to be made of ſkins, and, having greaſed their hoofs well, I faſtened them on their feet by tying them above the tarſus. I wiſhed to ſubject my oxen to the ſame operation, but theſe intractable animals would never have ſubmitted to it peaceably; beſides greaſe and ſkins would not have been ſufficient. My carriages alſo were in a moſt wretched condition; for as they had not been moiſtened for a long time, they made a noiſe when they moved forwards like ſo many rattles. Though we fell in with different fountains, and the beds of ſeveral rivers or torrents which we croſſed in our way, and from which we hoped for relief, we were ſtill deceived in our expectations. Our animals were reduced to the neceſſity of putting their noſes to the earth, and of licking ſuch places as ſeemed ſtill to retain

ſome

ſome moiſture; being beſides deprived of every kind of ſucculent graſs, no other reſource was left us but to collect a few coarſe parched herbs, which occaſioned acute pains in their bowels, ſo that they entirely loſt their fleſh, and ſeemed to be converted into ſkeletons.

In this diſtreſſing ſituation we continued till the 24th in the evening. Having croſſed the *Swart Rivier*, or Black River, which had no more water in its bed than the reſt, we were juſt on the point of unyoking our oxen, when I perceived a flock of ſheep. I immediately ran up to the ſhepherd, and being informed that he belonged to a planter who reſided at the diſtance of ſcarcely a league, we purſued our route towards it, and encamped near a large pond, where we at length had the ſatisfaction of finding water in abundance. The owner of theſe ſheep was named *Aadm Robenhymer*, and his plantation was called *Keveec-Valey*. I received every mark of politeneſs from this gentleman, as well as from his family, which conſiſted of only two daughters. One of them, Dina Sagrias de-Beer, the daughter of his wife by a former huband, was one of the moſt beautiful African ladies I had ever ſeen. Theſe charming hoſts preſſed me to ſpend a few days with them; and the bewitching Dina joined to her invitation ſuch mild and natural graces, that I readily yielded to her repeated ſolicitations, and conſented to remain a few days. In the evening, however, I did not fail to pay a viſit to my camp, according to my uſual cuſtom; as the place where I was, and the neceſſity of preſerving good order, made me more than ever lay it down as an invariable rule not to ſleep out of it: I was beſides ſo much accuſtomed to my hard mattreſs, that a ſofter or more commodious bed would

really have prevented me from ſleeping. This agreeable repoſe for a few days was above all extremely ſerviceable to my poor cattle, worn out with hunger and fatigue: I was every moment apprehenſive that I ſhould be obliged to abandon my carriages and effects; but this laſt halting revived us a little. The ſituation of this ſpot was delightful; the ſcenery around it was beautifully variegated; and the environs of the plantation afforded my oxen, as well as my people, abundance of every thing proper for reſtoring their loſt ſtrength, had I only remained longer in this retreat: but I was more and more ſenſible of the neceſſity of approaching the Cape, and my exhauſted imagination rendered my return indiſpenſable. I was therefore once more obliged to tear myſelf from ſo many attractions, and to purſue my journey. The beautiful Dina having learned of my people (for ſhe informed herſelf of every thing) that the biſcuits I had procured from the negroes were almoſt at an end, ſhe begged me to accept a ſmall ſupply which ſhe had made herſelf. On the firſt of March, after returning thanks to my amiable hoſts, I took leave of them, at five in the afternoon, and marched forwards to the *gamka*, or *Leeuw-Rivier*, the Lion river; where we arrived at nine at night and encamped. Lions formerly were very common near this river, becauſe antelopes alſo were found here in great abundance; but when the inhabitants approached nearer to each other, the antelopes diſappeared, and lions conſequently are become much ſcarcer. Having heard at Keveec-valey that three formidable troops of Boſhmen were ranging in the neighbourhood of that place, I thought it would be imprudent to penetrate farther the firſt night; beſides this, I had been informed that,

after

after croſſing the *Gamka*, until I reached the Buffaloes River, I ſhould not find a ſingle drop of water. The diſtance between theſe rivers was full twenty-five leagues: that I might not periſh with thirſt, it was neceſſary to perform this paſſage in two days, and it was impoſſible to travel during the heat of the day without deſtroying both my people and cattle. I reſolved therefore to remain two days on the Lion River, to ſtrengthen and refreſh my oxen as much as poſſible; and, in the evening of the ſecond day, baniſhing every idea of fear, and paying little regard to the terror of my Hottentots, I reſumed my journey, taking the precaution to ſtation my whole caravan between two carriages, which ſerved as an advanced and a rear-guard. A forced march of two days, or rather two nights, performed with the greateſt regularity, conducted us to the banks of the river which we had ſo long wiſhed to ſee. During the night-time I had not neglected to order my people to diſcharge their pieces on both ſides of us every ſix minutes; and from time to time I gave my horſes, which were ready to faint with the heat and fatigue, a refreſhment of water from my jars. My cattle had neither eat nor drank; they all panted for breath, and ſeemed every moment ready to drop down on the ſpot; nevertheleſs, though it was late in the evening before we arrived at the Buffalo-river, my relays, and all the cattle that marched at liberty, having diſcovered the ſtream, began to run forwards acroſs the meadows in the greateſt diſorder to quench their thirſt. Thoſe which drew the carriages reſumed their courage, and completed the paſſage in leſs than a quarter of an hour; but had it not been for the attention of my people, who cut the traces of the moſt intractable, my three carriages would

would have been overturned in the river. We all of us followed the example of our animals, and the bath ſoon made me forget my fatigue.

When our fires were kindled a part of our animals joined us; I was extremely uneaſy for the reſt, but we heard them making a noiſe among the buſhes which ſurrounded us, and I concluded that they were ſearching for food. They however arrived all at the break of day, except one pair of oxen, which we never afterwards ſaw: my goat alſo ſtrayed, and did not return till ſome time after in the courſe of the day.

When I awoke in the morning I was very much ſurpriſed to find myſelf in a delightful country, which the obſcurity of the night had prevented me from obſerving. The river was not broad, but the abundance and depth of its waters diffuſed throughout the neighbourhood a freſhneſs ſo much the more agreeable, as the heat was exceſſive: it runs with a hundred windings through beautiful green fields, and I never ſaw ſo agreeable groves as thoſe with which its banks are crowned. An infinite number of partridges and moor-fowl by their cries formed a very ſtriking contraſt with thoſe of different kinds of ducks herons, brown ſwans, and flamingoes, with which the river was covered. All my people with one voice having begged me to ſtop here ſome days, I readily conſented, and was exceedingly glad that they had anticipated my wiſhes. This was one of thoſe delightful retreats which prove that the imaginations of the poets do not always in their deſcriptions exceed the bounds of nature and truth. The ſpot, however, where we had paſſed the night, was not the moſt favourable; ſome large rocks in our neighbourhood covered both it and us too much, and might have enabled the enemy to ſurpriſe

priſe us with much eaſe: on this account we conveyed our carriages and our baggage to the middle of a ſmall meadow, which the winding of the river rendered almoſt a peninſula, and there we erected our tents.

From the plantation of the two negroes already mentioned we had performed a march of eighty leagues; and one can ſcarcely perceive what we ſuffered in this paſſage. How much relief ſhould I have derived from the ſheep which I exchanged with the Hottentots of Snewberg! From that period we did not meet with the ſmalleſt article of game, and not even a pond of water ſo pure that we could uſe it without great precaution; none of that which we found was fit to be drunk until we had boiled it either with tea or coffee, to deſtroy, or at leaſt to conceal, its noxious diſagreeable qualities.

The beauties of the ſpot, and the abundance of every neceſſary which the Buffalo River procured us, were not the only motives that induced us to remain ſo long on its banks. I continued here till the 14th of the month, employed only in repairing my carriages, the ruined condition of which had for a long time given me great uneaſineſs. They were ſo much ſhattered, and the ſun had ſo dried them, that they were ready to fall to pieces; it was neceſſary above all to renew the wheels, as all the ſpokes were looſe in the naves. I ordered them to be put into water to make the wood ſwell; and they remained there a long time before they received any aſſiſtance from the hatchet. As for my part, I reviewed my collection, which was far from being in proper order; and this buſineſs was a work of no little labour. Every thing almoſt that I had contained birds: my tea-cheſts, and my boxes for holding coffee and ſugar,

ſugar, were all filled with them. I now expected ſoon to reach the centre of the colonies; and I ſhould have conſidered the ſlighteſt accident that might have happened to retard our march as a great misfortune. Being perſuaded that we had nothing more to fear from the Boſhmen, and ſeeing all my people ſufficiently compoſed and freed from their terrors, I reſolved to travel night and day; and in conſequence of this determination I departed on the 14th, at five in the afternoon, obſerving the ſame order as before. Having halted at midnight, near the Matjes-Fontein, the atmoſphere became overcaſt, and ſeemed to threaten a ſtorm; but it paſſed by us, and next morning I croſſed the Wet-Waater, and unyoked my cattle at *Conſtapel*, an agreeable plantation, which the owners had been obliged to abandon on account of a ſcarcity of water. Though the ſeaſon was now far advanced, the heat had not yet decreaſed, and we were obliged to remain inactive during the middle of the day, when the ſun's rays darted upon us with the greateſt force; we were ſcorched ſo much the more, as we could find no ſhade or place of ſhelter to ſecure us from them: the relaxed ſtate in which we were did not even permit us to amuſe ourſelves with hunting. It is well known that ſtifling heat tends greatly to deſtroy the appetite, and that it corrupts meat whether freſh or ſalted, and renders it very diſguſting; the operations of our kitchen were ſuſpended therefore for ſome time. My Hottentots ſlept during the day: as for me, I lived on Miſs Dina's biſcuits; and all the indulgence I allowed myſelf was to ſteep them in goat's milk, which I always taſted with pleaſure. I cannot recommend too ſtrongly to travellers who undertake ſuch journeys as mine, to procure a great number of theſe docile

docile and uſeful animals. They are fond of man, attach themſelves to him, every where follow him, occaſion no embarraſſment, and require little or no care. Every day they will ſupply enough for their nouriſhment, and to quench their thirſt; and theſe poor brutes, which are not delicate like ſome other animals, and which are contented with almoſt any thing, can endure thirſt a long time without loſing their milk.

The 16th and the 17th, after croſſing *Touws-Rivier*, I advanced ſix leagues farther; and, near Werkeerde-Valey, reached a very large lake, upon the borders of which was a ſmall plantation, entruſted by the owner, who was abſent, to the care of ſome Hottentots. Having found here a planter who had recently quitted the Cape in order to go to Camdebo, I was relieved from a load which had long oppreſſed me, by learning that Mr. Boers was perfectly recovered, and that he had returned to the town. In this ſpot I had an opportunity of meeting with birds of various kinds, and, among others, ſome coots exactly like thoſe of Europe; but the marſhes near the lake furniſhed me with ſuch a number of ſnipes that they became our ordinary food.

As there were a great many hogs upon this plantation, I purchaſed one of them; but I was obliged to go and chooſe it myſelf, and take it from the reeds; becauſe, as I have already obſerved, when ſpeaking of the manner in which they are bred, theſe had become quite wild. I bought alſo ſome flour, in order that I might regale my people with the firſt bread they had eat ſince my departure: Klaas' wife prepared it, and ſhe indeed ſucceeded wonderfully well. Having quitted Werkeerde-Valey, we entered on the 21ſt another country, called the Boke-Veld, or plain of the

the ſpring-bocks *, which undoubtedly abounded there formerly; but at this time none of them were any where to be ſeen. On the hills, every where around us, we obſerved ſeveral plantations, from which we in vain endeavoured to remove, for the farther we went the more frequent they became. I was under the neceſſity of paſſing cloſe to that of John Pinar. Though he earneſtly requeſted me to ſtop and refreſh myſelf at his houſe, I declined his invitation, and purſued my journey; but the inhabitants, whether white men, Hottentots, or negroes, all haſtened to ſee my caravan file off, almoſt in the ſame manner as in our great cities people flock to ſee ſome curious ſhew or uncommon ſpectacle. My beard, above all, in a country where neither Jews nor capuchins are ever known, appeared to be a wonderful and extraordinary phenomenon; though it put the children to flight, and ſtruck a great terror into the women. After diſembarraſſing myſelf with great difficulty from the importunity of the inquiſitive, who harraſſed me with their queſtions, I reached, at half after eleven at night, a peaceful inhabited retreat, at the diſtance of three leagues: but the news of my return were ſpread abroad; and next morning, ſcarce had daylight appeared, when more than twenty of the inhabitants, attracted by curioſity, ſurrounded my camp, that, whatever route I ſhould purſue, it might be impoſſible for me to eſcape them. Theſe people had taken great pleaſure in propagating an hundred abſurd tales reſpecting me; and they aſked me an hundred ridiculous queſtions one after the other: they aſſerted for example, that I had brought back waggon loads of gold duſt and jewels, found in the rivers, or

* A kind of antelopes.

on

on rocks, never before explored. One of theſe credulous peaſants begged me to ſhew him that magnificent precious ſtone, ſuperior to the diamond, and as large as an egg, found in the head of an enormous ſerpent, with which I had fought a moſt deſperate and bloody battle. I mention theſe abſurdities merely to juſtify what I have ſaid elſewhere reſpecting that ſtupid fondneſs for the marvellous, by which the planters amuſe their idle hours, and diſſipate the languor which oppreſſes them.

I intended to remain recluſe in the place where I was till evening, but the number of the curious increaſed ſo much every minute, that I loſt all patience, and departed abruptly. In vain did I attempt to avoid three or four plantations ſituated in the canton through which it was neceſſary for me to paſs; importunity every where purſued me, ſo that I had no other reſource but to take advantage of the obſcurity of the night, and to go almoſt like a malefactor, and conceal myſelf at the bottom of an enormous chain of mountains named *Cloof*, which forms the limits of another country called *Roye-Sand*.

This mountain, like an immenſe curtain, raiſed by the hand of misfortune before me, ſeemed placed there to diſconcert me ſtill more, and to increaſe my uneaſineſs. It was however neceſſary either to overcome this obſtacle, or to make a very long circuit, the extent of which I did not know, nor how much time it might require. I was no longer animated by that impetuous ardour which I had ſhewn at my departure; nor by that invincible courage which cheriſhed in my ſoul the love of novelties, and the impatient deſire of being the firſt to take poſſeſſion of a country ſo curious and ſo little known. I found myſelf in turns

ſtopped

ſtopped by diſcouragement, and hurried forwards by gratitude and friendſhip. I formed therefore my reſolution, and determined to climb in the beſt manner I could to the top of the mountain. The ſteepneſs of the way, and the quagmires which I had to encounter in this paſſage, almoſt frightened me. Yet this is the uſual route of the neighbouring planters, who chooſe rather to run the riſque of loſing their cattle and carriages than unite to make a proper road, or at leaſt to repair ſome paſſes; an evident proof both of their inattention and their indolence.

For my own ſafety I ventured to undertake this buſineſs. I employed the whole day of the 24th in cutting down branches of trees to fill up the deep fiſſures, and in covering them over with ſtones, ſand and earth. In this operation I ſucceeded; and on the 25th, in the ſpace of four hours, thanks to the precautions which we had taken, and the exertions which my people with great cheerfulneſs made, at the expence of a very trifling loſs, we had the inexpreſſible happineſs of paſſing the frightful precipice, the only one that we had occaſion to dread. The planters call this horrible road *Maſter-Hoec*, or Maſter's Corner. We encampted at the bottom of the mountain, on the other ſide; and next day halted in the morning at the entrance of *Roye-Sand*, near the ruins of a plantation which appeared to have been long deſerted.

This canton, in my opinion, is very improperly named *Roye-Sand*, or Red Sand, for I obſerved none of that colour: I remarked, on the contrary, that it was abſolutely yellow.

This country is fertile in corn; and the crops are rich, and every where appear in great abundance. We from time to time had a view of delightful

lightful plantations, each more agreeably ſituated than another; and the variety of the buildings formed every where ſuch intereſting proſpects as afforded the higheſt gratification to the ſight. It is poſſible that, as I had been accuſtomed for ſixteen months to views of a bolder and grander nature, the contraſt of wild countries, and their habitations, as diſmal as uncommon, with the new order of things that preſented itſelf to my eye, might make a deeper impreſſion on my imagination. However this may be, I was never tired of contemplating theſe beautiful ſcenes.

All thoſe chimerical and romantic ideas which had flattered my fancy, and all thoſe melancholy reflections which I had indulged on quitting the ſavages, began now to vaniſh; and reaſon, reſuming its empire, convinced me that, not being deſtined for ſuch a wandering and precarious life, I had other obligations to diſcharge, and other objects to cheriſh. I already ſmiled at different circumſtances, the remembrance of which brought full in my view my former pleaſures and paſt manner of life. Friendſhip above all, arrayed in her full graces, and ſuch as ſhe ought to be to pleaſe delicate and tender ſouls, ſeemed to call me at a diſtance, and to ſtretch our her arms towards me. Other ſentiments perhaps came to her aſſiſtance, to make me unbend my brow, and to incite me more and more to bring my journey to a concluſion. Certain, from the information I had received, that I ſhould find Mr. Boers at the Cape in good health, every ſtep I made towards the town added to the tranſports of my impatience, which my people ſincerely ſhared along with me. It was impoſſible for me to be ſo near the Cape without wiſhing to ſee the road that was to conduct me thither diſappear behind me: my whole

whole thoughts therefore were occupied with the pleaſure I expected to feel on ſeeing my friends; but above all in embracing him, who on many accounts had the beſt claim to the firſt and moſt diſtinguiſhed place in my affection.

On the 26th, after having eſcaped, if I may expreſs myſelf ſo, ten plantations which lay in our way, I croſſed the Broad River; a league farther, the *Waater-Val*, or Water-fall; and afterwards ſome more plantations, which undoubtedly had been long waiting to ſee me paſs; for the inhabitants, obſerving that I did not ſtop, ran after me as if I had been a curious wild beaſt, and never quitted me till they had ſurveyed me for ſome time. Having croſſed the *Roye Sand-Kloof*, the Valley of Red Sand, and the *Klein Berg-Rivier*, or Little River of the Mountains, when I arrived next morning, the 27th, at *Swart-Land*, I ordered my horſes, which I had not uſed for ſome time, to be ſaddled; and leaving a number of inquiſitive planters around my carriages and baggage, I advanced forwards, accompanied by my faithful Klaas; and arrived with much pleaſure, the ſame evening, at the houſe of my ancient hoſt, the worthy Slaber, who had ſo nobly entertained me two years before, when I met with the dreadful diſaſter already mentioned at the bay of Saldanha.

Words could hardly expreſs the joy, and above all the aſtoniſhment, which my arrival occaſioned to all this reſpectable family. They expected it ſo little; I was ſo diſguiſed by my beard, and the accounts which had been propagated at the Cape, and in the neighbourhood, of the diſtant excurſions and the dangers to which I had expoſed myſelf, rendered my death ſo probable, that they were all terrified on my approach. The women particularly declared bloody war againſt that thick and

and black covering which obſcured part of my viſage. It had, indeed, for ſome time been entirely uſeleſs, and conſequently a burden to me. Mitje-Slaber, the youngeſt of my hoſt's daughters, obligingly offered to free from it. I therefore fell down on my knees and devoted my head as a ſacrifice. Scarcely had I arrived at this happy retreat, when I diſpatched Klaas to Mr. Boers to inform him of my return; and I ſent him, at the ſame time, two of thoſe ſmall antelopes called *ſteen-bocks*, and a few patridges which I had killed by the way. Next morning I received the congratulations of my friend, who ſent me two of his beſt horſes, and earneſtly preſſed me to repair to his houſe immediately.

The ſame day my people whom I had left behind, arrived with my carriages. The moment of our ſeparation was now approaching; we had both of us reciprocally forgot our animoſities: ſome gave vent to ſighs, others ſhed tears; and, while I could not contain mine, we comforted ourſelves with the hopes of a ſecond journey, ſhould circumſtances become favourable.

I diſtributed among theſe faithful companions of my fatigues and adventures all the remainder of my effects, and ſuch things as could be of no utility to me in the town; to which I added even my linen and other clothes, reſerving nothing but what I had on my body. I begged two of theſe Hottentots to remain ſome days more with Mr. Slaber, to take care of my ſhe-goats and ſick or uſeleſs oxen which I left on the plantation till farther orders. I then appointed Mr. Boers' houſe as a rendezvous for the reſt of my caravan; and Klaas and I having mounted our horſes, the ſame evening I enjoyed the happineſs of embracing

cing a friend and benefactor whom I had been apprehenſive of never again ſeeing.

My baggage arrived on the 2d of April, and it was then that I returned thanks to my faithful ſervants, and paid them their wages. They were all burning with impatience to reviſit their families. I ſtretched out my hand to Klaas, who could ſcarcely tear himſelf from his maſter; and, as his horde was at a leſs diſtance from the town than that of the other Hottentots whom I had diſcharged, I deſired him to viſit me often, and promiſed him a continuation of my protection, my confidence, and my friendſhip, I, above all, aſſured him that I would not remain long inactive at the Cape, and that I depended upon his aſſiſtance for new enterpriſes. This was the ſole object of his deſires, and the only alleviation of his ſorrow. I muſt indeed confeſs that I could not ſee him depart without the greateſt emotion, though diſtracted by crowds of viſitors who thronged into my friend's houſe, ſome of whom were attracted by a generous concern for my welfare, but the greater number by a deſire of gratifying their eager curioſity.

HAVING been much ſolicited to give ſome account of the animal called a giraffe, which I met with in my ſecond journey, I ſhall briefly deſcribe it; although my account, as being an anticipation, may be conſidered as irregular.

Many and various accounts have been publiſhed of the giraffe; but, notwithſtanding all the elegant and ſcientific diſſertations written on this ſubject, no juſt or preciſe idea hath been hitherto formed of its configuration, much leſs of its manners,

ners, its taſtes, its character, and its organization.

If, among the known quadrupedes, precedency be allowed to height, the giraffe without doubt muſt hold the firſt rank. A male, which I have in my collection, meaſured after I killed it ſixteen feet four inches, from the hoof to the extremity of its horns. I uſe this expreſſion in order to be underſtood; for, the giraffe has no real horns, but between its ears, at the upper extremity of the head, ariſe, in a perpendicular and parallel direction, two excreſcences from the cranium, which, without any joint, ſtretch to the height of eight or nine inches, terminating in a convex knob, and are ſurrounded by a row of ſtrong ſtraight hair, which overtops them by ſeveral lines.

In conſequence of the number of theſe animals which I killed and had an opportunity of ſeeing, I may eſtabliſh as a certain rule, that the males are generally fifteen or ſixteen feet in height, and the females from thirteen to fourteen.

Whoever ſhould judge of the ſize and thickneſs of theſe animals from the above dimenſions, would be greatly deceived. I may almoſt ſay that they conſiſt of nothing but neck and legs. The eye, indeed, that is accuſtomed to the long full figures of Europe, finds no proportion between a height of ſixteen feet and a length of ſeven, taken from the tail to the breaſt. Another deformity, if it may be called ſo, makes us contraſt the parts before with thoſe behind. The former have a conſiderable thickneſs towards the ſhoulders, but the latter are ſo thin and meagre that they do not ſeem formed the one for the other.

Naturaliſts and travellers who ſpeak of the giraffe, all agree in making the hind legs only half the length of thoſe before; but did thoſe who aſ-

ſert ſo really ſee the animal, or, if they ſaw it, did they conſider it attentively?

An Italian author, who certainly never ſaw it, cauſed a figure of it to be engraved at Venice, in a work entitled *Deſcrizioni degli animali*, 1771. This figure is formed exactly from the deſcriptions which had then been publiſhed of the animal; but this exactneſs renders it ſo ridiculous, that we muſt conſider it, on the part of the Italian author, as a ſevere criticiſm on all the accounts which had appeared, and which have been ſo often repeated.

Of all the old authors* who have ſpoken of this animal, the moſt exact is Gilius, who ſays expreſsly that "the giraffe has its four legs of the "ſame length; but that the fore thighs are ſo "long in compariſon of thoſe behind, that the "back of the animal appears inclined like the "roof of a houſe." If by the fore thighs Gilius means the omoplate or ſhoulder blade, his aſſertion is juſt, and I perfectly agree with him.

The account given by Heliodorus is far from being ſo correct. If we believe that he ſpeaks of a giraffe, when he ſays its head is only double the ſize of that of the oſtrich, we muſt conclude that things have changed much ſince, and that, in the lapſe of time, Nature has made either the one or the other of theſe animals ſuffer great variations.

The horns forming part of the cranium, as I have already ſaid, can never fall off. They are not ſolid like thoſe of the ſtag, nor compoſed of any ſubſtance analogous to thoſe of the ox; much leſs do they conſiſt of hair united, as Buffon ſup-

* Among the moderns, the moſt exact engraving is without doubt that which was executed under the inſpection of Dr. A'laman, from drawings furniſhed by Colonel Gordon.

poſes.

poſes. They are ſimply of a bony calcareous ſubſtance, divided by a multitude of ſmall pores like all bones, and are covered throughout their whole length with ſhort coarſe hair, which has no reſemblance to the ſoft down that covers the young horns of roe-bucks or ſtags.

The figures of this animal, given in the works Buffon and Voſmar, are in general defective.

Theſe authors have made the horns terminate in a point, which is contrary to the truth. Inſtead of bringing the mane only to the ſhoulders, they have prolonged it to the root of the tail; a miſtake which, added to many others, diſgraces and renders of no utility to ſcience theſe falſe repreſentations, which people very improperly confide in, on account of the reputation of the authors who publiſh them.

The giraffes, both male and female, are ſpotted in the ſame manner; but, without paying attention to inequality of ſize, they may eaſily be diſtinguiſhed from each other even at a diſtance. The male, on a greyiſh white ground, has large ſpots of a dark brown colour, almoſt approaching to black; and the female, on a like ground, has ſpots of a tawny colour, which renders them leſs ſtriking. The young males are at firſt of the colour of their mother, but, in proportion as they advance in age and ſize, they become browner.

Theſe quadrupedes feed upon the leaves of trees, and particularly on thoſe of the mimoſa, peculiar to the canton which they inhabit. Meadow graſs forms alſo part of their aliment; but they are not under the neceſſity of kneeling down to browſe or to drink, as ſome have improperly believed. They often lie down to ruminate or to ſleep,

which cauſes a conſiderable calloſity on the ſternum, and makes their knees to be always covered with a hard ſkin.

Had Nature endowed the giraffe with an iraſcible diſpoſition, it certainly would have had cauſe to complain; for the means with which it is provided, either for attack or defence, are very trifling. It is indeed a peaceful and timid animal; it ſhuns danger and flies from it, trotting along very faſt: a good horſe can with difficulty overtake it.

It is ſaid that it has not ſtrength to defend itſelf; but I know, beyond a doubt, that by its kicking it often tires out, diſcourages, and even beats off the lion. Except upon one occaſion I never ſaw it make uſe of its horns: they may be conſidered as of no utility, were it poſſible to doubt of the wiſdom and precaution employed by Nature, whoſe motives we are not always able to comprehend.



FINIS.